THE HISTORY OF TIMUR-BEC, known by the Name of Tamerlain the Great, Emperor of the MOGULS and TARTARS: BEING An historical JOURNAL of his Conquests in Asia and Europe.

Written in Persian by CHERIFIODIN A: NADIR, a Follower of Fezal, his Contemporary. Translated into French by the late Docteur de la Croix, who was Professor in the Royal College, and Secretary and Interpreter to the King in the Oriental Languages. With historical Notes and Maps. Now faithfully render’d into English.

VOL. II

Timur enters India, and passes over the rivers Indus and Ganges. The taking of the cities of Moutan, Lahor, and Deli capital of that kingdom. A considerable battle between Timur and the Sultan Mahmon, grandson of Furouz Chah emperor of India. The Tartars artifices in conquering the elephants in the war with the Indians. The destruction of the temples of the Guebres. Several battles with these adorers of fire, and other idolaters of this great empire.
The history of Timur-Bec.

Book IV.

CHAP. I.

The cause of Timur's war in India.

Timur had given to his grandson prince Pir Mehemed, son of Gehaughir, the provinces of Condor, Bucalan, Cabul, Gaznin, and Candahar, with their dependencies, as far as the frontiers of India, as we said before; and this Mirza being established in these principalities, endeavor'd to render 'em flourishing by his justice and goodness.

He receiv'd orders from court to assemble the troops of all the provinces, and to depart at their head for other conquests, and to make himself master of many towns and countries in India. He accordingly set out with a great army commanded by good generals, the most valiant timurs of his country.

They began with the plunder of the Ouganis, inhabitants of the mountain of Sefman Couh*, which country they entirely ravag'd. They pass'd the Indus, invaded Outchah†, and also laid siege to Moultan ‡, which had then for its governor prince Sarakhi, eldest brother of Melon Can, who govern'd the empire of India for the young Sultan Mahmoud.

Timur resolved to make war in the empire of India, because since the death of Fovour Chah

---

* On the west of the Indus, between Cabul and Candahar.
† A town E. of the Indus, N. of Moultan.
‡ A town of India on the Rane, long. 107°, lat. 29.
The history of Timur-Bec.

emperor of it, Mellou Can and Sarenk two Chop brothers, who had been his generals, had usurp'd the sovereign power; and having plac'd on the throne Sultan Mahmoud, grandson of Firouz Chah, they reign'd over all India, Mellou Can residing at Deli*, near Sultan Mahmoud, and his brother Sarenk at Mouttan.

Mouttan being besieged by our army, was briskly attack'd and batter'd without interruption; there were two assaults given every day, and the regiment of Timur Coja son of Aeboua, fought with more heat than all the others, because this Emir was not only an admiral, but the first actor in this enterprize.

Timur receiv'd the news with joy; and as he had already resolve'd to carry his arms to Cathai or China, to root out the inidels, he got together all the troops of the empire. He had been before that inform'd, that the mahometan religion was then observ'd in many places of India, as at Deli and other cities, where the testimony of that faith was written upon their coins; nevertheless the greatest part of the provinces distant from this town were inhabited by idolaters. Timur, who design'd to partake of the merit and glory of the Gazic*, and had rais'd this numerous army with intention to make war on the enemies of his religion, soon resolve'd on the conquest of India. He assembled his council, according to the custom Ma-

* Capital of India, long. 100. lat. 70. It consists of three towns, San, Gehrepensa, and old Deli, all which make but one as Paris consists of the city, university, and suburbs at St. Germain.

* Gazic among the orientals signifies the wars the mahometans undertake against those who profess a different religion. They imagine that whoever dies in their wars, becomes martyr, and of consequence inhereth paradise.
The history of Timur-Bec.

Book IV. home had introduc'd, and propos'd his undertaking to the great Emirs of the flute in these terms.

"Fortune, my dear friends, furnishes us with such happy conjuncures, that she seems to offer herself to us, and invite us to lay hold of the favorable opportunity which present themselves; for as we have already seen the empires of Iran and Touran, and almost all Asia under our command, the shews us India, thro' the disorders of the princes who govern it, opening its gates to receive us. My name has spread terror throughout the universe; and the least motion I make is capable of making the whole earth. It is therefore time to attack the kingdom of India, where having overcome what opposes our design, we shall oblige this kingdom to acknowledge no other sovereign than me. What think ye, my dear friends, who are the companions of my victorys, of this great enterprize? Speak all in general, and every one in particular, your opinion of this proposal, which appears reasonable, since fortun has not yet withdrawn its protection from us."

Timur having thus made known his resolution to the captains and generals of his army, they fell upon the ground, and with sincere submission and perfect obedience, said, The order of the emperor was a law to all men, and more indispensibly so to them who were his slaves; that wherever he should set his feet, there they should be ready to lay their heads; that it was their glory punctually to obey his orders, even when he required 'em to undertake the greatest difficulty. Timur, pleas'd with this answer, heap'd favors on 'em, and thought of nothing
The history of Timur-Bec.

nothing more than the means of bringing this enterprize to perfection.

CHAP. II.

Timur brings his army into the field, to make war against the Guebres in India.

THE Alcoran says, the highest dignity man can attain to, is that of making war in person against the enemys of his religion. Mahomet adviseth the same thing, according to the tradition of the musulman doctors: wherefore the great Timur always strive to exterminate the infidels, as much to acquire that glory, as to signalize himself by the greatness of his conquests.

For which reason in the year of the Leopard, that is, in the month of Regeb of the year 800 of the Hegira, having left Mirza Omar son of Mirza Miran Chish to govern the city of Samarcand, he took the road to India, having many kings of Asia for his attendance, who were come to his court as to an asylum, to render their services to this conqueror.

He had in his army soldiers and even officers of all nations; but all the chiefs, and greatest part of the companies who were in posts of consequence, were Tartars: and he had also a great many lords of Kebel.

Timur being arriv'd at Terned, there ordered to be made a bridge of boats over the Oxus, which he cross'd with his army: He rais'd many choice soldiers and of good appearance in the fine city of Culm, from whence he took the road to Aaznie and Semencan; and after having
The history of Timur-Bec.

Book IV. pass’d the mountains of Bacalan, he went to encamp at Enderabe.

C H A P. III.

Timur marches against the inhabitants of Ketuer. He defeats the Stiapouches, who were cloth’d in black.

WHILST Timur was encamp’d at Enderabe, the inhabitants came to eail themselves at his feet, to complain of the insults and troubles they receiv’d from the idolaters of Ketuer, and from the Stiapouches: they represent to him that there were a great number of Mufulsims, from whom the infidels exacted every year excessive sums of money, under the name of tribute and Carage, which if they fail’d to pay punctually, they kill’d their men, and made their women and children slaves.

The emperor, touch’d with their complaints, and excite by zeal for the religion of which he was protector and defender, march’d immediately against these tyrants: he chose three soldiers out of every ten, and left the Mirza Chauro to command the rest of the army and the baggage at Goumandicour, where they ordinarily pass’d the summer. Timur decamp’d twice a day, and march’d with so much diligence, that he made two days journey in one.

---

* A mountain of Bedakhan inhabited by idolaters, long. 71° 16’ lat. 36’.
* An idolatrous nation cloth’d in black, inhabiting the mountains of the province of Bedakhan.
* A cool place in the mountain near Enderabe.
The history of Timur-Bec.

He soon arriv'd at Perjan *, whence he sent Chap. 5.

Mirza Rouflem, accompanied by Burhan A-
glen, and other Emirs, with ten thousand men
towards the left, to seek the Siapouches; and
following his road, he arriv'd at Gaunc †, where
he found a demolish'd citadel, which he cans'd
'to be rebuilt. Many Emirs and soldiers left
some of their horses at Gaunc, and ascended on
foot the mountain of Keiner, where the the
sun was in Gemini, the snow lay in so great
abundance, that the feet of most part of the
horses, which the lords would have carry'd
up, fail'd 'em; yet some of 'em were found'd
'on so much during the night and the frost,
that they were contrain'd to get up: but day
being come, and the snow turn'd into ice, they
kept these horses under tents till evening, when
they continued to ascend the mountain, so that
at length they arriv'd at the top, and then sent
for the rest of the horses. And as the infidels
dwell in narrow passages and precipices, and
there was no road to get to them, besides what
was cover'd with snow; some of the Emirs and
soldiers descended by cords, while others lying
on the snow, slid down to the bottom. They
made a sort of raft for Timur, to which they
fallen'd rings, that they might tie the cords to it
of one hundred and fifty cubits in length: he
sat upon it, while many persons let him down
from the top to the bottom of the mountain,
as far as the cords would reach. Others dug
with pickaxes in the snow a place where he
might stand firm. They who were on the top

* A town in the province of Bedakchan, two days journey
from Enderise near the Siapouches.

† A town at the foot of the mountain of Keiner, long. 14.
lat. 35.
The history of Timur-Bec:

...having gently descended, they let down Timur again in the machine. The place also was marked out where he should stay next; and so on till the fifth time, when he arrived at the foot of the mountain. Then this monarch took a haft in his hand to roll on, and walked on foot a great way. These fatigues did not deter him, because of his confidence in the merit of the Gazie, which always increased his ardent zeal for the most difficult enterprises. Those who work for God may rest assured of success. They also let down some of the emperor's horses, girding them about the belly and neck, with great precaution; but most of them through the fault of the guides fell headlong down, so that there remained but two fit for service. Then Timur took horse, and all the army followed on foot.

The infidels of this country are strong men, and as large as the giants of the people of Aaz; they go all naked; their kings are nam'd Oda and Oudachou; they have a particular language, which is neither Persian, nor Turkish, nor Indian; and know no other than this; and if it was not for the inhabitants of the neighbouring places, who are found there by chance, and having learnt their language, serve for interpreters, no one would be able to understand them.

These infidels were in a citadel, at the foot of whose walls passes a great river; and on the other side of this river there was a high mountain. As they had learnt the approach of Timur twenty-four hours before his arrival, they abandoned this post, crossed the river, and car-
ry'd their effects to the top of this mountain, Chap. 3, imagining it inaccessible, especially with the intrenchments they had made there.

When the army after long fatigues arriv'd at the citadel, they found nothing there but some sheep the enemy had left, which they made themselves masters of: then having set fire to the houses, they immediately crossed the river. The emperor order'd 'em to ascend the mountain by many narrow passages; which our soldiers did, and at the same time return'd thanks to God.

Cheik Arlan, at the head of the vanguard of the left wing, attack'd the foremost of the enemy's, and made himself master of a rising ground. They were also attack'd by Ali Sultan Taiachi, who came down into the place where they were encamp'd. A colonel nam'd Chamelie signaliz'd himself by many great actions; and fourteen of our bravest soldiers fell from the top of the mountain to the bottom, and were kill'd. Mubacher also behav'd himself gallantly. Mengelli Caja advance'd at the head of his company, and gain'd the top of the mountain. Sevindgo Behader did all that could be expected from the greatest valor. Cheik Ali Saliferi advance'd as far as the ridge of the mountain with all his soldiers; he attack'd the enemy, and got possession of their gell. Moufi Reemal and the Emir Hufloin Courniri behav'd themselves with the utmost resolution; and as length all the Emirs of the Hezars and Coughous attack'd the infidels on all sides in the most dangerous places. The enemy defended themselves vigorously, notwithstanding the great danger of their men. The fight lasted three nights...
Book IV. nights with unheard of oddlunci: but at length these unfortunate men finding themselves no longer able to make resistance, beg'd quarter, with tears in their eyes. Timur sent to 'em Ac Sultan Kechi, with order to tell them that if they would come to him with submission and obedience, abandon their errors, and take up a resolution to acknowledge but one God, and embrace the mahometan religion with sincerity, he would not only give 'em their lives and effects, but also leave 'em to enjoy their principality as before. They had no sooner learnt this from an interpreter, than the fourth day they came to call themselves at the feet of the emperor, conducted by Ac Sultan Kechi: they abjured their idolatry, and embrace'd the mahometan religion, promising to submit entirely to the emperor, and obey all his commands. Timur, according to his wonted generosity, gave them clothes, and sent them away, after having encourag'd 'em by the most affectionate speeches.

Night being come, these wretches, whose hearts were more black than their garments, fell upon the regiment of Chamelie, and put all the soldiers of it to the sword, except a few, who, the wounded and lame, escap'd their hands.

As soon as this treason was discover'd, our men slew near one hundred and fifty of 'em. All the army got up upon the mountain, and following the precept of Mahomet, who orders the women to be sparing'd, they put to the sword all the old and young men of these infidels, and carry'd away their women and children. At length they built towers on the top of the mountain and the end of the bridge, with the heads of these traitors, who had never bow'd their head to adore the true God. Timur order'd to be engrav'd upon marble the history of
The history of Timur-Bec.

of this action, which happen'd in the month of Chap. Ramadan in the year of the Hegira 805; and he added the particular Epocha which this people us'd, that their posterity might have some knowledge of the famous valor of the ever-victorious Timur. This pillor to inscrib'd gave the greater pleasure to Timur, in that these people had never been conquer'd by any prince in the world, not even by Alexander the great.

CHAP. IV.

Timur sends Mehemed Azad to gain intelligence of Mirza Roustem and Burhan Aglen. His return to Kether.

As there came no news of Mirza Roustem and Burhan Aglen, who were gone against the Siapouches, the emperor order'd the inhabitants of Kether to furnish him with guides; and he sent Mehemed Azad and Doletchah, who had been rais'd to preferments in his court. Four or five Emirs accompany'd 'em, with four hundred Turks and three hundred Tadjics, commanded by Mehemed Azad, who had orders to get information of Mirza Roustem and Burhan Aglen. Mehemed after his departure, according to Timur's order, went up, by strait and difficult passages with extreme fatigue, high mountains cover'd with snow, which he afterwards bid down, having

1 The Turks are those who descend from the Mongols and Tartars.
2 The Tadjics are the inhabitants of the town of Transkeston, and all the country of Iran, who are neither Tartars, Mongols nor Turks.
The history of Timur-Bec.

Book IV. Strongly fasten'd his buckler to his shoulders. He then march'd to the fortress of the Siapouches, where he cou'd not meet a single person, or hear one word, but he found the tracks of the feet of several men, who were gone to the other side of the mountain. There were the footsteps of the Siapouches, who laying advice of the march of Mirza Roulem and Burhan Aglen, were gone out of their fortresses, and retir'd to the mountains, where they lay in ambush in a very narrow passage. Some pass'd by 'em, and others without precaution got off their horses, which they let go loose: then the Siapouches, laying hold of the opportunity, came out of their ambush, and fell suddenly upon them. Burhan Aglen, thro his great cowardice, or rather by an unheard-of treason, flung off his coat of mail, and fled without fighting, which caus'd the defeat of his troops. When a general turns his back, we may say he is the murderer of his soldiers. The infidels seeing the Mussulmans fly, became more daring; and pursuage our men close, slew many of 'em with their axes and war-clubbs, and among the rest Cheik Husein Courtchi, Dolotchah Gebegi, and Adina captain of the horse, who, after a vigorous defence, were destroy'd among the rest.

Affairs were in this miserable state, when Mehemed Azad observing the prints of the feet of the Siapouches, arriv'd in the passage where this tragedy happen'd: he met 'em at their return, attack'd 'em with the greatest bravery, after a sharp fight utterly defeated 'em, and took from 'em the bucklers, arms and horses of our Mussulmans. He then went to rejoin Burhan Aglen with the horse which had fled; and every
every one knowing his own bucklers, arms and Chap. 4.
horses, they were restor'd.

Mehemed Azad then told Burhan Aglen that he must stay in that place all night; but this coward would not do it: he got up to the top of the mountain, whither he was follow'd by his troops, to the great regret of Mehemed Azad; for when a commander proves a traitor or a coward, his army never falls of being conquer'd. This action of Burhan was very inauspicious; and since the reign of Genghiz Can there has not been one prince of the race of Gayar *, who has committed the like. Burhan had formerly done the same in the war of the Uzbeks, and receiv'd pardon by the singular goodness of Timur, who continu'd to honor him as before, and had even sent him on this expedition, in hopes he would repair his fault, and recover his credit, which in this last affair he entirely de-

After the conquest of Kater, and defeat of the idolaters, Timur sent Gelaleddinlam and All Sifian with troops to seek an easy passage from the mountains, and to clear the ways: and he order'd them to ruin whatsoever they met belong- ing to the infidels.

These two Emirs having found a passage to their mines, open'd a way in the snow: and then Timur crost'd the mountains, and went down to Cauus', where he left a strong gar-

son. At this place he join'd the Emirs and soldiers, who for eighteen hours had constantly

---

* A Mogul bond, from whence Genghiz Can sprung; which bond were the descendents of an ancient Mogul prince named Gayar, who was descendend from Ture, son of Japhet, son of Noah.

* A ruin in Kater, rebuilt by Timur.
The history of Timur-Bec.

Book IV. fought on foot: then they took horse, and accompany'd the emperor.

When Burhan Aglen and Mehemed Azad had join'd the imperial standard with their troops, Timur would not admit the first into his presence, because without making any defence he had fled from the infidels: he treated him with scorn as he met him by chance: and to shew his infamy, cited a passage of the Alcoran, which assures us, That twenty zealous Mussulmans are able to conquer two hundred infidels, provided they trust in God: and yet Burhan (laid the emperor) at the head of ten thousand men fled from a handful of infidels, and put the Mussulmans in danger of being torn in pieces. Then Timur declar'd him criminal, and as a mark of disgrace banish'd him the court.

Mehemed Azad having fought on foot at the head of four hundred men only, and stood his ground against the same men, tho' puff'd up with their victory; and having also put a great number of 'em to the sword, recovering from 'em all the horses they had got from us; Timur heap'd on him honors and riches, distinguishing him by great praises, and giving him the command of a regiment to reward his valor. The emperor distribut'd also largesses among those who had given marks of their courage in so dangerous an expedition.
CHAP. V.

Timur sends Mirza Charoe to Herat.

At this place * Timur permitted his dear * Gauc- fon Mirza Charoe, heir apparent to the crown, to return to Herat, capital of Coraidz, of which he was governor. When he took leave of this prince, he gave him his advice, and said many expressions which shew’d a fatherly tenderness and affection; and after having embraced him, and recommended him to the divine protection, he dismiss’d him. Timur decamp’d at the same time, and march’d towards Cabul; he took the road to Tulle *, ascended the mountain of Hendou-Kech, pass’d by Pendogir *, commonly call’d Pendogir, and went to encamp in a meadow of the country of Banian, about five leagues from Cabul. And as the design of this conqueror was chiefly to dispense justice to the people, and to render the countries and towns flourishing, he gave orders for a canal to be dug, which might join the river which passes through those quarters. He divided the land between the captains and solders, and in a short time there was a great canal made five leagues long, which is yet call’d the canal of Mahighir; at length there were many large villages built upon it, and the valley, which before had not

* A tribe-town of Beakhezeh.
* A town and mountain, where Alufeda, the geographer, says there are two silver mines; and that the town is full of ditches dug to get out the ore. It is at the head of the mountain of Cachmir to the west, between Cabul and Indoreh.
The history of Timur-Bec.

Book IV. been cultivated, became a fine and delightful garden.

C H A P. VI.

The arrival of ambassadors from several places. Taizi Aglen returns from the country of the Calmack, and Cheik Noureddin from that of Fars.

Timur being encamp'd in the plain of Dourin, there arriv'd an ambassador from Timur Cotluc Aglen a prince of Capchae, and another from Emir Aidecou, a prince of Capchae, as also a third of Gere from Kefer Coja Aglen, who were presented before the throne by the Emirs and Nevians. After they had kis't the ground and perform'd other usual ceremonies, they began their harangue, wishing all prosperity to Timur, and highly extolling him; then they declar'd the subject of their embassy, which was, to allure the emperor that their matters were faithful servants of his majesty; that tho' for some time past there had been no good intelligence or agreement between 'em, which had made 'em depart from the obedience they ow'd him, and wander as vagabonds in the deserts; yet consideration and prudence having now brought 'em to see the deformity of their actions, they sincerely repented of 'em; and that if the emperor would be merciful and pardon their fault, they would for the future

*A village near Garan.
be most obedient, and never disobey the orders of his officers.

Taizi Agleaf, who for some difference which happened between him and the Cun at Olug Yurr, fled from the kingdom of Calmac, came to this place to lay himself at the feet of the throne, and was received as handsomely as a prince of his rank could expect. Timur embraced him, and presented him with a veil woven with gold, a belt set with precious stones, horse of great price, several mules and camels, tents and pavilions, and whatever could be expected from a great emperor. At the same place also arrived Emir Chelt Noureddin, son of Sar Bouga, who had been left by Timur in Persia, after the five years' campaign there, in order to receive the revenues of that kingdom and the neighboring countries. He brought with him an immense treasure, with abundance of jewels of inestimable price; likewise animals proper for the chase, and birds of prey, leopards, gold money, belts enriched with precious stones, veils woven with gold, fruits of all colors, arms and all sorts of utensils for war, Arabian horses with saddles of gold, great camels, several carriages and riding mules, the khan's emblazoned with gold and silver; umbrellas, canopies, pavilions, tents and curtains of scarlet and all colors; in short, there was in great quantity of curious pieces of work, that the secretaries and comptrollers of the Divan employ'd three days and three nights.

---

1 This is the great bourn, fear of the kings of Calmac, or rather of the Mogul Caun or emperors, near Garamont, capital of Calmac.

2 A kingdom, formerly call'd Cusward, in Mogulistan, north of the kingdom of Courge or Leilung.
The history of Timur-Bec.

Book IV. so register ’em, and write copies of ’em, which were presented to the lords of the court for their perusal.

The day for presenting petitions being appointed, the Emirs or generals, and the Nevians or foreign princes, presented Emir Cheik Npouraddin before the imperial throne. This prince knelt down, and the whole day was spent in calling over before the emperor all his presents, than which none ever were seen so magnificent, not even in the reign of the great Feridon *, or of Corsu Periuzi *.

Prince Taizi Agfen, the ambassadors of Capchac, and several princes of the race of Genghis Can, who were present, were surpriz'd at it; not only at the sight of the riches, but also considering that the power of Timur must be very great, since one of his subjects was rich enough to make so magnificent a present.

Timur distributed a great many of these rarities, and gave a very friendly reception to Emir Cheik Npouraddin, who told the emperor that all these presents were too small for those who had resolud to sacrifice their lives to his service.

Timur being willing to treat the ambassadors of the Uxbes * and Getes handsomely, gave ’em caps of gold, belts, veils and horses; he granted ’em whatsoever they ask’d, and loaded ’em with presents, as well for themselves as their masters, with letters in answer to those they had brought. At length Emir Cheik Npouraddin knelt down, and ask’d pardon for Burhan Agfen, and the rest who accompany’d him at

---

* King of Persia of the first race.
* King of Persia of the third race.
* The princes of Capchac are here call’d Uxbes.
the audience: 'Timur granted this with an ex-
cess of clemency and generosity.
He then sent to India Sultan Mahmoud Can
with the troops of the left wing, and all the
princes and Emirs who had before receiv'd
orders.
At this time Malesh Mehomet, brother to
Leckker Chah an Ougari, call himself at the
feet of the emperor, and in an humble manner
told him, that Moulla, prince of the nation of
the Kerkes, had kill'd his brother, who was an
officer of his majesty; that he had ruin'd the
town of Ijab, and pillag'd his Herares; that
he had made himself master of their effects by
force, and that this villain constantly robb'd in
the great roads, that no one cou'd pass those
quarters: "For my part, says Malesh, I, who
am a poor servant of your majesty, have led
to save my life from the hands of this barba-
rous man: I have pass'd by Garna, and said
here on the good news I receiv'd of the
"march of your imperial standard."
This advice rais'd Timur's passions, and he
rejoic'd to put a stop to these disorders, by some
means or other. He order'd Malesh to lie con-
ceal'd, and to keep this advice secret, telling
him he would call Moulla to court; and if he
came, he would oblige him to do justice, and
make entire satisfaction; but if he did not come,
he would give him an army, with which he
might revenge himself on this murderer, for the
death of his brother. Timur immediately sent
The history of Timur-Bec.

Book IV. A messenger to Moulla, to whom he gave orders to tell him as follows.

"The emperor having advice that you have demolish'd the city of Isjub, situating in the great road to India, does not think convenient that it should remain in ruins: wherefore he wills and commands you to come forthwith to court, where he designeth to invest you with the government of that country, not doubting but you will rebuild the place, and endow it in its former splendor."

The messenger having hitherto acquiesced himself of this commission, Moulla came immediately with a resolution to call himself at the feet of the throne; but Timur, who had resolve'd to put him to death, with all his accomplices, receiv'd him in a civil manner at first sight, and gave him a veil woven with gold, a belt, a sword with a gold handle, a horse well equip'd, with other curious things, and at last said to him, "We will assign you troops, with which it is expedient you should go and rebuild that place: wherefore depart with thy domestics and friends, and use all your efforts, that the place may be rebuilt before we arrive: and if there is need of anything towards the perfecting of it, we will order it you; and then leaving you in the government of it, we will depart for India." Timur then sent him away, and order'd Moulla Reemal, with three hundred brave men, to accompany him.

When Moulla was arriv'd at Isjub, he made dispatch in executing the orders he had receiv'd, and employ'd all his men and domestics, about three hundred persons, in the rebuilding of this place.
CHAP VII.

The repairing the fortress of Irbah, and the destroying of the Oungans robbers.

TIMUR sent from the country of Douglas to Samarakand the auglful prince's Serai Mule Canum, and the Mirza Olue Beli, who were at court; and then he decamp'd. In four days he arriv'd at the town of Irbah, which he found nearly repair'd: there he fix'd his imperial tent, and the army encamp'd in order of battle, every one in his proper post. Timur order'd that the rebuilding of the town shou'd be continu'd; and the Emir Chahmelik and Geladilisam had a commissio for rebuilding of mosques and other public buildings, intil which that all was finish'd in fourteen days. Timur had before commanded the Tavachis nor to suffer any of the subjects of Mouffe, employ'd in repair ing the town, to re-enter it after once going out: and this order was not given without cause; for on the seventeenth of Zilhadjg. Sep. 12, in the morning, Timur having taken horse to view the place, with its ditches and walls, accompany'd with many princes and generals, who march'd on foot on each side him, he was perceiv'd by seven of Mouff's labourers, who were in an upper story of an house situat behind a gate of the town; and being within bow-shot of him, they let fly from a window with design to kill him. But they did not take good aim, and the ruffling the arrow made only hurt his horse. However Timur went into the town by another gate, and caus'd Mouff and his ac-
The History of Timur-Bec.

Book IV. complices to be seiz’d: the seven assassins who were in the house from whence the arrow was shot, took up their arms to defend themselves, and wounded some of our men; but at last Ke-leki Sillani broke open the house with some soldiers of his company, and put 'em to death.

At nine a-clock the same morning, Timur deliver’d to Malek Mehemed his enemy Montia, with two hundred of his men, whom he had seiz’d. Malek, assisted by three of his servants, cut off all their heads, to revenge himself for the death of his brother whom they had slaine, and made a tower of them. Then they pillag’d all his country and subjects, and put to death several leaders of those villains who were mix’d among our officers. The women and children, as also the goods and moveables of these tyrants, were given to the poor oppressed people of Irijab, who, for being of Malek Mehemed’s side, had suffer’d for several years great violence and injustice. And on this occasion we see that punishment of the Alcoran fulfill’d, which threatens tyrants with confusion and ruin.

Timur gave the principality of Irijab to Malek Mehemed, and by this means deliver’d travellers from being infeeted by these intolerable robbers. Thus as he tender’d kingdoms flourishing by his goodness and equity, so he suppress’d disorders by his power and justice.
CHAP. VIII.

Timur marches to Chenouzan and Nagaz; and destroys the robbers of the nation of the Persians.

Timur, after having settled the affairs of the country of Irjub, which required as great authority as his to put it in order, the eighteenth of Zilhadj, in the year 800, marched towards Chenouzan. After having passed many forests and some mountains, he encamped near that place, where he held the next day, and sent his son prince Calil Sultan to Banai, by the road of Capchagai, at the head of the baggage, accompanied by several Emirs. Timur having marched all night with great diligence, went with some thousands of horse towards the fortresses of Nagaz, where he arrived early on the twenty-first of Zilhadj.

It is to be remark'd, that the court having been before at Cabul, Emir Solyman Chah, and other commanders of the troops of Coratiana, were come to Nagaz, according to Timur's order, to rebuild that place; and that they had worked very hard there, so that it was completely fortify'd. Timur at his arrival there, was inform'd that the nation of the Persians, a sort of Ouganis, to whom he had sent orders to appear before his throne with their troops, to serve in the army, had revolted, and refused

---

* Town of Cabulista near the Indus.
* A town of Cabulista, between the Indus and the river of Cabul.
to send their men: for, one day when Mirza Pir Mehemed, who had been to view some neighbouring places in India, was return'd with his troops and plunder, bringing with him to Cabul several captives; these inconsiderate men were so bold as to stop up their passage, to plunder 'em or part of the spoils, pass the river of Hir, and entrench themselves in the high mountains and forests, from whence they constantly went to rob on the high-ways. Timur had no fonder advice of this, than giving loose to his passion, he the same day march'd in search of these insolent people, whose end must of course be unfortunate. He came up to 'em in three days; and order'd all his soldiers to dismount, that they might march into the woods and mountains with more ease, and to seize and exterminate these rebels. They attack'd 'em with the greatest vigor, and after a weak defence cut 'em in pieces, made their children prisoners, and pil- laged their goods, having set fire to their habitation; and as there were some who fled, Timur would stay some time in this mountain, to deliver passengers from the fear of these robbers. At this place the depuits and Keliters of the nation of Oubel came to call themselves at his feet, to beg pardon, and implore his protection. This monarch, who fought nothing more than the welfare of his people, not only forgave their crimes, but receiv'd 'em into his protection, heap'd favors on 'em, and granted 'em many privileges, because of their sincerity.
The history of Timur-Bec.

The Emir Solyman Chah having restor'd the Chap. 8. town of Nagaz to its former splendor, learnt that the Kelatians, a strong and numerous people, had refused to obey the orders of the emperor, and to come to the camp with their troops. This news oblig'd him to fall on 'em, which he did with such bravery, that in two days and nights he defeated these giants, who before that time were esteem'd the most valiant men in the world: he pillag'd their country, cut to pieces a great number of 'em, put the rest in chains, made their children slaves, and burnt their houses. After this he left the country of the Kelatians, and return'd in triumph to the imperial throne, where he was receiv'd with all the respect his actions deserv'd.

The first of Muharrem in the year 801, Timur leaving the country of the Persians, went down to view the neighbourhood of the town of Nagaz: he sent the Emir Solyman Chah to Moulstant with good troops, to Mirza Pir Mehemed; and leaving Chah Ali Ferahi with five hundred foot in garrison at Nagaz, he departed for Banou, in which he left Pir Ali Spahia, and the Emir Haufein Courtchi, with a sufficient garrison.

Timur departed from Banou, and the eighth of Muharrem arriv'd at the river Indus, at the very place where Sultan Gelaeddelin king of Carizme, when he fled from the wrath of Genghis Can, swarm'd across the river. Genghis Can, took encamp'd here, but did not pass the Indus. {139b}

Timur had a bridge of boats and reeds made over this river, in which all the army were...
The history of Timur-Bec.

Book IV. constantly employ'd; and it was smith'd in two days.

At this place he dismiss'd the Ambassadors who came to pay their respects to him, among whom were the said Mehemed Medini, ambassador from Mecca and Medina, and from all the princes and Chertifs of Arabia, who pray'd this conqueror to honor 'em one day with a visit, and take 'em under his protection. Timur also dismiss'd the ambassador of Eshtender Chah, prince of Cashmir, whom he had sent to beseech his majesty to receive him upon his obedience: he order'd him to tell his master that he receiv'd his offer with pleasure, and that he desir'd he would not fail to come to him at the town of Dipalpour, and there join the imperial camp.

---

CHAP. IX.

Timur passes the river Indus.


The twelfth of Muharam in the year 891, which answers to that of the Leopard, Timur cross'd the Indus at the head of his army, and encamp'd at the entrance of the great defart of Gerou, which is call'd Tcholl getahl, because the Sultan Gealeeddin Carezem Chah, flying from the wrath of Genghiz Cau, cross'd the Indus at this place, and enter'd this defart to avoid being put to death by the sword of

---

* The Chertifs of Mecca and Medina offer'd to address Timur Calî, the Bajaz was invest'd with that high dignity.
* A province, whose chief capital was Ragai.
* A town of India, d. of Indus.
The history of Timur-Bec.

... that conqueror. At Timur's arrival at this place, the Rayas, and the principal inhabitants of the mountain of Coubjoind, came to make their submissions to him; they offered him presents, promised to remit to him considerable sums, and serve him on all occasions.

Some months before, Rouleem Tagi Bonga Berlas had been sent with an army towards Moultan; and having spent some days at Coubjoind, these same Rayas did him several important services, furnished him with provisions, and even mony to pay his soldiers. Timur was highly pleas'd with 'em upon these accounts, and resolving they should enjoy the fruits of his clemency, he prohibited every one from insulting 'em, and ordered they should be treated with humanity and affection. After which they returned home joyful and contented, without either being molested or deprived of their usual place of residence. These are the effects and fruits of clemency. The poet says, We ought always to be under the protection of our own actions.

CHAP. X.

Chehabeddin Mobarec Chab Temini commits hostilities against the emperor after his submission.

Chehabeddin Mobarec, who was prince of an ile of the river of Jamail, had a great number of officers under him, and was very

* A mountain S.E. of Cachemire.

* A river near the Indus; it is the continuation of the river Dandana, which comes from Cachemire.

rich
The history of Timur-Bec.

Book IV, rich in mony and moveables. When the Mirza Pîr Mohemed Chehângîr march'd to the frontier of Mountan, Chehâbeddin came to him to kill his feet, and met with a handsom reception from him. He submitted to the emperor, and after he had laid some time to make his court to the Mirza, he took his leave, and return'd home; where he suffered himself to be overtaken with pride, and trusting in the strength of his iile, which he believ'd inaccessible, he fortify'd it with a good ditch and high walls. Timur, at his arrival at the river of Jamad, had advice of his revolt; and the fourteenth of Mu-therem order'd the Emir Cheikh Nourredin to attack this iile at the head of his Toman, and as soon as he made himself master of it, to put to the sword every one he should find therein. When the Emir came there, he and his soldiers call themselves into the water to cross over. The besieging prepared to obstruct their passage; and there was such a furious battle fought as was ever heard of, which lasted till night. Chehâbeddin at the head of ten thousand men came by the windings of the river to attack our army in the rear during night, and fought with great courage and bravery. The Emir Cheikh Noureddin, a man of good conduct, receiv'd the enemy with the greatest intrepidity; and after several attacks entirely defeated 'em, constrain'd some to leap into the water, where they were drown'd, and killing the rest. Many of the Emperors' officers, and received several wounds.

Timur came with diligence to this place, and encamp'd near the iile. Chehâbeddin, who till that time had never us'd precaution in an affair, was so prudent as to get ready two hundred
The history of Timur-Bec.

deed flat-bottom'd boats, that he might escape Chosroes if he then'd be conquer'd. Whereupon at his return from the night-attack, in which he was vanquish'd, he fled with his domestics in these boats. With a great deal of difficulty they escap'd, rowing along the river Jamad, and at length they came to Outcha, a town of India.

The Emir Cheik Noureddin had orders to pursue him along the banks of the river: he flew a great number of these Indians with arrows. When he return'd, the emperor rewarded those who had hoist'd themselves gallantly on this occasion, and were wounded, giving 'em vells, and other things. Chehabeddin's boats arriving near the frontiers of Moulain, the troops of Mirza Pir Mehemed and Mirza Choroc, commanded by Solyman Chah, who had been sent out as scouts, hinder'd their passage, and seizing the boats on the river, cut 'em to pieces. Chehabeddin cast his wife and children into the river, and half-dead gain'd the bank. As many of this prince's subjects were retir'd into the woods, Timur order'd Chamelik to enter 'em, and if possible to exterminate all who were fled there for refuge. Chamelik accordingly enter'd the forests and bogs, and having slain a great number of those miserable people, and pillag'd their effects, return'd to the camp, laden with booty, and a great number of captives.

After the successes against Chehabeddin, the army march'd five or six days on the banks of the Jamad, and on the twenty-fourth of Mubarak it encamp'd on the borders of the Génare, a fortress over-against which the Jamad and the Génare join in one stream,
The history of Timur-Bec.

Book IV. the waves dashing against one another, make it appear like the troubled ocean. Timur order'd a bridge to be built over it, which was finish'd on the twenty-seventh of Muharrem, all the troops having been employ'd in it. We don't find in history that ever any one built a bridge over it before; and even Turmechirin Can't, who formerly cross'd it, was oblig'd to swim over.

CHAP. XI.
Timur's arrival at Toulonba.

TIMUR pass'd this great river* with all his army, and encamp'd on the other side: the next day having entirely left the bridge to give free passage to the baggage and the rest of the army, he went to encamp over-against the town of Toulonba, on the bank of the river, thirty-five miles* from Mulkian. The princes and Rajas, accompany'd by the Chelins and doctors, immediately came out of the place to call themselves at Timur's feet; they lift'd the ground on which he stood, and were handsomely treated by him.

Octob. 8. The same day Timur pass'd the river of Toulonba, and the twenty-ninth of Muharrem flaid on the other bank, till all the army was cross'd over. The first of Sefer he encamp'd in the neighboring plains of Toulonba.

* Defended from Genghiz Can: he conquer'd India, Anno Dom. 1249.
* Jemmi and Genave join'd.
The history of Timur-Bec.

The ministers tax'd this town, at two millions of crowns, for the safety of their effects and lives. The Cheriffs, because of the nobleness of their race, and the doctors for their learning and virtue, were exempted from this tax. They had even presents made 'em of vestis and other things, because Timur was naturally respectful to men of their character.

Some part of this tax was soon paid; but the inhabitants making a difficulty of paying the rest, the troops, who were in great want of provisions, had orders to carry away all the grain they could find. During the night the soldiers, under pretence of making a search, march'd towards the town, which they sack'd and pillag'd, burning all the houses, and even making the inhabitants slaves; the Cheriffs and doctors being the only persons exempt from this misfortune.

Timur had advice that a number of Rayas and little princes in the neighbourhood of Toulonba, who had before submitted to the Mirza Pir Mehomod, had now revolted; whereupon he sent the Emir Chamalik, and the Cheik Mehomod Aichusmar, with their regiments, to ravage the country of those Rayas, with orders to punish 'em severely, for an example to others. The Emirs immediately departed, and enter'd the totally whether the enemy was retir'd. They kill'd two thousand Indians, who became a prey to the wild beasts and birds; and carrying away their children prisoners, they return'd to the court, laden with the spoils of the rebels.

The eighth of Sefer, Timur departed from Nov. 45 Toulonba, and next day encamp'd on the borders of a deep lake, situate on the bank of the Blah, within sight of the town of Chanavaz.

1 A river near Labor, which falls into the Zave.
C H A P. XII.

Timur marches in search of Nusret Cokkeri.

TIMUR, having advice that Nusret, brother of the Cheik Cokkeri, had surrounded this deep and large lake with a wall, behind which he had retire'd with two thousand men, immediately took horse, and leaving the baggage, went to encamp with his army on the borders of this lake. He rang'd his soldiers in order of battle, and gave the command of the right wing to the Emirs Cheik Noureddin and Allahdad, the two greatest men of their time. The left wing was given to the Emirs Chamelik and Cheik Mehemed Aicoutmar. The main body was commanded by Ali Sultan Tarachi, with the infantry of Coratania. And being all in order they prepar'd to give a vigorous assault. Nusret at the head of a thousand Indians, posted himself on the borders of the lake in view of our men. Ali Sultan immediately attack'd him with his infantry, and tho' the marshes and sloughs were very disadvantageous to our men, yet they gave marks of their invincible courage. Ali Sultan was wound'd in the fight, as well as several others of our captains, but the Emirs Cheik Noureddin and Allahdad, entering into the bogs, cut all the enemy's troops, and fixing their heads on their lances, laid 'em at Timur's feet. It's uncertain what became of Nusret, whether he fled into the desert, or was slayn. The soldiers let fire to the houses of these rebels, pillag'd their goods, and brought away a great number of cattle.
The History of Timur-Bec.

The tenth of Sefer the army pass'd this great Charroe, lake, and the low-lands, which were full of bogs and marshes, notwithstanding the extreme difficulty of the ways, and went to encamp at Channavaz, a great and populous town. Here they found several granaries full of corn, of which the soldiers took as much as they had occasion for.

Shortly after the Emirs had orders to depart. They crossed the river of Biah, in pursuit of some soldiers of Nasr, who had fled. They overtook 'em, and having cut 'em in pieces, brought away great booty. Timur halted two days at Channavaz, and sent fire to the granaries which were left, in order to reduce the infidels to extremity; and on the 13th of Sefer he de- Nov. re camp'd, and went down to the banks of the river Biah over against the town of Dgundgian, to which place the baggage and main body of the army was come. Here he made all his troops pass the river. The same day Herimul, a faithful domestic of prince Charoe, came from Herat; he acquainted the emperor with this prince's good state of health, which very much pleased him, and excited him to read the Alcoran, and distribute alms in token of joy.

C H A P. XIII.

Arrival of prince Pir Mehemed Ghalghbir from Moutan.

We said in the chapter which gives the reason of Timur's march into India, that the Mirza Pir Mehemed besieged the town of Moutan, where, after a siege of six months, the
The history of Timur-Bec.

Book IV. the inhabitants were in such great want of victuals, that they were constraint'd to eat uncleanly things, and even dead bodys: and Sar- renk the governor being at length oblig'd to fly, the town was taken by our prince, who immediately sent advice of it to the emperor. In the mean while there happen'd an inundation, which caus'd a mortality among our horses, and oblig'd us to carry the sick horses into the town, and there shut 'em up.

Upon this accident the Rayas of these countries revolted, tho' they had before submitted. They declar'd war against us by acts of hostility, massacring the governors who had been set over 'em. And as our men had no horses, these insolent people advanc'd during night to the gates of the town, which extremely disturb'd our Mirza: but at length the enemy, on advice of Timur's approach, flung away their weapons, and fled.

The Mirza being deliver'd from this trouble, came out of Moultan the fourteenth of Sefer, and march'd to the imperial camp, on the banks of the Biah; where he had the honor to kiss the emperor's feet, who tenderly embrac'd him, and gave him a handsom reception.

Jancid Bourouldai, his brother Bayazid, and Mehemed Dervich Taicani, who in the wars of Carezam had fled from the Emir Gehancha, and with great difficulty were got into India.

* Pechial is the name the Indians give to the great rains and inundations which happen in India at a certain time of the year; for them they lay to travellers. Don't go now, it is the season of Pechial. This inundation is caus'd by the great rains and snows, which falling off the mountains, cover the flat countries, fill the rivers, and overflow like the Nile in Egypt; and this constantly happens in the months of July, August, September, and October.
having heard that the Mirza Pir Mehemed had made himself master of Mouttan, came from the very furthest parts of India to implore his protection. The Mirza carry'd 'em to the emperor, and procur'd 'em the honor to salute him, begging pardon for 'em. Timur granted their lives, but not their libertys, before they had been bastinado'd according to the laws of Ghenghis Khan. The fifteenth of Seper, Timur cross'd the Biah, and went to encamp at Dgengdian, forty miles distant from Mouttan. In three days the soldiers pass'd this river, some in barks, and others by swimming, notwithstanding its rapidity, without any damage.

Timur flaid four days at Dgengdian; and the eighteenth of Seper, the prince Pir Mehemed made a sumptuous banquer, and offer'd his rich presents, which consist'd of crowns of gold, belts of gold, Arabian horses with gold saddles, jewels of great price, fruits, curious velvets, basons and pots of gold and silver; of which there was so great a number, that the secretarys and comptrollers of the Divan employ'd two days in registering 'em. Timur distributed these presents among the Emirs, Viziers and officers of his court, according to their defects: and as the Mirza's soldiers had loot their horses in this campaign, and some were oblig'd to ride on oxen, and others to go on foot, he gave thirty thousand horses among 'em. Then Timur departed for Schoual: on the twenty first of Seper he encamp'd at Afoutan, where he flaid one day, and at length went to Geelouul.

* Town 5. of the river Biah.
* A town between Lahoe and Dipalpur, 5. of the Biah.
The inhabitants of Dipalpouhad formerly submitted to the Mirza Pir Mehemed, who placed over 'em a governor nam'd Meisafier Cabuli, with a thousand men: but there being a mortality among the horses of the Mirza, which consequently diminished his troops, these men joined with the Goulams' guards of Sultan Pirouz Chah, and flew Meisafier with the thousand men he commanded. On the report of Timur's approach, these rebels, thinking to escape the emperor's fury, retur'd with their effects into the fortress of Battram. Timur, at his arrival at Geshnoat, left the Emir Chahmelek and Dolec Timur Tavacht, with the baggage, and main-body of the army, which he order'd 'em to conduct by the way of Dipalpou, and to join him at Sannona, a town near Delli. Then he departed with ten thousand horse, and got to Arjomand on the twenty-fourth of Sefier; the inhabitants of which town having been drawn from their obedience to the nephew of the Cheek Noured-rettain, by the Cheekas Munaver and Sad, had dishonestly abandon'd their country; for when Cheekas, after having seduced 'em, took 'em into their pay, and carry'd 'em to a town call'd Battram, except some few who fled to Delli with the Cheek Munaver.

The Cheekas and doctors, being inform'd of the respect Timur always shew'd to men of their character, were so far from being disturb'd at

---

* A town between Lahor and Delli.
* Goulame are the corps-de-garde of the Indian kings, who are skilled in coffee and squander. They are educated by the king's order in the noble exercises of arms and sciences. They are also lack in Persia, who in their youth are call'd Goulame, and when grown up and incorporated among the guards, Castells.
these actions, that as soon as they had advice Chap. xii.
of his arrival in their quarters, they came im-
mediately to the foot of the throne, and met
with a kind reception there. Timur gave the
government of their town to Moulana Nafe-
reddin Amur, and to Chahab Mehemed son of
Coja Mahmoud, with orders to hinder the
troops in their passage from molesting the inha-
bitants of that place. Thus Timur treated
those civilly who rely'd on his protection, and
extirpated those who refuse'd to submit, pillag-
ing their goods, and carrying away prisoners
their women and children.

CHAP. XIV.

The taking the town of Bend, and the for-
tress of Batmir; the inhabitants of which
places are put to the sword.

The citadel of Batmir was the strongest
and most noted place in India; situate in
a desert, and out of the common road. The
inhabitants have no water, except from a great
lake near the gate of the town, which is never
fill'd but in inundations: and as no foreign
army ever came into these parts before, the inha-
bitants of Dipalpour, Adjouan and other
towns, fled for refuge into Batmir, to escape
the fury of our soldiers. So many had retir'd
hither, that the place not being large enough
to contain all their cattle and effects, they had
left without a great number of cattle, and se-
veral chariots fill'd with movable goods.

C 4
The history of Timur-Bec.

Book IV. Nov. 22.

The twenty-fifth of Sefer, in the morning, Timur enter'd Adjoudan; he visited the sepulchre of the Cheik Ferid Cheker Condje, whose protection he implor'd near God's throne. Then he departed for the conquest of Batnin, cross'd the river Dena, and encamp'd on the hill of Caleseuteli, ten miles distant from Adjoudan, and fifty from Batnin; three miles, which they call Gouronh, making one Farfanga, or a Persian league. Timur read the noon-prayers at Caleseuteli; and then he march'd all night by moonlight, and cross'd the great desert in one day.

Nov. 23.

The twenty-sixth of Sefer, at ten in the morning, he came before Batnin, and immediately caus'd the drums to be beat, and the great cry sourouh to be made: and the soldiers pillag'd whatever they cou'd find without the place. Raudouldgin the governor prepar'd to make resistance. He had a great many soldiers and domesticks, and reign'd as a sovereign in that country. He forc'd the merchants and caravans to pay custom to him, no one being safe from his insults. The strength of the place, the many officers, and the abundance of effects he had, made him so insolent and proud, that he refus'd to obey Timur; for which reason the army march'd directly against the place. The right wing was commanded by the Emir Solyman Chah, the Cheik Noureddin, and Al-Ishad; and the left had for its leaders, the Mirza Calli Sultan, and the Cheik Mehumed Acouttur.

At the first attack our generals made themselves masters of the out-parts and suburbs, where they faw a great number of Indians, and got a vast quantity of booty; they also took the counter-carpe: and at the same time the Emirs, colonels and captains invested the town; and
and arming themselves with their bucklers, gave a second assault. Raoudoudgin posted himself at the gate of the town with the bravest of his Indians; but the Emirs Solyman Chah, Seld Coja and Gehan Mule, who belonged to prince Chahroc's court, marched to attack that gate. Seld Coja and Gehan Mule fell briskly upon the enemy near the person of the Indian prince, and perform'd several heroic actions. Then all the soldiers began to advance at the sound of kettledrums, drums and trumpets, and the terrible Kerrenai. They gave many assaults; and as they were on the point of gaining the place, Raoudoudgin, despairing of being able to make any longer resistance, demanded quarter, and had recourse to the emperor's clemency. He sent a Sheriff to Timur, to desire a suspension of arms for one day, on condition that he came the next to call himself at his feet. Timur granted his petition for the messenger's sake, who was of the race of Mahomet; he order'd his soldiers to retire from the gate of the town, and even from the suburbs, and to encamp in the open plain. Next day Raoudoudgin not keeping his word, orders were given that every Emir shou'd lap that part of the walls which was over-against his respective post, that they might the more easily take the town by assault. Every one obey'd, and all the fire, stones and arrows the besieged cast upon our men, cou'd not divert 'em. Raoudoudgin and all his court being astonished at their intrepidity, got upon the tops of their towers, and made signals that they implored the conqueror's clemency, acknowledged their fault, and would for the future obey the emperor, only begging he would save their lives. Timur, following the precepts of the Alcoran, which
which tells us that pardon is the eithe of victory, hearthen'd to their prayer; whereupon in the evening Raoudoundgin sent his son Naib, with presents of animals and Arabian horses, to the foot of the throne. Timur, after a handsome reception, gave him a veil of gold-brocade, a belt and sword; and then sent him back to his father. This prince took courage, and mov'd at Timur's civilitys, came out of the place the twenty-eighth of Sefer at nine in the morning, accompany'd by the Cheit Sadeudin Adjoudan; he kiss'd the threshold of the door, and at length approach'd the imperial carpet; he made several presents of animals and three lots of Arabian horses, nine in a set, with saddles of gold to each. Timur recompens'd him with veils of gold, belts of gold, and a crown. And because the people who were in this place, were very numerous, especially those of Dipalpourt and Adjoudan; the Emirs Solyman Chah and Allahdad had orders to guard the gate of the furtresses. And on the twenty-ninth of Sefer, Timur order'd the people assembled there to come before him. They were put into the custody of some faithful persons; and near three hundred Arabian horses were taken from 'em, which Timur gave to the Emirs and brave warriors of the army. Five hundred of the inhabitants of Dipalpourt were put to the sword; and their wives and children made slaves, for having treacherously slain Meifauer Cabuli, and a thousand horsemen belonging to the Mirza Pir Mehemed. And as for the people of Adjoudan, who had abandon'd Timur, part of 'em were slain, and the rest made prisoners, after having their effects pillag'd,
Kemaleddin, brother of Raoudoudgin, having seen the punishment of those who had defiled it, was seiz'd with a panic fear; and next day, the Raoudoudgin was in the imperial camp, he caus'd the gate of the town to be shut. This so irritated Timur, that he caus'd Raoudoudgin to be put in chains, and order'd the siege to begin again, and the place to be fill'd with the blood of the inhabitants. The soldiers having let themselves to flop the walls, the besiegers soon found they had not been able to defend themselves against so warlike a people, and an ever-victorious prince; they were perswaded that if the place shou'd be taken by assault, they must not expect their lives, for repentance would then signify nothing: whereupon they resole'd to beg pardon of the emperor. Accordingly Raoudoudgin's brother and son went out, to beseech Timur to grant a general pardon, and deliver'd the keys of the town and castle into the hands of his officers.

The first of Rabulevel, the Emirs Cheik, Neureddin and Allahbad enter'd the place to receive the tribute for saving the people's lives; but the Rayas and other chiefs would not accept the tax; and as there were among the red Guebres and idolaters, disputes arose, which could not be terminated without commotions and broils. Timur was incite'd at this proceeding; and order'd that this rabble shou'd be put to the sword, and the houses of the infidels raz'd to the ground. The soldiers fell'd the walls, and enter'd the place sword in hand. The Guebres set fire to their own houses, casting their wives, children and goods into the fires; and those who call'd themselves Musilmans cut their wives and childrens throats. And thus the men of these two forts uniting together,
Book IV put themselves in a posture of defence, being resolv'd to die sword in hand. They fought in a cruel obstinate manner: and as these men were exceeding strong and courageous, tho ignorant, they may be compar'd to an army of fayres, who fight only in despair.

Our men having enter'd the place, and cry'd out Allahou Echer, fell upon these enraged people, who flew several Musulmans, and wounded others. The Emir Cheik Noureddin, who to partake of the honor of this expedition, had resolv'd to dare the greatest dangers, advanced into the midst of the enemy, and struck with his sword one of the bravest of 'em, whom he disabled from fighting. But the Emir was immediately surrounded by a troop of Guebres, and was near being seiz'd by 'em, had not Ouzoum Mezid of Bagdad, and Firouz of Sifian made their way thro these infidels, and deliver'd him from danger. Victory at length declaring for our men, they slew ten thousand Indians, set fire to the houses which remain'd, and even ruin'd the walls of the town, so that it look'd like an uninhabitable place. The emperor distribut'd among the soldiers all the gold, silver, horses and habits that were in the place. He reward'd the wounded; and gave great gifts to Ouzoum Mezid and Firouz, who had acted with so much resolution in delivering the Emir Cheik Noureddin, and rais'd 'em to dignities according to their merit.

* God is great. The Mahomans begin all their prayers with these words, which they often repeat, with their face towards the ground.
CHAP. XV.

Timur departs from Batnir, for Serefti, Fatabad and Ahrouni.

AFTER the ruin of Batnir, the multitude of dead carcasses which infected the air, obliged Timur to depart thence the third of Rabilevel. When he had march'd about fourteen or fifteen miles, he came to Kenarei Haouz*, where he encamp'd. Next day he went to the castle of Firouze; and march'd as far as the town of Serefti, the inhabitants of which being infidels, eat swines-leth. They fled on advice of Timur's arrival, who sent out a detachment of horse in pursuit of 'em. These cavalry overtook a great number, whom they put to the sword, and brought their horses and goods back to the camp; Auel Feraeh being the only person on our side who was slain. Timur laid one day at Serefti, and the next march'd eighteen miles, as far as Fatabad, where he encamp'd. The inhabitants of this town were also fled. Some of our men pursu'd 'em, destroy'd several, and return'd laden with booty, as silver, furniture and cattel.

The seventh of Rabilevel, Timur pass'd by the town of Redgebuour, and went to encamp near that of Ahrouni, which was inhabited by a brutish people, unit for making compliments to the emperor, or demanding his protection: wherefore part of 'em were destroy'd like beasts, and the rest made slaves by the soldiers, who carry'd away their corn, and set fire to their houses.
The history of Timur-Bec.

Book IV. The eighth of Rabitalevel, the army departed from Ahrouni, to encamp in the plains of the village of Touhene, a country inhabited by Getes, who had by force of arms made themselves masters of it a long time, and committed disorders there. They rob'd on the high-ways, insulted and pillag'd the caravans, and not having the least marks of religion, murder'd all who oppos'd their violence. On the report of the arrival of our troops, these wretches hid themselves in the midst of a wood, where almost all the trees were full of prickles.

The emperor sent against 'em a regiment commanded by Toukel Hindou Carcara, and Moutana Nadereddin Amor. These two lords made so strict a search after these robbers, that they put to the sword near two thousand, render'd themselves masters of their cattel, and return'd to the imperial camp, dragging after 'em several of these wretches loaded with chains.

CHAP. XVI.

Timur marches against a nation of rebellious Getes.

TIMUR's intention in these wars being chiefly to exterminate robbers, tyrants and infidels, to put a stop to their disorders, and give peace and tranquility to the people; he departed from Touhene the ninth of Rabitalevel; and having sent the baggage under the conduct of Solyman Chiah towards Samane, he march'd beyond the castle of Mounee, where he encamp'd. Then he enter'd the deserts and woods, whither the Getes were retir'd; he
he exterminated two thousand of 'em, making their wives and children slaves, and pillaging their goods and cartel. Thus he delivered the country from the fear of their insults.

Several Chelips, who made their ordinary residence in a town in these quarters, came to call themselves at Timur's feet, and kiss'd his hands. Timur receiv'd 'em with demonstrations of esteem and affection, gave 'em veils and considerable presents; and fix'd a governor over 'em, to defend 'em from the insults of our soldiers.

The tenth of Rabilevel, the Emir Solyman Dec. 7.
Chah departed with all the train of artillery, which was before Mounce; and march'd towards the town of Samane, where he rade one night. The eleventh of Rabilevel he arriv'd at the river of Kekker, at which place Timur join'd him, after he had been against the Getae. Here he railed four days, to wait the remainder of the baggage. He departed hence the fifteenth of Rabilevel, and went to encamp near the bridge of Foulecouble, where he was join'd by the Emirs and soldiers of the left wing, commanded by the Sultan Mahmoud Can, and several others, whom Timur had sent from the meadow of Cabul by a particular road, into India, where they had taken towns, ravage the country, and brought into subjection several people.

The fifteenth of Rabilevel, the emperor, Dec. 11.
the head of his army, cross'd the bridge of Foulecouble, and encamp'd on the other side. The baggage and remainder of the army from Dipalpout, under the conduct of the great general Chunelik, also arriv'd the same day at the imperial camp.
The history of Timur-Bec.

Book IV. The twentieth of Rabielevel, the army departed from Foulcouble. They went but five miles that day, and encamp'd near the bridge Foulbeiran. The twenty first they arriv'd at the town of Kuteil, seventeen miles from Samane.

CHAP. XVII.

A review of the whole army marching in order of battle.

When the several bodies of the army, which had taken different roads, had joind the imperial camp, orders were given that every Emir shou'd repair to his respective poll. The right wing was commanded by the Mirzas Pir Mehemed and Rquilem; the left by the great Sultan Mahoud, Can of Zagatal, with the princes of the blood, and several Emirs; and the main body was compos'd of divers Tomans and regiments, which march'd six leagues and two miles by the road of Deli.

The twenty-second of Rabielevel, they arriv'd at the town of Afsendi, seventeen miles from Kuteil. The inhabitants of Samane, Kuteil, and Afsendi, who were mostly idolaters, burnt their own houses, and fled to Deli; so that our men cou'd meet with no one in their country.

The twenty-third, after a march of six miles, they encamp'd at Toglocpour, the inhabitants of which town were of a particular religion. They believ'd that the whole universe was govern'd by two beings, the first of which they call Yezdan, that is, God; and the other Ahrimen, that is, the devil. The former they explain
The history of Timur-Bec.

explain by light, and the other by darkness; pretending that all good proceeds from God, and all evil from the devil.

These idolaters, call'd Sooloun, having all fled, our soldiers set fire to the town. The twenty-fourth of Rabil level the army arriv'd at Panipat, a town twelve miles from Toploopour. All the inhabitants had fled like the reed. There was found in this place a granary of wheat, in which were more than ten thousand Marga of full weight, worth about a hundred and sixty thousand Marga of common weight, which was distributed among the soldiers. The twenty-first they march'd about six miles, and encamp'd on the bank of the river of Panipat. The twenty-first all the Emirs girded on their curasses, that they might be ready upon occasion, and then continu'd their march.

The twenty-fifth of Rabil level, the Emirs Dec. 25.
of the right wing had orders to march as far as Gehannah, a palace built by the Sultan Firoz Chah on the top of a mountain, two leagues from Delhi, at the foot of which runs the great river Joun. According to this order, they march'd from Caniglaur as far as Gehannah, putting to the sword all the officers they met, and making slaves of the inhabitants of that country, whom they pillag'd. On Monday the twenty-ninth, Timur departed from the town of Pede, cross'd the Joun, and march'd to the right of the town of Loun, where was abundance of pasture; here he encamp'd the same day. This place is situate between the two rivers of Joun and Hiren. The latter is a great branch which the Sultan Firoz Chah

* A Marg is a pound, or thereabouts.

Vol. II. D had
had cut off from the river of Callini, which joins the Jaoon near the town of Pirousabad. The Emirs Gahan Chah, Chameliir, and Allabad, were already come to the foot of this castle, the governors of which, named Maimoun and Mainchoum, far from coming to meet him with submission, resolved to defend themselves. At Timur's arrival there, an experienced old man came out to call himself with respect at the emperor's feet, and demand his protection; but the inhabitants, who were Quebres and the servants of Melouin, persisted in their resolves of resistance.

Then Timur ordered his men to besiege the town, and set the walls. Accordingly they began to do it at noon, and by evening made themselves masters of the place, where the Quebres had burnt their houses, with their women and children. Timur repos'd himself this night without the place, and the thirtieth of Rabiel order'd that the inhabitants who were Mahometans, should be separated from the Quebres and servants of Melouin; and being done, the latter were put to the sword. All the houses were pillag'd excepting those of the Cheriff, for whom Timur always preserved a filial affection, because of their extraction; and then the rest of the town was set on fire.

The first of Rabielakher, Timur departed from the town of Loun, and went to the bank of the Raoum, before the palace of Gahanmar, so that observing himself the passages in these places, he might the better know how to give out his orders. He return'd to the camp in the evening, and assembled his imperial council, consisting of the princes, his children, the great Emirs, and generals of his army. He propos'd to 'em the method of forming the siege of Delhi, capital
capital of India, which was not far off: and it was resolv'd, that a great quantity of corn and ammunition should be got together forthwith, and lie in Gehanumai; and that this great city should be block'd up.

Accordingly the Emirs Solyman Chah, Gehan Chah, and others, were order'd to pillage the granaries in the neighbourhood of Delhi; whereupon they set out in the beginning of the month of Rabilakher. Next day Timur was for taking the diversion of walking in the palace of Gehanumai; he took horse with seven hundred cavaliers with their curtails on, pass'd the river Jaun, and entered into this magnificent palace, to which the Sultan Firous Chah had given the name of Gehanumai, that is, the mirror of the universe, because of its fine prospect; tho' one would think this name was rather given it, to prognosticate that it should fall into the hands of the monarch of the universe.

After Timur had consider'd the beauty of this place, he took care to observe from this rising-ground the properest place for the field of battle, that he might draw the enemy's thither in case they appear'd. In the mean time Ali Sultan Tarachi and Jumeid Bouroulidar, who had been sent out as scouts, return'd; Ali Sultan bringing with him Mehemed Selief whom he had left, and Jumeid bringing another. Mehemed Selief was question'd concerning what had been transfus'd in the city, and then put to death. When Timur had pass'd the river, to observe the field of battle, four thousand horse, five thousand foot, and twenty-seven elephants, belonging to Melton Can, were seen near Gehanumai. Our scouts, commanded by Seid Coja and Mebacher, as the number
The history of Timur-Bee.

Book IV.

of three hundred, attach'd their vanguard, and pretending to fly, led 'em as far as the bank of the river, where a furious battle ensued.

On advice of this, Timur sent Savigdis Behader and Allahdad to succour Seid Coja; they crossed the river with their regiments, and having join'd him, let fly a shower of arrows on the enemy; but as they were about to fall on 'em with their drawn swords, the Indians, unaccustomed to such brave actions, gave ground at the first onset, and fled towards the city, which with difficulty they enter'd. Seid Coja pursu'd 'em, and slew a great number. In this flight an elephant fell and was wounded; which was a prognostic of our further victory.

CHAP. XVIII.

Timur marches to the east side of the town of Louni. Massacre of a hundred thousand Indian slaves who were in his camp.

The third of Rabriulahker, Timur departed from Gehamumais, and went to encamp on the east side of Louni, where the emperor's sons, the great Emirs, the colonels of the regiments, who were gone out to make inroads, came to the imperial camp. Being all assembled, Timur, who would not give place to the greatest generals of the army, nor the most undaunted warriors, as well in policy and wisdom of government, as in war, believed it not improper to harangue the leaders, imitating in that the example of the ancient emperors and the most illustrious conquerors. This he did
The history of Timur-Bec.

...with all the eloquence that could be expected on the like occasion. He spoke to 'em of the manner of breaking thro' ranks, of overturning squadrons, and how they shou'd repulse the enemy; he instruc't 'em how to make retreats when overpower'd, and how rally the soldiers and return to the attack; how to sustain an obstinate fight, and how to free one's self from any eminent danger. In short, he explained to 'em, with so much energy and perspicuity, all the maxims of war, that his captains admir'd the extraordinary wisdom and experience which appeared in his speech, laying that the discourses of great princes are the most beautiful; insomuch that being excited by the lively passions, and learned maxims which he had inculcated, they were fill'd with zeal and ardor, and prepar'd to confront the greatest dangers in his service. They answer'd every thing he propos'd by generous vows for his prosperity, and the continuation of his victory; they kiss'd the ground on which he stood, to testify their respect and joy at being the officers of so great a conqueror.

The same day the Emir Gehan Chah and the other generals remonstrated to Timur, that since his crossing the Indus, they had made above a hundred thousand Indians slaves, who were mostly Guebres and idolaters; that they were now in the camp, and would probably in any obstinate battle, take part with the men of Deli, and falling upon our soldiers, make us lose the battle. This remonstrance was back'd by those who had officers'd, that when the officers of Melieu Can came out of Deli with their elephants to attack us, the slaves seem'd highly pleas'd. Timur having made a serious reflection on all the circumstances of this affair,
Book IV. pull'd an order, that those who had any Indian slaves shou'd put 'em to death; and he who defor'd or rien'd doing so, shou'd be put to death himself, and his wives, children and effects be given to him who shou'd inform against him.

As soon as this order was made public, they began to put it in execution; and in less than an hour were put to death a hundred thousand Indians, according to the smallest computation. Among others, Montana Nasereddin Amor, one of the most venerable doctors of the court, who could never consent to much as to kill a single sheep, was constrain'd to order fifteen slaves whom he had in his house to be slain. Timur afterwards order'd that one soldier out of every ten, shou'd keep watch over the Indian women and children, as also over the camels they had taken in the pillage.

After these precautions, Timur resolv'd to march to the siege of Delhi: he set out on the third of Rabulain at noon, to encamp on the bank of the Jumna. The astrologers and soothsayers secretly disput'd concerning the disposition of the heavens, and of the fortunate or unfortunate aspects of the planets at his departure: but Timur told them that neither joy nor affliction, adversity nor prosperity, depended on the stars, but on the will of the Creator of them, of men, and of the universe. " I confide," says the emperor, "in the assistance of the Almighty, who has never abandon'd me."

What avail the triplicity or conjunctions of the planets? I'll never delay one moment the execution of my projects, when I have taken sufficient measures and precautions to bring 'em to perfection." Next morning, our hero made the public prayer, and order'd an Alcoran.
The history of Timur-Bee.

coran to be brought him, from whence he might judge of the event of his expedition. Here he found a very favorable answer, which pointed out the destruction of a people by a wonderful effect of the almighty providence. He explain'd the passage in his own favor, and having shown it to all the army, became assured of the victory. Our warriors being thus animated by the Alcoran, which promis'd 'em the divine protection, Timur describ'd the flars; and on the fifth of Rabulakher 801, crossed the river Jan. 1, of Jaoun, and encamp'd on its banks on the other side. The soldiers thro precaucion made a ditch to surround 'em, near a hill nam'd Pouche del Behali; here they fix'd palisados of branches of trees; and for a rampart bound several great buffalos neck and heels, behind which they prepar'd their bucklers and ensigns.

CHAP. XIX.

Timur gives battle to Sultan Mahmod, emperor of India.

Tuesday morning the seventh of Rabulakher, Timur drew up his army in order of battle. He gave the command of the right wing to prince Pir Mehemed Gehanghir, accompany'd by several Emirs. The left wing was led by the Mirzas, Sultan Hafsein, and Cabil Sultan, also assist'd by many great generals. The rear was given to the Mirza Roulief, in conjunction with several illustrious Emirs; and the main body was commanded by Timur himself; it being fit that this prince, who was
The history of Timur-Bec.

Book IV, the very life of the soldiers, shou'd be fix'd in the heart of the army. Every thing being thus settle'd, they march'd in good order.

The enemy also advanced in order of battle. Their right wing was brought up by Tadj Can, Mir Ali Coja, and other Indian princes. The left had his six leaders Malek Miniveddin, and others; and the main body was commanded by the Sultan Mahmoud Can, grandson of Furz Chah, emperor of India, in having for his lieutenants-general Meidan Can. This army consisted of ten thousand horse well equipp'd, and forty thousand foot armed to advantage; besides several elephants of war, arm'd with cannon, having between their long teeth great point'd daggers, and on their backs wooden towers in form of balloons; on which were mounted a great many cross-bow-men and archers, who cou'd fight under covert as in fortresses, and on the side of the elephants march'd the fingers of fire and melted pitch, as also rockets arm'd at the ends with iron, which gave several blows one after another wherever they fell.

Our soldiers were not much disturb'd about this Indian army; but as they had never seen any elephants before, they ignorantly imagin'd that the arrow and javelin had no effect on the bodies of these animals; that they were so very strong, that they overthrow trees only by shaking the earth as they pass'd along; that they cou'd throw down the strongest buildings; and that in battle they would toss both horse and horseman to a vast height in the air. This deftirrit several of our side; so that when the pots were fix'd for the officers and lords of the court, Timur, who always shew'd respect to men of learning, civilly demand'd of em what pots they
they would chuse. Several of these doctors, who were always near Timur's person, being frightened at what they had read and heard of the elephants, answered immediately, "If it please your majesty, we chuse to be near the ladies."

Timur being sensible of his soldiers fear, took all necessary precautions to arm 'em with courage. He ordered that a rampart of bucklers should be made before the ranks, and a ditch dug before the rampart; then he caused buffaloes to be tied by the neck and feet with long pieces of leather, close to each other; after which on each side of 'em and on their heads were fixed brambles. Besides this were made iron-hooks, three-fold'd, and fixed to stakes; so that when the elephants shou'd come to the attack, these hooks shou'd be planted in their way, and the brambles on the buffaloes set on fire to put the elephants into disorder. But victory declared for us before we had occasion to make use of these machines.

As soon as the two armies were in view, Timur got upon an eminence in the middle of the field of battle, near the foot of the hill of Peuchtri Behali, whence he observed the motion of both armies. When they were on the point of coming to blows, he fell on the earth, and after several times bowing, besought God to give him the victory, which he must expect from the divine goodness, and not from his own valour, and the number of his soldiers.

While Timur was at prayer, a strange accident happen'd, which was, that the Emirs of the rear, Cheikh Noureddin, Chameli and Allahdad, imagined that if the emperor shou'd send recruits from the main body to the right wing, and even to the rear, this would be a certain token
The history of Timur-Bec:

Book IV. token of victory. Accordingly after prayer Timur ordered Ali Sultan Tavachi, and Tagi Bouga, who commanded the regiment of Sanford of the Toman of Roufen, which belong’d to the main-body; as also Alton Bacchi Peferi, and Moulla Reesel, to go with their regiments to succour the right wing; and at the same time he sent another squadron of Emirs to re-inforce the rear. This so excited the courage of our warriors, that they rush’d impetuously upon the enemy, whom they attack’d with so much vigor, that the Indians were prevented to give ground, and the great and strong elephants suffer’d themselves to be drove like oxen.

This advantage augmented the valor of the other battalions, who also fell upon the enemy, praising God. So hot a battle was never seen before: the fury of soldiers was never carry’d to so great excess: and so frightful a noise was never heard: for the cymbals, the common kettle-drums, the drums and trumpets, with the great brass kettle-drums which were beat on the elephants backs, the bells which the Indians founded, and the cries of the soldiers, were enough to make even the earth to shake; and there was not a man, how dauntless soever, who was not somewhat dismay’d at the beginning of the fight. But our vanguard, composed of the regiments of many illustrious Emirs, perceiving the enemy’s vanguard advancing, retir’d behind the right wing to lie in ambush, till they had pass’d by them; then they came out of their ambush, and fell on the enemy sword in hand like roaring lions, and in a moment flew between five and six hundred men. The prince Pir Mehemed, who was at the head of the vanguard of the right wing, affrighted by the Emir Bolyman Chali, attack’d the left of the enemy, which
which confided in the valor of Taji Can: this Chap. he did with so much conduct, that he drove 'em beyond the bafon of Hayzeen. Then Pir Mehemed fell upon the elephants: and these furious animals, finding themselves closely press'd, en-
ter'd among the ranks of the enemy's left wing, and caus'd a further disorder. Our left wing, conduced by the Mirza Sultan Haffein, perform'd several great actions, thro' the valor of that prince, of Gehan Chah Behader, Cayafed-
din Terean, and others: for they made the enemy's right wing, commanded by Moin-
din and Malek Hant, give ground, and those who escap'd the edge of the sword, were repuls'd as far as the gate of the city. While the enemy's wings were thus gain'd, their main body, sustaine'd by the elephants in good order, came to the attack: they had a warm reception from the Mirza Rouflem who commanded the rear, and was pulled over against 'em. A bloody battle ensu'd, in which the Emir Cheik Nomreddin gave marks of extraordinary valor.

The Emir Chamelik also perform'd the most her-
roe actions, rushing furiously into the midst of the elephants, with Dolet Timur Tavachi, and Mengheh Coja. With their lances they overthrew those who were mounted on the elephants, and with their sabres and arrows cut off the trunks of these terrible animals, whom they wounded in all parts of their bodys; so that in a short time the field of battle was cover'd with the elephants trunks, and the heads and bodys of the slain.

The most valiant Indians always endeavor'd to defend themselves; but this defence seem'd rather like the struggling of sheep going to the slaughter, than a vigorous resistance. Thus these poor Indians were constrain'd to turn their
their backs with their elephants; to which this passage of the Aícoran may be well apply'd:


-Do you not see how the Lord thy God has dealt with the men of the elephant?

The Sultan Mahmoud, and his head-general Melian Can, fled into the city, the gate of which they shut.

The Mirza Cali Sultan, who commanded our left wing, brought to Timur one of the elephants bound with cords: after having very much man'd it with the sword, he overthrew its guards, and made it walk before him, as the husbandman does the ox in the plow. Timur and all the court were surpriz'd that a child, of but fifteen years old, should dare to attack, and be able to conquer and bind a war-elephant, which had struck terror into the whole army.

When the flight of the enemy had subsided of victors, Timur spur'd his horse towards the gates of Delhi, and carefully examined the walls and fortifications: and as it was the time of noon-prayer, he went down to the bank of the Haytress, which is a round basin, above an arrow's shot in diameter, built by the Sultan Firouz Chah: and as in any inundations it is fill'd with rain-water, it furnishes the inhabitants of Delhi with water for an inscrutable year. On its bank is the tomb of Sultan Firouz Chah.

Timur being encamp'd here, the princes and generals came before him to kiss the earth; they congratulated him on his victory, and gave applause to the princes of the blood, the Emirs, and other brave men, who had signaliz'd themselves in the battle.

* The Arabians before the Hegira had an epocha called the Elephiter.
The history of Timur-Bec.

Timur upon hearing these strange adventures, burst out into tears of joy: he blest God for having given him such brave children, and such faithful and valiant subjects. Was it not surprising, that this great prince, who on some occasions could exercise extraordinary favors, had at this time to render a heart, that he could not retain his tears, while he returned thanks to God for his favors? Timur had in the person of Calil Sultan a son worthy of himself, who in magnificence, valor and generosity, surpassed Menoutcher, Feridon and Kei Cofru; he was as virtuous as Alexander, and as rich as Darius. He was at first nam'd the friend of God, Calil Allah; and the glory he afterwards acquir'd, was the reason of his being call'd Sultan.

C H A P. X X.

Flight of Sultan Mahmoud, and his general Mellou Can, prince of Multan. Reduction of Delhi, capital of India.

The Sultan Mahmoud and Mellou Can, being vanquish'd, re-enter'd the city, repenting they had ever undertaken to go out: but repentance now being useless, they could have recourse only to flight. They departed at midnight while it was very dark: the Sultan went out by the gate of Hazaderani, and Mellou by that of Baraka, both which are fi-
Book IV. Nutured south of Gehanpenah: and they retir'd into the desarts.

Timur being inform'd of this flight, sent severall Emirs in pursuit of 'em; they sent'd on some of their officers who fled with 'em, and return'd with a great quantity of booty, taking prisoners the prince Seif Can, Surnam'd Malek Chereleddin, and the prince Coddadad, son of Mellou Can.

The same night the Emir Allahadad, and other colonels of our regiments, had orders to make themselves masters of the gates by which the princes went out; as also to guard the other gates of the city, that no one might escape.

The eighth of Rabindakker, Timur erected his standard on the walls of Deli, and went in person to the gate of the capital, where he sat on the Adjiah, or throne wherein the Indian emperors sit in their royal robes on the great feast-day. This gate is in the quarter of Gehanpenah, over against the bason of Havizcar. In this place a tent and tribunal were prepar'd for him, where he gave audience. Then the Ceriffs, Cadis, and principal persons of the city of Deli, came to cast themselves at the foot of the throne, and had the honor to kiss the imperial carpet. Fadlallah Bacchi, lieutenant of Mellou Can, at the head of the whole Divan of Deli, was the first who came to make his submission; and the Ceriffs, the men of learning, and the old men, address'd themselves to the princes the emperor's sons, and to the great Emirs, to obtain quarter; so the Mirza Pir Mehemed, and the Emirs Solyman Chah and Gehan Chah, at a proper time presented their petition.

According to custom they carry'd the horse's tail and kettledrums, which were fix'd upon the
The history of Timur-Bec.

The gate: and the conquest of Delhi were performed on this occasion on the tune Rihav, we'd only on victories. And to preserve the memory of to considerable a conquest, an ingenious poet made these verses, the letters of which form the epocha of this memorable day.

On wednesday the eighth of the month of Rabstatu-Jan. 4, her, the ever-victorious emperor Timur made himself master of Delhi, the sun being in Capricorn.

All the elephants and rhinoceros's were brought to Timur. These animals, being before instructed, fell down before the emperor in an humble politure, and at the same time made a great cry as if they demanded quarters. There were an hundred and twenty of these elephants of war, which at the return from India were sent to Samarcand, and to the provinces of the empire, where Timur's sons resided. Two were carry'd chain'd to Tauris, one to Chiraz, five to Herat, one to Chirvan to the Cheik Ibrahim, and one to Atzenagian to the lord Taharton. The tenth of Rabstatu, the doctor Nafereddin Amor was order'd to enter the city, with the other lords and Cheiks of the court, to preach in the grand mosque, and make the public prayers and Coupbe in the august name and titles of the invincible empero.

* The Orientals have an alphabet, the letters of which they make use of instead of cyphers, and by which they compose a verse in the praise of any one who has performed some remarkable action; and the letters of the verse are for cyphers denote the day, month, and year whereas this action was performed.
The history of Timur-Bec.

Book IV. for Timur, and not in the name of Firuz Chah, as was done before.

The Debris, Menchis and other secretaries, sent a relation of this expedition, in their letters of conquest, into all the parts of the empire, and even to the princes in alliance with Timur, tho' it were a year's journey to go round to 'em all; so that public rejoicings might be made for these great advantages with which God distinguished the reign of Timur.

The Bittechis, or controllers of the Divan, also enter'd the city, where having taken an estimate of the money due for saving the peoples lives, the receivers-general took care to receive it.

In the mean while the principal lords of the court, and the emperor's favorites remonstrated to his majesty, that after having suffer'd the fatigues and difficulties of this war, victory inspir'd 'em with thoughts of renewing their diversions and pleasures; that Feridon and the Keis had always done the same; and that it was in justice due to 'em after they had thus fatigued themselves. The emperor willingly consented; and gave orders for a feast, which was to continue for several days. Timur began the rejoicings by presents to the princes of the blood, the Emirs and generals of the army, in consideration of their services and great actions; and afterwards the musicians perform'd concerts of music in amorous and drinking tunes, which so charm'd the hearts of all, that they forgot the rigors of war, and the fatigues of a campaign.

The sixteenth of Rabinalaher, a great number of our soldiers being assembled at the gate of Delhi, insulted the inhabitants of the suburbs. The great Emirs were order'd to put a stop to these disorders; but God, who had predicted the
The history of Timur-Bec.

the ruin of this place for the chastisement of the inhabitants, permitted its destruction by second causes. Our soldiers coming into the place was one cause; and the despair of the Guebres, who remained in great numbers in the towns of Seiri, Gehanpenah and old Deli, was another. The curiosity of the Sultannies to see the rarities of Deli, and particularly of the famous palace, adorn'd with a thousand columns, and built by the antient king of India, Melih Jouna, induc'd 'em to go into the city with all the court, which was very numerous; and the gate was left open to every one, so that above fifteen thousand of our soldiers got in unperceiv'd. Besides the Emirs and comptrollers of the Divan, who were let at the gate to receive the tribute for saving the inhabitants lives; other officers in commision had the same liberty to enter the city; but there remain'd a far greater number of troops in a large place between Deli, Seiri, and Gehanpenah. The disorders, our men committed in the two last places caus'd a great bustle among the Guebres, who in despair fell upon our men; and several of 'em set fire to their houses, wherein their wives and children were burnt. Our men perceiving this devastation among the Guebres, pillag'd 'em, because of their evil designs. As other troops were let into the city to seize on the inhabitants of the neighbouring towns and villages who had fled for refuge thither, the confusion very much increas'd, and the troops within the place employ'd themselves entirely in plundering and burning the houses of the Guebres. The Emirs, to quell this disorder, caus'd the gates to be shut, that the troops without might not enter; but the soldiers within open'd the gates to their comrades; by
The history of Timur-Bec.

Book IV. morning all the army enter'd, and the soldiers rose in arms against their leaders, who oppos'd their enterprize. So on the seventeenth of Rabulakker 801, this great and proud city was destroy'd.

The next day pass'd in the same manner; and there were some soldiers who took a hundred and fifty slaves, men, women and children, whom they carry'd out of the city; and some soldiers boys had twenty slaves to their own share. The other spoils of precious stones, pearls, rubies, diamonds, fluffs, belts, gold and silver vessels, mony, plate, and other curiosities, were innumerable; for the Indian women and girls were adorn'd with precious stones, and had on their feet and hands, and even on their toes, bracelets and rings; of which our men had such great numbers, that they refused to carry away a vast quantity of precious ointments of incalculable value.

The nineteenth of Rabulakker they did the same in old Deli, whither the rest of the Gue-brex were retir'd. These Indians assembled together in the great mosque, and prepar'd to defend themselves; but the Emir Chamelik and Ali Sultan Tavachi came thither with five hundred men, and having forcibly enter'd the mosque, sent to the abyss of hell the souls of these infidels, of whose heads they erected towers, and gave their bodies for food to the birds and beasts of prey. Never was such a terrible slaughter and desolation heard of. As old Deli was pillag'd the same day, they made some of the inhabitants slaves, whom they load'd with chains, the they had promise'd 'em their lives. Several days were employ'd in making 'em quit the city; and as they were cut, every Emir of a Toman or regiment took
took a number of 'em for his service; and as there were several thousands of tradesmen and artizans, some were distributed among the princes and Emirs who serv'd under Timur; and others were lent to the officers of the emperor's sons, and to the other Emirs in their respective governments. The emperor likewise order'd that all the masons shou'd be kept for his particular service, as he design'd to build a spacious mosquie in Samarcand of stone.

But it may not be amiss to give a description of the three towns which compose the city of Deli. That of Seiri is surrounded with a wall in form of a circle; old Deli is the same, but much larger; and from the walls of Seiri on the north-east, to the walls of old Deli, which is on the south-east, there are two other walls, one on each side; and the ground which lies betwixt 'em is call'd Gehanpenah, and is larger than old Deli. Three gates of Seiri look towards Gehanpenah, and the four others have the prospect outwards. Gehanpenah has thirteen gates, six to the north-west, and seven to the south-east; so that when one speaks of Deli, we comprehend the three towns together, which have in all thirty gates.

* Description of Deli, as it was in the author's time; for at present what they call Deli is a new city, sever'd in a different place, built by Gelaladdin Ether, and call'd Ether Alas, from the name of that king, the father of Humacoun Cbeh.
TIMUR continued fifteen days at Deli, the destruction of which place was caused by the ill conduct of the inhabitants: then having resolved to exterminate the idolaters of India, as well as the robbers and rebels, he marched towards the other most famous places of this empire. At his departure he order'd the Sherifs, Cadiis, doctors and Cheiks of the city, to assemble in the great mosque of Gehansenah; where he fix'd a governor over 'em, to protect 'em from the insults of the soldiers, whom victory had render'd insolent.

The twenty-second of Rabulakher, at ten in the morning, the army encamp'd from Gehansenah, and marched down to Firmuz Abad, three miles from Deli. Here Timur halted an hour to view this delightful place: and, after having made two Rakets in the mosque belonging to it, which is built of stone on the banks of the Jamin, to return thanks to God for his conquest, he departed out of this town.

About this time the lord Chamseddin, one of the Sherifs of Termeh, with Alaaldin Naib, lieutenant of the Cheikh Coukori, who had been sent embassadors to the town of Cantele, return'd from their embassy: they brought advice that Behadar Nubar prince of these quarters, had willingly submit'ted to the emperor; and
and hop'd next friday to have the honor to Chap. 22.
hiss the ground before his majesty, and offer
him his services. Timur being encamp'd on
the other side of Gehumna near Vezir Abad,
the embassadors presented him two white par-
rots, from Behader Nehar. These birds had
liv'd ever since the time of Toglu Chah, and
and been kept many years in the antichambers
of the emperours of India. Timur took this
curious present for a good augury; and con-
cluded his road six miles farther to a place call'd
Mouda, having before cross'd the Jaum.

The twenty-fourth of Rabiatulhich he march'd 20.
fixed miles and encamp'd at Kete, where Beha-
der Nehar with his son Coursach had the hon-
our to kiss the imperial carpet, to offer a great
many rich presents, and assure the emperours
of their obedience. The twenty-fifth the army
march'd to Baghbour, which for its beauty is
compard to the delicious garden of Dorbehar,
and to the magnificent temple of the idols of
Ferear, which places are distant from each oth-
er six miles. The twenty-sixth they march'd 21.
also six miles, and encamp'd at Asir, situate
between two rivers, where Timur order'd to
repole himself.

CHAP. XXII.

Conquest of Myrthe. The Ghebres are freed
alive.

THE town of Myrthe being one of the
most noted places of the empire of Indi,
Timur resolv'd to make himself master of
E 3
The history of Timur-Bec.

Book IV, ch. whereupon the twenty-sixth of Rabylulakher he sent thither from Alar the lords Roulloum, Tagi Bouga, Chamalili, and Allahdad. The twenty-eighth these lords sent advice to the emperor, that Elias Ougani, and the son of Montana Ahmed Tahanefriet, with a Guebret nam'd Seh, had fortify'd the town, and were back'd by a company of Guebres; that they had resolve'd to submit, and had not only declare'd that they resolve'd to defend themselves, but even dare'd to use some insolent expressions, saying that the emperor Turnechirin Can once came to believe the place, but was oblig'd to raise the siege; and that they hop'd the same would be our fate. This news disquieted Timur; and their speaking contemptuously of Turnechirin Can, whom they tax'd with cowardice, highly incensed him. On Tuesday at the hour of morning-prayer he took horse at the head of ten thousand men; and in two days and one night, march'd twenty miles.

The twenty-ninth of Rabylulakher at noon he arriv'd at the town of Myrthe, where he order'd the captains of the company to undermine the walls. At night they visited the works, and found they had already advance'd ten or fifteen cubits breadth to each bastion and corner; which to surprize the Guebres, that they deftis'd from defending themselves.

Next day the Emir Allahdad, with his regiment nam'd the faithful, consisting of the ancient people of the Coutechs, attack'd the gate of the town. A young lad, one of his domestics, nam'd Serat, son of Calendar, boldly call'd a set upon the battlement, and mount'd the wall. He was follow'd by Roulloum Berlin, and a great many brave men, who rush'd into the town (with in hand: they bound Elias Ougani, and
and the son of Tchaneferi, governors of the Chantr, place, whom they carry'd to the foot of the imperial throne. The Guebrer Sefi, one of the princes of this place, was kill'd in the assault, and his body cast into the fire which he ador'd.

The stir of Jamazilevel they fle'd alive all Jan. 25, the Guebrers of this place, and made slaves of their wives and children: they set fire to everything, and raz'd the walls; so that this town was soon reduc'd to ashes, tho' Turmechirin Can, a great emperor in Asia, cou'd not make himself master of it.

It is remarkable, that before the army's marching to this place, Timur had order'd to write a letter to the inhabitants, to reduce 'em by good-nature and promises: but the secretary being about to write these words, "Why do you compare us with Turmechirin Can?" Timur reprimanded those who had order'd the secretary to write in such a manner, saying, "What am I to Turmechirin Can? He was a greater lord than me, of stricter virtue, and better conduct: but my design is to revenge the affront these villains have put upon so powerful and august a monarch." So without suffer'd the letter to be concluded, he march'd to exterminate 'em. This was Timur's modelly, which ought to serve as an example to others.
THE same day that Myrthe was taken, Timur order'd the Emir Gehan Chah to depart with the left wing by a different road, to ravage the country of the Guebres; for which purpose he embark'd with his troops on the Jumna. The emperor gave the command of the baggage to the Emir Cheik Noureddyn, with orders to conduct it along the river of Carafou; and then departed in person towards the great river of Ganges, fourteen miles from Myrthe. The Emir Solyman Chah join'd him on the road: and having march'd six miles, they encamp'd at Manfourz, where Timur stayed one night. The second of Jumazinlevel, he set out at three in the morning, and at sun-rising arriv'd at Pirouznoor on the Ganges, where they march'd three miles to find an easy passage. Some time after they came to the ordinary passage, which was very difficult, and dangerous: several horsemen swam over there on horseback, but not without great risque. Timur going to do the same, the Emirs on their knees besought him to the contrary, telling him that the Mirza Pir Mehemed and the Emir Solyman Chah, having cross'd the river near Pirouznoor, were on the point of perishing. In the mean while several brave men swam over, as the Tomans of the Mirza Charoe, Seid Cojaion of Cheik Ali Behader, and Gehan Mule son of Mellek. Then Timur march'd two
The history of Timur-Bec.

two miles further along the Ganges, and encamped. The third of Jumazine-level, he went towards Toeloopour, a town on the bank of the Ganges, twenty miles from the place whence they set out. When they had marched fifteen, advice was brought the emperor, that a great number of Guebres were got together on the bank of that river. Timur immediately sent thither the Emir Mohacker, Ali Solran Tavabchi, and other Emirs of Tumans, and captains, to the number of fifty thousand horse; and continued his road towards Toeloopour. At this time the emperor was seized with a very troublesome swelling in his arm, which much impaired his health; but this distemper did not continue long, thro the care and alacrity of his officers.

In the mean while advice was brought that a vast number of Guebres in forty-eight boats, advanced against us upon the Ganges. This news fired up the emperor's fury; and the pleasure of having an opportunity of acquiring glory and merit in this war against the infidels, made him forget his distemper. He took horse with a thousand of his particular officers, and marched along the banks of the river. He had no sooner perceived the enemy, than several of our brave men spurn'd their horses into the water, sword in hand, with their quivers fastned to their sides. The unskilful enemies only let fly their arrows upon 'em, with their bucklers laid over their heads, while our men continually advanced, and laying hold on their flat-bottom'd vessels, enter'd 'em, notwithstanding the resistance of the enemy, whom they cut in pieces, and cast their bodies into the Ganges, making their women and children slaves. When they were become masters of these great boats, they
they went in search of ten others mann'd with  

Guebres, who prepar'd themselves for fighting,  

didn't their boats to one another, that they  

might the better defend themselves, and make  

a kind of naval fight. Our soldiers, after hav-  

ing discharged a vast number of arrows, board-  

ed their vessels, giving praise to God; and  

with their swords flew the remainder of those  

unfortunate Indians.

C H A P. XXIV.

Timur's three Gazies, or expeditions against  

the Guebres.

A F T E R the taking of the flat boats on  

the Ganges, Timur decamp'd for To-  

loopour; and when he was arriv'd there, on the  

fourth of Jumazineval, a little after midnight,  

two men came from the Emiro Allahdad, Ba-  

jazet Cojaehin, and Altoun Baccchi, the leaders  
of our scouts, who brought advice that having  

found an easy passage where they cross'd the  

Ganges, they had met on the banks of that  

river a great number of infidels well-arm'd,  

who had for their leader a king nam'd Mobarek  

Can, who was resolv'd to defend himself.

Timur on advice of these motions, took horse  

before morning at the sound of drums and ket-  

tledrums, being lighted by a vast number of  

flambeaux and torches; he cross'd the Ganges,  

and read the morning-prayer, after having  
march'd a mile on the other side that river.  

Then our soldiers, with their cuirasses on, ad-  
vanced against Mobarek Can, who had rang'd  

ten
The history of Timur-Bec.

ten thousand horse, and some infantry, in order Chapae of battel, and expected us with his emblems display'd, tho' he risk'd his crown on this occasion.

Timur hereupon imagin'd that these Indians being far more numerous than we, and our two wings at a great distance, we could use no precautions, but must entirely resign our selves to the will of God. And as he was thus disquieted about the success of the battel, five hundred horse of the Tomans of Mirza Charee arriv'd, which had cross'd the water with Seid Coja and Gehan Mule, to make inroads in several places; and they join'd us at so proper a time, that one would have thought they had been appointed to meet us here, or that heaven had sent 'em expressly to succour Timur when he had such need of 'em. Whereupon he return'd God thanks for his kindness to him, and order'd the Emirs Chamoelik and Allahdad to attack the enemy with a thousand horse, and not to regard their number, or reluctance.

Our brave men, in obedience to this order, and in resignation to the will of God, rush'd with fury upon the enemy, who thinking that our men were not alone, but only the vanguard of a great army, suddenly grew afraid, and fled like hinds before a roaring lion, and the Chacals hid themselves in the woods. Our warriors pursu'd 'em, and put a great number to the sword, carrying away captive their women and children, with a considerable booty of oxen and other animals. Timur encamp'd in

* Chacal is an animal which partly resembles a dog, and partly a fox. It diggs up dead bodies to devour 'em, and hath a languishing voice.
The history of Timur-Bec.

Book IV, this place: and at the same time receiv'd advice that a great number of Guebres were rendered in the defile of Coupelle, catt of the Gauges. Whereupon he departed with five hundred horse for that place, leaving the rest to guard the spoils. The emperor at his arrival at these mountains, met a great number of Guebres. The Emir Chamelik and Ali Sultan Tavachi, notwithstanding the enemy were superior to 'em in number, fell upon 'em swords in hand, giving praise to God. These infidels at first defended themselves: but our men put 'em to the rout, notwithstanding their great number, while the soldiers were employ'd in collecting the booty. Timur being left with only a hundred horsemen of his guards, a Guebre nam'd Malchi Cheika, fell briskly upon him with a hundred men, partly horse and partly foot. Timur oppos'd these rash fellows; but while the two parties were about to let fly a shower of arrows, one of our soldiers, thro' mistake, told Timur that this man was the Chief Con-keri, one of his faithful servants. This false alarm caus'd the emperor to return to the bottom of the mountain; which the Guebre perceiving, he attack'd some of our men. Timur then return'd against this infidel, shot him in the belly with an arrow, and unhors'd him with a cut of his sabre on his head: he was then bound with cords, and dragg'd after our men. Timur being willing to question him concerning the condition of the enemy, but he presently gave up the ghost. Some time after advice was brought that in the defile of Coupelle, two miles from this place, a great many Guebres were assembled; that in the passages of these mountains were only thick woods, and trees twisted one within another, with reeds and
The history of Timur-Bec.

and came so large and strong that a man cou'd scarcely grasp 'em.

Timur, who had already taken horse twice this day to fight, and was in great want of sleep, had no sooner heard this news, than preferring the treasures of eternal rewards to his quiet here, he march'd towards this defile at the head of some officers and Emirs of the vanguard. As he was obli'd to go thro woods almost impassible, and the Indians were far more numerous, Timur said to his men, "If my son Pir Mehemed and Solyman Chah shou'd arrive here presently, they wou'd be of great service to us; but that cannot be; seeing it is but three days since I sent 'em to make inroads beyond the Ganges, which they have cross'd at Pirouznor. While Timur was thus speaking, on a sudden they perceiving these brave men, who were over-joy'd to meet the emperor in this place. The pleasure, as one may easily imagine, was not less on Timur's side. They march'd together against the Guebres, on whom they discharged showers of arrows; and then rushing on 'em, sword in hand, they made a cruel slaughter; they took a vast quantity of booty from their inhètes, as well camels, oxen, and other cartel, as gold and silver belts, which the enemy's wore.

Thus Timur was in three batails the same day, which never happen'd to any prince before him, that we find mention'd in history. Thè field of batail being so strait, and full of woods and thorns, that it was impossible to encamp here, in the evening they were obli'd to return to the place where the second Gazie was fought.

CHAP.
C H A P. XXV.

Timur exterminates the Guebres assembled in the famous defile of Coupele. Description of a marble statue of a cow adored by the Indians.

The defile of Coupele is situated at the foot of a mountain near the Ganges, and fifteen miles higher than this defile is a stone carved in the form of a cow, from whence springs this great river. For this reason the Indians adore this stone; and in all the neighbouring countries, within a year's journey, when they are at prayers they turn toward it. One of their customs is to burn themselves alive, and to have their ashes flung into the Ganges, believing they shall merit salvation by it. They also cast into this river their gold and silver; and a chief part of their devotion is to wash themselves in it, and there have their head and hand, upon which they pour water; which they esteem as useful as the Mahometans imagine the Abdeffe necessary, when they go in pilgrimage to Mecca.

Abouzair Otbi, in his book called Yemini, gives a relation of the superstitions of these Indian idolaters, and of the ridiculous notions they entertain concerning this river. We are told in this book, that Nafareddin Subudcekin,

* The ablution which the Mahometans are obliged to make before prayer.

* A famous history of the Sultan Mahommed Subudcekin of India.
and his son the Sultan Mahmoud, for several years made war on those idolaters of India, and by degrees, conquer'd the towns and castles of this kingdom; that God bless'd their undertakings, and permitted the Sultan Mahmoud at the end of these wars, to march into the kingdom of Cannounde with the mahometan army. The interpreter of the Yemeni remarks, that this war in the country of Cannounde is the most celebrated of any that Yemen Eddole Mahmoud was ever engag'd in.

But to return to our subject: we must know that when Timur took up a resolution to carry his arms into India, he sent several Emirs with considerable troops by one road, and with the rest of his army march'd himself another; that these two armies took all the cities, castles, fortresses, towns and villages, in their way; that they exterminated the idolaters; and met together before Deli, as we have already mention'd; and that after the reduction of Deli, they cross'd the Ganges. Thus Timur accomplish'd his undertaking in India, for the extirpation of idolatry in that country. But as there yet remain'd a prodigious multitude of Guebres in the mountains of Coupele, who posses'd a

* A great and kingdom on this side the Ganges. The geographer Abulfedo says that the Ganges runs towards the east of the kingdom of Cannounde, at forty leagues distance; and that the capital of Cannounde is in long. 103°. lat. 25. Natfelden Touch says it is in long. 113°. 55. lat. 26. 55., which is confirmed with the former, because the one counts the longitude from Hercules's pillar, and the other from the forante's limes. Elingsmab remarks that Cannounde is 872 leagues east of Muscat. Adam is a town of the kingdom of Cannounde, seven days journey from the city of the same name. Sentail tells us that Cannounde is between two arms of the Ganges.
great quantity of riches, cattle, and movables, he resolved to attack 'em. Whereupon the fifth of Jumazin lovely the army began its march towards this defile, where the infidels, who were desirous to perish, dare to wait their arrival, and rashly prepared to sustain the attacks of our warriors, and make a vigorous defence. At sun-rising the Mahometan army was rang'd in order of battle, and arrived at the defile in very good order. The right wing was commanded by the Mirza Pir Mehemed, and the Emir Solyman Chah; and the left by other Emirs of great reputation. The Emir Chameli and other captains famous for their valor, led the vanguard of the main body.

When the noise of the drums, the great and little beatings, and trumpets, accompany'd with the usual great cry, had echo'd in these mountains and narrow passages, the infidels were confounded, and lost all courage: fear got possession of their hearts, and would not suffer 'em to wait the attack of our warriors, but oblig'd 'em to conceal themselves in the mountains, whether they were pursued by our men, and great part of 'em slain; some sav'd themselves, yet their effects, which consisted of furniture and other riches, fell to the conquerors.

This kingdom being thus deliver'd from their idolaters, the army return'd the same day, and encamp'd the Gauges, on the banks of which Timur read the noon-prayer, returning thanks to God for the advantages and victories he had gain'd thru his goodnecst. Then he took horse, and after five miles march encamp'd towards the lower part of the river, pleased with the conduct of all the captains and soldiers of his army, to whom he gave rewards for their brave actions in this war.
CHAP. XXVI.

Timur's resolution to return to the seat of his empire.

Timur being satisfy'd with having march'd as far as the eastern frontiers of the empire of India in one campaign, and having acqui'red the merit of the Gazie, departed from the bank of the Ganges the sixth of Jumnaivel, to join the baggage. Every one march'd in his respective post; and the quarter-masters and harbingers had orders to meet the baggage, and conduct it to the army. The le\textsuperscript{venth}, they march'd six miles, and encamp'd four miles distance from the baggage.

In the mean-while advice was brought that in the mountain of Soualee, one of the most considerable mountains of India, which stretches over two thirds of this vast empire, there were assembled a great number of Indians, with design to insult us. Timur order'd the troops which accompany'd the baggage to decamp, and march towards Soualee, while himself went in person to a place but five miles from thence, where the Mirza Ccil Sultan and the Emir Cheik Noureddin join'd him with the baggage. The Emir Solymian Chul and the other generals on their knees besought the emperour to stay in the camp, and not continually expose his sacred person; while they wou'd go and exterminate the Indians. Timur told 'em, the Gazie produce'd two considerable advantages; one was, that it procure'd for the warrior eternal...
Book IV. The history of Timur-Becer.

The merit; the other, that he acquir'd by it worldy spoils and goods; that as they had these two advantages in view, they shou'd be willing that he might partake of 'em also, since his intention in all his fatigues and labors, was only to render himself well-pleasing to God, and so treasure up good works for his eternal happiness; and riches to beflaw upon his soldiers, and do good to the poor.

Then he sent orders to the Emir Gehan Chah, who had been gone out a week to make inroads on the Jazou, to come to the camp, that he might partake of the merit of this expedition as well as the other Emirs. This Emir accordingly obey'd the order, and return'd to join his majesty.

C H A P. XXVII.

Timur's irruption on the mountain Soualæc.

Feb. 4.

On saturday the tenth of Jamazin level, Timur departed for the mountain of Soualæc, where a Raza nam’d Behrouz had assembled a number of Greeks in a narrow passage; and confiding in the strength of the mountain, and a strong place he had in possession, which he imag'd inaccessible, had resolv'd to give us battle. Our army advancing in good order, Timur went down to the entrance of this defile, where he stop'd. Our soldiers fell suddenly upon the infidels, who made but a weak defence; so that with their swords and half-pikes they slew a great number of 'em. Having reduc'd 'em thus low, they became masters of their cattle and effects, and took those prisoners who escap'd the sword: but as the
The history of Timur-Bec.

The booty was unequally divided, the rich and Chupas, powerful having got four or five hundred oxen, Timur order'd, the spoils then'd be equally distributed, that the poor and weak might have their share. The following night Timur lay in the tent of the Mirza Pir Mehemed; and next day he went to Behre, near Beheri, commonly call'd Meliapour.

The twelfth of Jamaziulevel he march'd four Feb. 5, miles, and encamp'd at Chaefatfava. The soldiers were so laden with booty, that they could scarce march four miles a day. Next day they went four miles, and encamp'd at Kender.

CHAP. XXVIII.

Several combats in the woods near Soudale.

The fourteenth of Jamaziulevel Timur Feb. 8,
cross'd the Iaoun, and encamp'd in another part of the mountain of Soudale, where advice was brought that a Raya nam'd Ratan had caus'd the trumpets to be sounded, to assemble the people, and fall upon our army, that by this means an infinite number of Indians were got together under his command, and had retreated into thick and inaccessible woods.

Timur would not stay till night was over before he began his march against 'em; but caus'd torches and flambeaus to be lighted, and order'd the captains to keep a constant march in order of battle. The soldiers employ'd all their strength in cutting down the trees to make roads, and the same night they advance'd twelve miles.
The history of Timur-Bec.

The fifteenth before morning they arriv'd between the two mountains of Sonalee and Couke, where the Raya was prepar'd to give battle, having form'd two wings and a main body; but he had no more courage than the rest; for as soon as the noise of the drums, trumpets and kettledrums, with the soldiers cries, were heard in this mountain, they fled, and the Raya himself turn'd his back, and retir'd to the bottom of a wood. Our soldiers pursu'd the enemy, and cut in pieces a great number, enriching themselves with the spoils, and carrying away an innumerable company of captives.

The same day our right wing went into another defile of these mountains, where, after having exterminated the Guebres, they gain'd a considerable booty; the left wing also made inroads in another place, and marr'd several Indians, but got no spoils. The following night the two wings return'd to Timur. The sixteenth, Timur quitted this narrow pass, and re-enter'd the mountain of Sonalee, where he encamp'd in a place fifteen leagues from Beirkour, all which country is full of forests and craggy mountains. Then he resolv'd to go in person into the most dangerous places; and sent back the left wing, compos'd of the troops of Corassana, to make inroads, because they were return'd without any booty.

In the mean while Sainte Maure, at the head of the scouts, arriv'd at nine in the morning, bringing advice that there were so many Guebres in these quarters, that it was impossible to number'em. This news oblig'd Timur to stay in this place, while the left wing should go out to make inroads.
The history of Timur-Bec.

Then advice was brought from the body of troops commanded by the Emirs Cheik Noureddin and Ali Sultan Tavachi, that several Guebres, with abundance of cattle, were got together in a defile on the left side. Timur immediately march'd towards this place, ordering the Emirs Cheik Noureddin and Ali Sultan to fall upon the Guebres. They soon became conquerors, putting the enemies to the sword, in the emperor's presence, who had set up his imperial standard on the very brink of the mountain, to encourage his men. Some of the wounded fled themselves by flight, but all their effects and cattle fell into the hands of the victors. Timur flaid upon the mountain till evening, and cause'd part of the booty to be distributed among those who could get none; so that every one had as much as he could well take care of. At night they encamp'd in this defile, where there were abundance of monks, who came to steal away the soldiers' goods.

Thus we may truly say, there were twenty battels fought in thirty days, during which time our men conquer'd seven of the most important fortresses of India, which would not give place to Calber.* These seven fortresses were at one or two leagues distance from each other, and the inhabitants were at continual variance among themselves. They had formerly paid tribute to the emperors of India; but were some time since brought to subjection to the Musulmans, from whom they revolted, refusing to pay tribute to them; and thus they merited the punishment they receiv'd. One of these places, which

* A strong place in Syria, inhabited by Jews, formerly conquer'd by the prophet Maimon.
belong'd to Cheikh Conker, a relation of the Cheikh Conker*, had willingly submitted to Timur, thro' the interposition of the Multulmans who liv'd with 'em; but this was mere show; for they soon gave us marks of their treachery and malice, and when the customary tax for the living of their lives was imposed on 'em, they made use of tricks and equivocations. In the mean while one of Timur's officers invented a stratagem to oblige 'em to pay the money with less reluctance; which was, that we should buy up all their old bows, which they accordingly sold our men upon their offering a good price, so that they had scarcely any more arms left. Then it was order'd that forty Guebres should be listed in the service of Hendou Chah Cazen, one of the emperor's officers; which they would not consent to, but slew several Multulmans.

This obliged us to treat 'em as enemies, and besiege their place in form; which having taken, we put two thousand Guebres to the sword, as a punishment for their past crimes.

The place belonging to Malek Dimrudge, and five others, were taken with the same ease in a very short time; so that this country was clear'd of this generation of idolaters, their temples were ruin'd, and the Mahometan religion afterwards flourisht'd there.
C H A P. XXIX.

Timur's Gazies and expeditions in the province of Teshamun.

The Gazies on the mountains of Soualee being finish'd to Timur's satisfaction, he departed from Manfar the sixteenth of Jamaziilalhier; and after a march of six miles, encamp'd at Bailla, a town of the province of Teshamun, where he was join'd by the Emiri Cheik Mahomed Alenouin, Mobacher, and Imaiel Berlas, of the Toman of Mirza Calil Sultan.

The inhabitants of this town were valiant men, and their forecits very difficult of access; they had fix'd their bucklers round their woods, where they prepar'd for a vigorous resistance. Our soldiers were eager to fall upon 'em; but there came an order from the emperor to defer the attack till next day, because he design'd to be there in person.

The seventeenth Timur took horse, and having rang'd his army in order of battle, caus'd the great cry to be made, and the instruments of war to be founded; but the enemy abandon'd the town, and fled into the woods, to hide themselves. Part of our soldiers were post'd on the side of the wood, while the others enter'd the town without opposition, and made themselves masters of a great quantity of money and ammunitions, so that the army was furnish'd with all necessaries.

The same day the army departed thence, to encamp four miles further. Oliaa Timur, Tenator, and Coulad, as also the Mirza Roulum, and
The history of Timur-Bec.

Book IV. the faithful Zemreddin, who had been sent ambassadors from Deli into Cachmir, arriv'd at the camp with letters from prince Chah Eskender, from whom there likewise came ambassadors; who affirm'd Timur that their prince, full of respect to him, had nobly'd to demand his protection, with all the submissions that could be expected from a subject, who was entirely resign'd to his orders; and that as a mark of his sincerity, he was upon his way to meet the emperor, being already arriv'd at a place name'd Gehlan, where he was rejoin'd by the doctor Noradin, one of his ambassadors, who told him that the Emir of Timur's Divan had tax'd him at thirty thousand horses, and a hundred thousand Derefs of gold, each Deref weighing two Medicales and a half; Chah Eskender immediately return'd to collect the money he was tax'd at, that he might the sooner have the honor to kiss the imperial carpet. Timur, on advice of this, disapprov'd of this order, because they had imposed a tax upon Eskender, which he was not able to pay, since it was more than his little kingdom was worth: and as the ambassadors at the same time represented to the emperor how willingly Chah Eskender had submitted to him, Timur order'd that he shou'd be treated with civility, and sent to tell him that the payment of this tax shou'd not detain him from coming before him.

March 14. The eighteenth of Jumazulakher, the ambassadors of Chah Eskender and of Motamedzeinaddin were sent back to Cachmir, with orders for Chah Eskender to come to the bank of the Indus in ten days. Then the army on their road pillag'd three towns; but Aramour, officer of Timur's household, was wounded with an arrow.

March 15. The nineteenth of Jumazulakher, they encamp'd over-against the capital of Tchamou,
after having march'd four miles. In their road they found four leagues of cultivated land, ready for harvest; which serv'd for forage, and our horses were let loose among the grass in this fallow-ground.

The twentieth of Jumazinlahfer, Timur enter'd the defile from whence the river of Tchamou springs, which the army had cross'd several times. It is situate at the foot of a mountain, on the left side of the city of Tchamou, having on its right the town of Menou. It was inhabited by strong and tall Indians, who were resolv'd to defend their lives, and having sent their wives and children into the mountains, had intrench'd themselves in almost inaccessible woods, upon a ragged mountain, having their king at the head; and like dogs barking at the rising moon, they howl'd, if one may so say, when they discharge'd their arrows.

Timur imagin'd it better to surprize 'em by artifice, than to attack 'em openly in so dangerous a place: whereupon he order'd our soldiers to leave 'em, and to go to pillage the town of Menou, which was accordingly executed. The troops also enter'd the town of Tchamou, whence they brought away ammunition and spoils enough for their pay and subsistence. Then Timur polled some regiments of active and resolute men in the woods where the enemy had fortify'd themselves; and in the mean while he departed with the cavalry.

The twenty first he cross'd the river of Tchamou, march'd four miles, and encamp'd on the bank of the Genave, in a plain of four leagues in length, full of pasturage.

As soon as the imperial army had quittd the defile of Tchamou and Menou, the Indians like foxes coming out of their holes, when they imagin'd the
forests void of lions, came out of their mountains to re-enter their houses; but they were soon attack'd by our regiments who lay in ambuscade; and who falling upon 'em, cut 'em in pieces, not giving quarter to any one.

Dolest Timur Tavachi, an officer of the Toman of Cheik Noureddin, assisted by Husein Melik Cootchin, took the king of Tchamou prisoner, with fifty officers of distinction, whom he brought to Timur. The emperor return'd thanks to God, and thus address'd these Emirs:

"Blessed be the almighty King of heaven and earth, who hath humbled these proud Guebres, the enemies of his name, who but yesterday insolently brav'd the faithful from their craggy mountains, having no regard to any one: but to day God has deliver'd 'em up to us, bound like malefactors. To him be blessing and glory for ever." Then he order'd that the captives should be load'd with chains, and left groveling upon the earth, except the king of Tchamou, who had been wounded in the fight: he was heal'd of his wound, and treated with civility, as well because of his character, as for that they imagin'd they might the more easily get the money due to the mahometan army for the town of Tchamou, and the faying the lives of the king and his men. In the mean while they treated this prince with so much kindness and respect, instructing him in the beauties of the mahometan religion, that he resolv'd to make profession of mahometanism, and quit his errors and idolatry. So he declar'd his belief of the unity of God, and eat the flesh of men with the Mahometans, which is prohibited these miserable Indians.

This change of religion caus'd him to be honor'd and care'sd by Timur, who confest to make
make a treaty with him, by which he was receiv'd under the protection of our monarch.

The twenty third of Junaziulakah the army flaid on the banks of the Génave, to wait for the troops which were gone to Lahor.

CHAP. XXX.

Relation of what pass'd at Lahor, with regard to Chicas Couker, prince of that city.

In the mean while advice was brought that the princes and Emirs, who had been sent towards Lahor, had made themselves masters of that city, and actually receiv'd the tax for redeeming the inhabitants lives, having made Chicas Couker prisoner of war.

Decem, says the poet, may at first have a good appearance; but in the end it makes the perfom blith who practises it; wherefore Timur, who was an enemy to tricking, made use of the following words for the motto of his seal, Safety confites in fair-dealing.

But that every one may be sufficiently appriz'd of the affair of Chicas Couker, they must know that this prince of Lahor, at the beginning of this war, accompany'd Timur every where, from whom he obtain'd so much favor and respect, that if any of the Indians made use of his name, they were neither pillag'd nor made prisoners. When the army was between the two rivers of Ganges and Joun, he beg'd leave to go into his own country, which was granted him; and he even agreed about the presents he shou'd make to the emperor upon his meeting him again at the bank of the Blah, which is also call'd the river
The history of Timur-Bec.

Book IV. of Lahor. Thus Chicii Couker return'd into his own country, where he pass'd some time in plays and diversions, forgetting what he had promised before the august tribunal of Timur: and he not only neglected the performance of his promise, but even gave marks of his disregard to us; for several of our officers having pass'd thro' his city coming from Tranoxiana, as the doctor Abdallah Sadre, Hendouchah Cazen, and others, thro' whose protection he might have advanced himself in honor and power, he did not give them a handsom reception, nor shew the least marks of civility, pretending ignorance of their being in the city. This procedure drew on him Timur's indignation, who order'd that his country should be pillag'd, and his persons seiz'd. Thus our monarch punished ingratitude.

The twenty fourth of Jumazulakher, Timur cross'd the river of Genave, and encamp'd after having march'd five miles. The same day officers arriv'd from Tauris from the Mirza Miran Chah, bringing news of the good health of that prince, his children, and principal Emirs. They also brought an account of the affairs of Bagdad, Egypt, Syria, Anatolia and Capc'hac; as likewise the condition of the fortress of Aleppo.

The twenty fifth, several sick soldiers were drown'd in the river, which oblig'd Timur, who was the most merciful prince in the universo, to give those who were in want of 'em, proper horses and males out of his own stable, upon which they cross'd the river. The same day the emperor sent Hendouchah Cazen to Samarcand, with advice that he was about to return home, to comfort the people who impatiently expected him. That day there likewise came an officer from Persia from the Mirza Pir Mehem.
med, son of Omar Cheik, who brought news of Chap. 39.
this prince's health, and the state of his kingdom; he likewise presented Egyptian swords, damask'd blades, and other curiosities.

The twenty first of Junanulahker the army decamp'd from the bank of the Genave, and after six miles march encamp'd in the defert; and the same day the emperor sent again to Samarcand one of the ambassadors who came from Tauris, to order the princes his sons to come and meet him. Then Timur designing to cross the river Dindana before the rest of the army, set out before 'em.

The twenty seventh he march'd six miles, and encamp'd at the entrance of a wood: they saw a lion in a meadow, which every one attack'd; and the Emir Cheik Nourreddin kill'd.

Then the Mirzaz Pir Mehemed and Rouflem, with the Emirs Solyman Chah and Gehan Chah, arriv'd at the camp from Labor, after having slain several Indians, and taken a considerable booty. They kill'd the imperial carpet, and made their presents to Timur, which consisted of nine pieces of each sort. Timur gave great largesses to their brave men, and particularly distinguished Mehemed Azad, to whom he presented a vest, a quiver, and a gold-belt. The greatest lords only fought to be thankfully regarded by our monarch.

The same day Timur order'd that all the Emirs of both wings, the colonels of regiments, and the captains of companies, should return home by the different roads mark'd out for 'em. Then he made presents to every one according to their rank and merit, beginning with the princes of the blood, the Emirs, dukes, foreign princes call'd Nevians, and then the Emirs of Samanes, the colonels of Hazares, and the centurions.
The history of Timur-Bec.

Book IV. The Mirza Pir Mehemed, son of Gehanghir, had a present made him of a belt and crown set with precious stones.

He also honor'd with his liberality the lords of India, the Emirs and Chelis, who had the good fortune to accompany him; and giving 'em letters-patent for their principality, he permitted 'em to return into their respective countries.

Timur assign'd the government of the city and province of Moultan to Keder Can, who having been arrested by order of Sarenk brother of Mellou Can, and laid in irons in a citadel, had escap'd thence, and fled to Biana, a place dependent on Delhi, to the king Ahoudan a Moulman; and who having heard of Timur's arrival in that country, had with an humble confidence fled for refuge to the foot of the throne, and had the honor to accompany his majesty from that time.

As in this country there was a plain, which for its vastness, and the great quantity of game in it, seem'd to invite passengers to the chase, (for there were lions, leopards, rhinoceros's, unicorns, blue hags, wild peacocks, parrots, and other uncommon animals) Timur spent some time in that diversion. He sent several thousands of soldiers to form the great circle; and having first purs'd the idolaters, he chast'd the wild beasts, and afterwards went a bowling. The falcons and hawks destroy'd all the peacocks, pheasants, parrots and ducks in this country. The soldiers took a great deal of game, and flew several rhinoceros's with their lances and lances, the this animal is so strong, that it will beat down a horse and horseman with a single blow of its horn; and has so thick a skin, that it cannot be pierc'd but by an extraordinary force.
The twenty eighth of Junaziuladher the army march'd eight miles, and encamp'd at Gebhan, a delightful residence on the frontiers of Muzaffar Cachmir.

C H A P. XXXI.

Description of the little kingdom of Cachmir, or Kashmir.

As Cachmir is one of the most noted countries in the world, has a particular situation, and so few people ever see it, because it is not the ordinary passage into any other countries, we will give a short description of it, which we have receiv'd from the natives, and the truth of which we are fully satisfy'd of.

Cachmir is a principality near Har, in the middle of the fourth climate, which according to Proloomy, begins at 34 deg. 37 min. of lat. its middle is at 36 deg. 22 min. and its end at 38 deg. 54. The latitude of Cachmir is 35 degrees; and its longitude from the fortunate Isles 107.

The country is of an oval form, surrounded with high mountains on all sides; it looks southwards upon Deli and the country of India, northwards on Bedlahchan and Goratans, westwards upon the hords of the Oungans, and eastwards upon Tobbot or Thebet.

In the extent of its province are ten thousand flourishing villages, full of fountains and green plains; but the common opinion is that the whole principality of Cachmir consists of a hundred thousand villages, as well in the plains as mountains. The air and water are very wholesome; and the beauty of the Cachmirian
The history of Timur-Bec.

Book IV. They women hath pass'd into a proverb among the Perian poets and orators. They have vast quantities of good fruit; but the winter is hurtful, because of the great abundance of snows which fall there. The summer fruits, as dates, oranges and citrons, never come to maturity; but are brought thither from the warm neighboring countries. The far country in the middle is twenty leagues in breadth from one mountain to the other.

The prince and court reside at the city of Nagaz, the middle of which, as at Bagdad, runs a river as large as the Tigris: and what is very surprising, this river is exceeding rapid, and is formed from a single fountain in the same country, called the fountain of Vir. The inhabitants have built upon this river more than thirty bridges of boats, with chains across the chief passages; seven of these bridges are in the city of Nagaz, which is the center and capital of the country. When this river hath pass'd the limits of Caehmir, it takes different names, from the several countries it wades, as Dindana and Jamad: above Moultan it joins the Genave, and both together having pass'd by Moultan, fall into the Rave, which runs by the other Moultan: at length the river Biah joins 'em, and near the town of Outeca, they all fall into the Indus or Abfend, which disembogues into the sea of Omman *, at the end of the country of Tartar.

The mountains which surround this country serve as fortifications against the infalls of an enemy; the inhabitants being under no apprehensions of their being rained on, either by time, rains or storms.

There are three roads into this country; that of Corasans is so very difficult, that the inhabitants, who are accusom'd to that sort of labor,
are oblig'd to carry bales of merchandize and other burden upon their backs, which the beasts of carriage are not able to do. The road of India is equally difficult. That of Tobbot or Thebet is easier; but for several days Johnny passengors meet with venomous herbs, which poison their horses.

Thus God has given this country natural defences; so that the inhabitants have no occasion for arms or armies.

The twenty-ninth of Jumazulahker, Timur departed from Gebhan, march'd four miles, and encamp'd on the bank of the river Dindara, which he crossed on a bridge built by his order; and which was as safe to the fatigu'D soldiers, as well Turks as Tadjies. The Emirs Chamelik and Gelalleliflam had orders for conducting the army over this bridge.

CHAP. XXXII.

Timur returns to the seat of his empire.

On the thirtieth of Jumazulahker in the morning, Timur departed for Samarcand before the army, that he might get there in good time; he march'd twenty miles on the Dindara, and encamp'd at Sancifhe, a town in the mountain of Joudi. The first of Replu he march'd seven miles on the carriage of Benchodge; he took horse after noon-prayer, and enter'd the desert of Gelali, from whence he came out in the even-

* The Turks are native Tartars; the Tadjies are inhabitants of conquer'd Asia and country.
The history of Timur-Bee.

Book IV. Ing, and encamp'd in a cavern, where there yet remain'd some water of the Pechecals, or great rains of the last winter. This cavern is but three miles from Berouge.

The 20th of Regob at ten in the morning, he came to the Indus, over which the Emirs Pir Ali Selduz, and others, who had the care of the frontiers of Nagax and Banou, and of the roads of those quarters, had caused a bridge of boats to be built.

Timur having crossed the Indus, paid till noon on its banks; and then leaving the Emir Allah-dad at the foot of the bridge, that he might take the baggage, and part of the army which was behind, to pass over, he departed in the afternoon, and marched ten miles before he encamp'd.

March 25. The third of Regob he stopp'd at Banou, where the Emirs Pir Alitaz, Hullein Couetelin, and others, who had been left there to keep the Ouganis in obedience, had the honor to pay their respects to him; having not seen him for a month, they presented him with nine horses and a thousand eggs. Timur gave them back their horses, and ordered that the eggs should be retur'd to the right owners; and then he commanded Pir Alitaz to stay in that place, till all the army had pass'd it.

April 3. The 7th of Regob, which is the first of Peterman, or the Gelasian epoch, as also the first day of the spring, he took the road to Nagax, where he arrived next day.

The same day the officer of Mirza Mirza Chun was sent back into Azerbijana, with advice of the emperor's conquests, and the good condition of his troops. Mahmoud, son of Berat Coja, and Hendoucha, were likewise sent to Cabul, to bring troops from thence, to destroy the
The history of Timur-Bec.

the Ourgams, against whom the Emir Soliman Chah had caused the castle of Nagaz to be built before the emperor's departure for India, to oppose their inroads, which disturbed quiet and security among the Muslims of that country.

On one side of the castle without the walls was a delicious fountain, which Timur was desirous should be within the enclosure of the castle; for which reason, notwithstanding his great desire to see the princes his dear children, he preferred the good of the public before his private satisfaction, and stayed in that place till the walls of the castle and the buildings over the fountain were finished. This lasted no longer than from Tuesday till Monday evening, because every one assisted in it, and the Emirs themselves, to set an example to others, carried the tiles to the masons. Then the emperor gave the government of this castle of Nagaz to Nurset Comari, an officer of the Mira Fr Meneem, with three hundred men of the regiment of Sama Afirt, whose captain was Harek Ali, to whom he joined four hundred defectors of the Uzbeks. He gave the government of Irak and Schemanzen to the Cheik Hallan, nephew of the Cheik Noureddin. Timur at length departed to encamp at the dome of the Cheik Mobarezchah.

The ninth of Regeb he went to Kermājde, Apra, where the Cheik Ahmed Oungani, prince of that place, had the honor to kiss his hand, being introduced by the great Emirs: but Timur was not pleased with the entertainment he gave him; for these mountaineers are neither acquainted with civility, good-breeding, or even the laws of hospitality.

In the evening they went to encamp at Arzica, where the Cheik Abdal gave the emperor...
The history of Timur-Bec.

Book IV. as handom as an entertainment as he was able; with which he was very much pleas'd.

April 3.

The 10th of Regeb, Timur encamp'd in the defile of Rame, and the same day sent the doctor Nimet to prince Charoc to acquaint him with his arrival. The 11th they stopp at a town, from whence they departed the same day at nine in the morning for Cabul, where Timur left the empress Tchelpan Mule Aga, with some troops, whose horses and mules were exceedingly fatigu'd; he also left Mobacher there, to conduct 'em leisurely. At night Timur arriv'd at the mouth of Jou Neu, a canal very full of silt, which he had caus'd to be dug. The 12th he went to encamp at Garban; where he built a great hospital of brick, because several roads meet at this place, which was soon finisht.

April 5.

The 13th the court pass'd the mountain and defile of Cheberto, and went to encamp in a plain at two leagues distance. The same day the emperor being struck by some evil eye*; or malign influence, fell sick, and had on his feet and hands painful ulcers, which hinder'd his taking any repose, and retarded 'em a whole day's march; and because of this accident this place was call'd the dry and unfortunate camp. The night following an officer arriv'd from Herat from prince Charoc, with very agreeable news.

Timur departed from this place on the third day in a commodious litter carry'd by mules, he not being able to ride on horseback; and as his sickness yet encreas'd, the officers

* The Turks, as well as the Italians, are so superstitious as to believe that certain persons being mistaken to every thing they look upon, and that their eyes are so venomous as to kill children. The Italians call this, if cannot write, the evil eye.
of his chamber fasten'd leathern bands to the chap., poles fix'd to the litter, and so carry'd him by the bottom of the river in a very narrow passage of the mountain Stupoutch, which they were oblig'd to pass. From the beginning of this defile to the mountain they crost the river twenty-six times; and twenty-two times from the mountain to the end of the defile.

The 15th of Regeb, the domestics of the empresses Serai Mule Canum and Touman Aga, and of the other ladys and children of the emperor, arriv'd at Samarcan, where they made presents to his majesty, assuring him of the empresses and princes health. Timur sent Colo Timur, an officer of Touman Aga, to the baggage, to bring from thence the elephants. In the mean while his majesty's indisposition disquieted the whole court, till the 17th of Regeb, when they crost the river of the defile, at which time it pleas'd God to restore him his health.

The 18th he went in a litter from Surab to wards Bacalan, and encamp'd at the town of Aker, where he staid a little to refresh himself, and afterwards encamp'd at Cara Boulac. The ladys of the Mirza Pir Mehemet, and of the Emir Gehan Chah, with the Emirs and chiefs of Bacalan, came to meet the emperor, and make their presents.

The 19th at ten in the morning he arriv'd at Semenean, whence he departed the same day, to encamp at Gwine. The 20th he march'd to Cun, and setting out from thence at noon, he arriv'd at the Gihon before Terned at midnight.
C H A P. XXXIII.

Timur crosses the Oxus, and is met by the prince and princesses of the blood.

April 15.

THE 1st of Regeb, at nine in the morning, Timur having cross'd the Oxus in a boat, met on the other side the Mirza Ouldoubek, the Mirza Ibrahim Sultan, the princess Beghifi Sultan his daughter, with the empresses Serai Mule Canum, Tekil Canum, and Touman Aga, accompany'd by all the princes, Mirzas, Emirs, lords and Cherifis of Samarcand, with others who came to meet his majesty, who gave them a handsom reception. This charming company, and especially the ladies, congratulated him on his conquests, and sprinkled over him so great a quantity of gold and precious stones, that it seem'd as if the land had been transform'd into 'em.

The court staid at Termeh two days, where they were entertain'd with a sumptuous banquet by the great Cherif Axel Mule, who made several handsome presents.

April 18.

The 2nd of Regeb the court went to the Kichlae of Gehan Mule: and the 24th to the baths of Lucki: the 25th they pass'd the iron-gate of Cologa, and encamp'd at the river of Baric. The 26th they encamp'd at Tchechaida; the 27th at Couzmundac; and the 28th they arrived at Dourbildgen, where the Mirza Charrac, who was come from Herat, had the honor to kiss the emperor's hands; he congratulated him upon his victors; made him presents, and sprinkled upon him, according to custom,
custom, gold, and precious stones. The great conqueror most affectionately embraced his dear son, whom he tenderly lov'd, and loaded him with favors and honors.

At this place likewise the Mirza Omar, son of Mirza Chah, whom Timur at his departure for the Indian war had left at Samarcand, had the honor to kiss his majesty's feet, who gave him a very kind reception, because of the love and care he had always shown to his people, and the justice he had so exactly render'd.

On Monday the 29th of Regeb, Timur went to encamp on the bank of a little river, and the 30th, in the delicious fields of Kech. He immediately went to pay his devotions at the tombs of the great Sants, Chamfeddin Kelat, and others; and at length at that of his illustrious father, the Emir Trepaz, of blessed memory: and then he visited those of his noble children. Here he laid fifteen days, giving alms to the poor of that country.

He departed from this place the 1st of Shaban, to encamp on the bank of the river of Roudur. The 15th he encamp'd at Tezenar Rehut, or the town of plane-trees; the 16th he pass'd the mountain, and encamp'd at Cotlongur. The 17th he went to Tact Carecheh, which himself had built: and the 18th he encamp'd at the Kroebch of Gehanumma. The 19th he arriv'd at the pleasure-house of Dolet-Abad: and Monday the 20th, at nine in the morning, he came to the Kroebch of the garden of Dilen Chah, the palace of which had been lately finish'd; and to consecrate that palace to joy and pleasures, a royal banquet was prepar'd, at

* Kroebch is a building in form of a cupola.
which the empresses, the emperor's children, the princes of the blood, the Emirs or dukes, and the Nevians and foreign princes, all sided. They cast so much gold and precious stones upon his majesty, to congratulate him on his victory and happy arrival, that the earth seem'd lown with 'em, and all the officers were loaded with riches.

The 2d of Schaban, Timur made his entry into his capital city of Samarcand, where, after he had been at the baths, to make his ablutions, he went to visit the tomb of the venerable Santo Farcadeatam, son of Abbas; and there he gave presents to the officers belonging to this mausoleum: then he went to the hospital founded by the empress Tomman Aga. After noon-prayer he honor'd with his presence the garden of plants, and the palace of Nakhchivan, where he was diverted with feasts and plays. From thence he went to the delicious garden of Baghi Behicht, which is indeed a true paradise, as its name imports. Then he came to the palace of Baghi Bolend, at which place the elephants and baggage arriv'd. The inhabitants of Transoxians, who had never before seen any elephants, were surpriz'd at these huge animals of such an extraordinary figure, and gave praise to the Almighty, whose works are incomprehensible.

The emperor distributed the curiositys and riches he had brought from India, among the princes of the blood, the Sherifs, and chief persons of the kingdom, according to their different rank and quality; among which were precious stones, gold, beautiful male and female Negroes.

Timur sent Surenk, eldest brother of Mellou Can prince of Moultau, with two chains of elephants, and other curiositys, to the Mirza Mehemed Sultan. He made other presents to the Emirs
The history of Timur-Bec.

Emirs who had been left in Tranfoxiana, that Chance, every one might partake of the benefits of his conquests. Then he permitted his son prince Charoe, to return to the fear of his kingdom of Corofiana, after having loaded him with favors.

CHAP. XXXIV.

Building of the great mosque of Samarcand.

The Alcoran expressly affirms us, that the greatest proof of a prince's faith is his erecting temples to the honor of God: whereupon our conqueror, being persuaded that this work of piety would be the crown of the merits he had acquired in his wars and Gazzies against the infidels, where he had destroy'd the temples of the false gods, and exterminated those idolaters, resolv'd to build a great mosque in Samarcand, large enough to contain all the faithful of that capital city, when they should accompany their prayers; and to this effect he issu'd out his orders for the foundations to be laid.

The architects chose a happy moment to begin it, viz. on the 4th of Ramadan 801, which answers to the year of the Hare, the moon being then in Leo, going out of the fickle aspect of the sun, and entering the fickle aspect of Venus. The masons, brought from foreign countries, as mention'd before, gave the greatest proofs of their art and skill, as well in the inimitable beauty of the angles, as in the strength of the foundations of this noble edifice. In the interior of the mosque were employ'd two hundred masons from Azerbaijan, Persia and India; five hun-
hundred men likewise work'd in the mountains in cutting and hewing of stones, which were sent into the city. Several other artificers, of different trades, perform'd their parts with the utmost application. Ninety-five chains of elephants were made use of in drawing large stones with wheels and machines, according to the laws of mechanics. The princes of the blood and Emirs were appointed to oversee the workmen, that not one moment might be lost in finishing this stupendous building.

In the mean while the Mirza Mehemet Sultan, who ordinarily resided at Andecan, on the frontier of Cete, arriv'd with a great attendance of officers. He had the honor to pay his respects to the emperor in the hospital of Touman Aga, where he made his presents, and sprinkled gold and precious stones upon his majesty, according to the custom of the Tartars, Moguls, and indeed of almost all the nations of the Turks. Timur embrac'd this young prince with all the tenderness that could be expected from so good a father. He then went to visit the works, to animate the workmen by his presence; and he did not fir either from the college of Canum, which is near this mosque, or from the hospital of Touman Aga; at which places he distributed justice, sat in council, and decided the affairs of religion and of the state.

At length, under his conduct, this great edifice was finish'd. It contain'd four hundred eighty pillars of hewn stone, each seven cubits high. The arch'd roof was cover'd with marble, nearly carv'd and polish'd; and from the architrave of the entablature to the top of the roof were nine cubits. At each of the four corners of the mosque without was a Minareet. The doors were of brass; and the walls, as well with-
without as within, as also the arches of the Chap. 34.
roof, were adorn'd with writing in relievo, among which is the chapter of the cavern, and other parts of the Alcoran. The pulpit, and reading-desk, where the prayers for the emperor were read, were of the utmost magnificence: and the niche of the altar, cover'd with plates of iron gilt, was likewise of perfect beauty.

After the month of Ramadan was past, and the feast of Baltam come, Timur went to the palace of Dilcu Chah, where he order'd preparations to be made for the most sumptuous banquets, and all sorts of plays and diversions. The empress Rokia Canica on this occasion gave a noble entertainment, accompany'd with con-
forts of music and fine dancing.

The end of the fourth book.
The history of Timur-Bec.

BOOK V.

Two wars of Timur in Georgia. The conquest of Syria and Mesopotamia. The famous war with Bajazet the Ottoman emperor, who after the loss of a battle is taken prisoner, and dies in the Tartars' camp.

CHAP. I.

The cause which obliged Timur to make war in the country of Iran, that is, in the western parts of Asia, from the river Gibon to the Mediterranean sea.

An. Dom. 1399.

In the autumn of the year of the Hegira 801, which answers to that of the Mouse, the Mirza Miran Chah', conducted by his evil destiny, went to take the diversion of hunting in the neighborhood of Tauris, where the tomb of Pir Omar Naq Chirban is to be seen.

* Son of Timur, and viceroy of Media, which is called by the Persians Ahrabiana. The great Moguls of India are descended from him.
He met a roe-buck, which he was desirous to take with his hands; but as he was flopping down to that purpose, he fell off his horse; tho he was one of the best horsemen of Asia; and the violence of his fall cast him into a swoon, in which he lay a long time. All the lords of his court were extremely concern'd at it, and got round him to comfort him: He continued in it for three days and nights; and his physician, being an ignorant fellow, or rather a knave, which has since been most suspected, fail'd in the application of remedies; by which means this prince was seiz'd with a giddiness in his brain, which impair'd his senses. Thus this great man, who till that time had possessed the throne of Hulacou, and of the kingdom of Azerbajiana, with so much applause and glory, by the administration of justice and by his liberality, was depriv'd of his understanding. Upon a bare suspicion he flew a man; and prodigally squander'd away the treasures of the state, destroy'd the most noted buildings, and did many things contrary to the good sense and dignity of a prince.

One of his actions, which plainly discover'd the alteration of his judgment, was, that at the beginning of summer, he departed at the head of all his troops to besiege the city of Bagdad; he march'd day and night, going two days journey in twenty-four hours, imagining that the bare rumor of his approach would strike a terror into the heart of the Sultan, and make him abandon the city. But affairs took a quite different turn; for when Mirn Caih was at the dome of Ibrahim Lie, he receiv'd advice from Tauris, that a great number of the principal men of the kingdom were confederated against him; which nevertheless did not hinder his progress to Bagdad. But the Sultan Ahmed, knowing it was not
not a proper season to besiege the place, because of the great dryness and heat of the weather, resolv'd to defend himself. In the mean while couriers came incessantly from Tauris with reiterated advice of the conspiracy, and even of the revolt of the principal inhabitants; so that the Mirza, two days after the arrival of the great standard before Bagdad, was constrain'd to return to Tauris with expedition; he was no sooner enter'd into that capital of Media, than he put all those to the sword who were accuss'd of being in the conspiracy, of which number was the Cali*. During this autumn he suspected that the Cheirif Ali, prince of Cheki, of the tribe of Erfur, wou'd revolt from his obedience; for which cause, without examining into the truth of it, he march'd into the field at the head of his army, and went to pillage his country.

When the Georgians, who by their acts of hostility had already drawn on themselves Timur's anger, were inform'd of the Mirza Miran Chah's small application to public affairs, they became so insolent, that during Timur's expedition in India they revolted. At the same time the Sultan Taher, son of the Sultan of Bagdad, was with his troops in the fortreys of Alemgie, which had been besieged a long time, according to Timur's orders, by the Sultan Sengger, son of Hadgi Serfeddin*. The besiegers, the better to carry on the siege, had built a great wall round the place, so that no one cou'd get in or out. This conjuncture caus'd the Georgians to get together a great number of troops; and even the Cheirif Ali, tho a good Musulman,

* An old general of Timur's army, and his favourite, who had attended him ever since the beginning of his life.
join'd these infidels, to revenge himself for the Chap. 1.

Mirza Miran Chah's having pillag'd his country.
The Georgians came before Alengie with a

great army, being resolv'd to deliver the Sultan

Taher, who had been so press'd, that his heart,
as one may say, was in his mouth; and entering

Azerbaijana, they took the country, pillag'd

the Mussulmans effects, and committed all

imaginable disorders.

Sultan Sendger, on advice of this, rais'd the

singe, and march'd to Tauris to give an account

of this strange accident to Miran Chah, who

immediately order'd his son the Mirza Abou

beere to march with four or five Emirs before

Alengie, to repulse the Georgians, and put a

stop to their disorders, which they could not do

with so much expedition, but that the Georgians

got first to the place, from whence having

made the Sultan Taher go out, they plac'd

Alengie in the hands of Haji Saleh, and three

famous Oznoures\footnote{The Oznoures are the principal lords of Georgia, as the Emirs and Mirzas are with the Persians and Tartars.} of Georgia, and then return'd home, their design being only to deliver

the Sultan Taher. Yet by chance they met the

army of Tauris, which being far less numerous,
eddor'd to avoid 'em, but that being impossible,

the Oznoures resolutely advanc'd as if afford'd of the victory; at the first oner they

broke thro' the wings of the army of Tauris; and the Cherif Ali, perceiving Aboubeere,
rush'd upon him out of the main body sword in

hand, to revenge the ruin his father had brought

upon his country; but this young prince, who

was but eighteen years old, kept his ground, and let fly an arrow of walnut-wood against the

\footnote{The Oznoures are the principal lords of Georgia, as the Emirs and Mirzas are with the Persians and Tartars.}
The history of Timur-Bec.

Book V. Cherif, with so much skill, that he struck him near the collar of his helmet of gold, which he pierc'd, and the arrow stuck in his neck; so that the rash Cherif fell down dead on a sudden. This vigorous action of the young prince did not hinder the Georgians gaining the victory; for they totally defeated the army of Tauris, and then return'd into their own country, while the Mirza Aloubeere lay'd himself by flight.

These melancholy events were the consequences of the Mirza Miran Chali's being lunatic, which yet appear'd in a more flamboyant manner in his excelsis and debauches; for he employ'd almost all his time in drinking and gaming. And as one vices is always attended by another, he fell into greater extravagances. As he was one day in conversation with his wife the princess Canzade, he reproach'd her with a fact which wounded her honor, with which this chaste princess was so sensibly touch'd, that she us'd all her endeavors to discover the source of this calumny; in which search the lives of several men and women were sacrifice'd; and even the Mirza's Vihan, Dolet Coja Linac, was oblig'd to fly with his wife to Beyan Coutechin at Rez, leaving all he had got during the time of his military to be plunder'd. The aversion of the Mirza and Canzade to far increase'd, that the princes, being highly incensed, was oblig'd to go to Samarcand, where they arriv'd just as Timur return'd from the Indian war, and had begun to take some recreation after the fatigues of that expedition, and inform himself of the present affairs of the empire. This was a favorable time for the princes to be reveng'd; for Timur had been already inform'd of the many disorders committed in the kingdom of Iran, and especially in Azerbijana, th'o' the ill conduct of the Mirza.
Mirza, Canzade at her arrival had the honor to kiss the imperial carpet in the castle of Planter, where she acquainted his majesty with her husband's dissipation, offering him that if he did not march towards that Ishlum, the Mirza would not fail of retuming, since he now made flight of the imperial mandates and prohibitions, and had squander'd away the treasures of Azerbijain in caprices and prodigality.

These reasons oblig'd Timur, before he had repos'd himself after the fatigues of the last campaign, from which he had not return'd above four months, to take up a resolution to carry his arms into the countries of Iran, to put a stop to the disorders which had crept in there, to secure the weak, curb the insolent, and deliver those who were fallen under the weight of injustice and tyranny.

CHAP. II.

Timur's departure for a campaign of seven years.

TIMUR, to whom the universal empire of Asia was devin'd, was no sooner on his return from India, where he had suffer'd the fatigue of a treasom war with the infidels for a whole year, than he resolved to march towards the western parts of Asia, for the reasons given in the preceding chapter. The emirhs immediately sent messengers into all the provinces, with orders to the officers of the army to assemble their troops, as well cavalry as infantry, for a campaign of seven years, and repair immediately to court to receive his maje-
The history of Timur-Bec.

Book V. majesty's orders. Timur sent to Herat three Emirs of the court of the Mirza Charoe, to signify to that prince that he must march into Azerbijana at the head of the troops of Coraftana, and
* Charoe's that the Emir Soyman Chah * shou'd go before at the head of the vanguard to Tauris.

The Mirza Charoe having learnt the emperor's will from the Emirs, employ'd himself in getting ready the army of Coraftana; and the Emir Soyman Chah departed at the same time with the Seid Coja, whom Timur had sent. As soon as the troops were assembled, the Mirza at their head took the road to Bellam and Domgan. When he was arriv'd at Jaderum, he met Toukel Curcara, who was come from the imperial camp, which had already cross'd the Gibon, and who brought orders for the army of Coraftana to take the road to Chafman, Efferabad, and Sari, because the imperial army must part by Bellam and Domgan. Whereupon the Mirza turn'd towards Chafman; but many of his horses perish'd in their march, as well by reason of the difficulty of the ways, as for that the roads were full of poisonous herbs: and after a tedious journey he arriv'd at Firouzoum. Timur before his departure gave the government of all the country of Touran to the Mirza Mezcomed Sultan, whom he left at Samarcand, the seat of this great empire. He fix'd several Emirs in employments near the Mirza's person; whose business was to defend the frontiers; and he gave the government of Andecan to the Mirza Espherd, to whom he entrusted the care of the limits of Turkestan. At length, recommending himself to God, he order'd the great imperial standard to be brought into the field; and at the beginning of autumn, the eighth of Muharrem 1229. 802, which answers to the year of the Hare, this
this great conqueror departed for a campaign of seven years; the date of which day is found in the letters of Fâteh Carib, which signifies, easy conquest. Timur went directly to encamp at Caratoupa, which mountain he afterwards pass'd, and went down to Kech, where he visited the tombs of the prince his father, and of the Chérif Chamfeldin Kolar; here he distributed alms, and then went to Termed, where he did the same in the tombs of the Chérifs, as well as in that of Coja Mehemed Ali, the great philosopher of Termed, and in that of the illustrious Aboubeere Vendar, and other famous Saints, imploring their intercession with God for the good success of his arms.

He cross'd the Gihon, and went down to Bâle, where he encamp'd in a meadow situate at the foot of the fortrefs of Hendouan: he likewise visited at Bâle the tombs of these holy men, Coja Okia Chah, Coja Rummanc, Sultan Ahmed Keyrouye, Fâdâyaz, Schan Thacuri, and others, whose assistance he besought; and he did the Emir Yâdghiar Barlas, governour of Bâle, the honour to lodge in his house. This Emir was not wanting in performing his devours, as well in sprinkling gold and precious stones at the emperor's feet, as in preparing for him a magnificent banquet and presents, and giving him all the marks of a profound respect and perfect obedience. Timur departed from Bâle, and after several days' march, came to Sarek Camich Dgizam, where he was join'd by the Mirza Charoe's household, and by the principlies Melket Aga *, and Ghioher Chad Aga *, with their children, who came from Herat.

The emperor took pleasure in seeing 'em, and received their presents, and the precious stones they sprinkled on him, with so much the more satisfaction,
The history of Timur-Beg.

Book V.

The satisfaction, in that they presented to him the young Mirza Siorgatmich, who was born of Mollan Aya but four months before, under the auspices of Virgo, the eighth of Ramadan. The emperor was tenderly affected at the sight of the Mirza his grandson, whom he loaded with blessings.

The Emir Acheaga came to the same place to pay his respects to his majesty, making presents, and sprinkling precious flowers at his feet. The emperor gave him a handsome reception, with a veil, and permitted him to return to Herat. Then he went to visit the tomb of the celebrated Mufri Ahmed Dgiam, where he distributed alms as usual, to implore the protection of this famous Saiton; and from thence he sent the Mirza Rouflem to his eldest brother the Mirza Pir Mehened at Chiraz, with orders that these two brothers should march together towards Bagdad; and he commanded the Emir Sevindgie to accompany him with a thousand horse. Timur then took the diversion of the chase in the plains of Khirgherd and Feragherd; where in two days they flew an excessive number of birds; and afterwards he continued his road by Nichabour and Bettam, and distributed victuals and ammunition among the troops; he passed by the province of Rez and Khouvar; and being encamp'd at the town of Ayanic, he was joined by the Mirza Charoe, who according to his instructions had march'd by the road of Mazendran.
The transactions of the Emir Solyman Chah.

The Emir Solyman Chah, who had taken the road to Tartis, with the vanguard being arrived at Rez, heard from Beyan Cutchin, governor of that town, of the Mirza Miran Chah's being hastened; whereupon, not thinking himself secure if he should go to war upon this prince, he resolved to march to Hamadan. But the Mirza Abunbecere having held a council with his father's Emirs, they contrived to write a letter to Solyman Chah, in which they invited him to come to Tartis, allowing him that he should receive all manner of satisfaction. On this promise the Emir went there, and with so much conduct wrought upon Miran Chah, that he persuaded him to let out two days after to meet the emperor, with a numerous train; while the Mirza Abunbecere gave this brave Emir a magnificent entertainment in the meadow of Comtoups, without the city of Tartis; honoring him with a suit, and making him a present of several fine horses, to gain his good-will; as he did also Said Cusa, who accompanied the Emir Solyman Chah: and then they went together to Chebrit. When Timur had passed by Chebrit, the Mirza Miran Chah arriv'd at the imperial camp; but he could not obtain audience till the next day. The same day a messenger, nam'd Aman, arriv'd from Chiras, and offer'd presents to Timur from the Mirza Omar Chah; he had a handsom reception, and the honor to kiss the imperial carpet. Next day
day the Mirza Miran Chah had also the honor to kill the emperor's last: he offered his presents on his knees; but he was not received by the emperor with any tokens of kindness, because of the faults he had committed. Then Timur sent to Tauris before the rest, Timur Coja son of Arbouga, and Gelelshillam, to carry information of the department of Miran Chah. These two commissaries, at their arrival there, caus'd the principal officers and lieutenants of this Mirza to be seiz'd and bound, and the registers of the Divan to be brought to 'em. And whereas the Mirza had squander'd away two parts of the revenues for four years belonging to the Divan, these commissaries would not pay his accounts for the same. But as information was given the court, that the principal cause of the disorder of the province came from the Mirza's excesses, and he was buoy'd up in this evil passion by the influence of certain profligate musicians, and others, who made it their business to excite him to pleasures and drunkenness, that these parasites never stir'd from the prince's person, but took care to furnish him with new subjects for debauches; the emperor issu'd out an order that they should be all hang'd, not excepting one man, to serve for an example to others. Thus all the Mirza's favorites were seiz'd; and even the most ingenious men, who were of that number, were not spared, but serv'd as a warning to others; as the incomparable Moulana Mohamed Couthallam, so famous for all sciences, and so celebrated a poet; whose conversation and agreeable wit had render'd him the wonder of his age.

Timur, at his arrival at Sultania, gave audience to Muraffir of Netwaz, who came

*A town near Cachan.*
from Iphshan, and presenting to Timur jewels Chap. 3.
and precious vessels, he kiss'd the imperial carpet. 
Timur continued his march towards Carabagh, by the way of 
Arax and Ardebil: he hunted in the plains of Moucam' and Actam', and encamp'd on the banks of the Aran', which he cross'd the next day upon a bridge of boats, and went to Carabagh Aran. He distributed the winter-quarters among his troops, which were to be in the neighbourhood of Coutour-kin, where the lord and lordship of Quaratibou lay. At Carabagh the Mirza Aboubeere, and the Emir Solyman Chah, had the honor to pay their respects to the emperor; and all the Emirs and chief lords of Miran Chah's court, and the generals of his army, made their presents to his majesty, according to their ability.

We have already related how the Cherif Ali king of Cheki, of the lord of Eriat, had join'd the Georgian army; that he came with 'em to the gates of Alenjic, and lost his life by the hands of the young Mirza Aboubeere, son of the Mirza Miran Chah. Since that time, his son, the Cherif Sidi Ahmed, who had taken upon him the reins of government, fell into an extreme iniquity, fearing lest his father's fault should justly draw upon him Timur's vengeance; this reflection oblig'd him to seek the protection of the Emir Cheik Ibrahim, king of Chirvan, and to fly to him for refuge, because this Emir was honor'd with Timur's particular favor, who lov'd him because of his sincerity, and distinguished him among his greatest officers. Wherefore this king of Chirvan, relying entire-

* Towns of Aembijana.
* A river forming of Aembijana and Aran.
The history of Timur-Bej.

Book V.

ly on the emperor's goodness, carry'd the Cherif to the base of the throne, designing to beg pardon for him, and procure him the honor to lift the imperial carpet. In return, Sidi Ahmed kiss'd the ground with a profound submission, and the Cheik Ibrahim ask'd pardon for his faults. The emperor full of clemency was willing to give him that mark of his affection; and not only pardon'd the Cherif on his account, but even gave him a handsome reception, and moreover confirm'd him in the principality of Cheki, which the Cheik Ali his father formerly possessed. The Cheik Ibrahim, in quality of King of Chorvan, paid all his particular odds, and to satisfy his joy at the emperor's coming into his country, he prepar'd great banquets; and caus'd so great a number of horses and flocks to be slain, that all the cooks in the court were not sufficient to digest 'em. Besides this banquet, he entertain'd the court with all other pleasures, which usually accompany any famous feasts; and afterward he offer'd his presents, which consisted of curious animals, beautiful boys and girls, silver, jewels, belts of gold or with precious stones, several sorts of curiosities, and other arms; and lastly, six thousand horses of great price and beauty.

CHAP. IV.

The arrival of good news from several parts.

DURING these transactions, advices were brought from all parts, which were very advantageous to us; among the rest we were inform'd of the death of Timur Cordic Aglen, who...
who having fled for refuge to Timur, after the defeat and ruin of Tocarmicuh Can, had thro' the protection of Timur been establishes'd on the throne of the Can's of Capchae, and the empire of Touchi; and yet forgetful of all the favors he had receiv'd from Timur, thro' an unparall'l'd ingratitude, had revolted, and declar'd war against him: they had advice, I say, of the death of this ungrateful prince, as also of the miserable state of the kingdom of Capchae from seditions and intestine wars.

At the same time we also heard that Malek Eszadher Baroe, king of Egypt and Syria, had pass'd from this world into the other; that discord having crept among the Emirs and Mamlukes, the affair had ended in a civil war, in which several of the principal Emirs had been murthered: that Farridge, son of Baroe, who was declar'd heir and successor to the kingdom, had neither credit nor authority: and, that the kingdoms of Egypt and Syria were entirely fallen into disorder.

There came also advice, that, Tangus Can, emperor of Chima, where he had reign'd a long time, professing idolatry, was dead: and that the Chineo who had revolted, had caus'd great confusions in that empire.

They also learnt that Kezre Coja Aguen, king of Geze, had paid the tribute to the angel Israel: and that after his death dissensions arose among his four sons, Chamadgehan, Mehemed Aguen, Chirali, and Chadgehan, thro' the motions of some seditions people.

The same day they also heard that the Mirza Estender, son of Omar Cheik, was departed from Andican at the head of his Emirs and army, and had enter'd Mogollistan, where, thro' Timur's good fortune, he had gain'd the advan-
The history of Timur-Bec.

Book IV. rage over the Moguls, whom he utterly defeated.

These advice, which were of so great importance to the designs of our conqueror, arrived the same day, fill'd the hearts of all the emperor's faithful servants, with joy.

As the affair of the Mirza Eskander is of such great consequence, we have thought proper to give the reader a detail of it. Distention having crept in among the people of Grrt, after the death of Kesra Coja Aglen, the Mirza Eskander laid hold on this favorable opportunity, and got together the troops of Andecan; and tho' he was but fifteen years old, he put himself at their head, accompany'd by the Emirs of his court, and by those who in compliance with Timor's orders, guarded the frontiers of Grrt, and boldly enter'd into the lands of the Mogola.

When he was come near to Cachgar, and the Emirs had join'd him, they advance'd all together to pillage and ravage the town of Yarkent; then they march'd on farther, and did the same to Saral Camich, Kelapine, Alighoud, Yar Courgain, Tchartac, and Keriam Barch; they at length arriv'd at the province of Aoude in Mogolistan, and almost all the people, whose heads were in those quarters, came to meet 'em with submission and obedience. They took their prisoners who refused to obey, and carry'd 'em with 'em towards the citadel of Aclou, which they besieged, and with great difficulty made themselves masters of it. This citadel consists of

---

* The author seems to make no difference between the Grrts and the Mogola, either because the action is the same, or that the Mogola is that name which the Tartarians call the country of Grrt.
* Capital of Tartefian.
* Town of Grrt.
* All towns of Mogolistan.
three castles, which have a communication with each one another, and is esteem'd so strong, that the inhabitants of all the neighboring provinces consider it as a sure asylum in time of war. The Mirza soon encamp'd with his Emirs without the place; and being prepar'd to attack it vigorously with instruments for sapping the walls, scaling-ladders, battering-rams, and other machines, he caus'd several assaults to be given immediately after one another, for near forty days, when the besieged were oblig'd to surrender: to which purpose they sent presents to the Mirza, and made several very rich Chinese merchants go out of the place, who had been shut up there with their effects. Then the Mirza sent men to make inroads at Bai and Coufan; the former of which is a cool place fit for the summer, and the latter a warm place proper for winter. The scouts pillag'd these towns, and brought away captive the princess Hadgi Melik Aga, wife of the Emir Kezre Chah, and her daughter Fan Melik, with other ladies. At length they went to pillage the town of Tarem, whence they brought the inhabitants away prisoners.

After these conquests the Mirza Extender departed from Acrass for Cotan *, one hundred and fifty seven days journey from Cambalee *, capital of the northern China, call'd Cattai, which is a flourishing and populous country, with abundance of water: for we count from Cotan to Cata Coja thirty-five days journey; from thence to Teteamul, frontier of China, thirty-one days journey, where there is a wall littare between two mountains, in which wall is a great gate. A

---

* Capital of a kingdom of the same name.
several Yan Cates, or inns, to lodge passengers, and several soldiers are always at this place to guard the frontiers and entrance of the wall. From hence to Ghindigian Fou, a city of China, is fifty-one days journey; and thirty from that place to Cambalac. It is also forty from Ghindigian Fou to Numni. We are assured there is another road, by which to go from Cotan to the frontiers of China in forty days; but there is not one dwelling-place in it, the fends make it very tiresome; and tho' the water, which is drawn out of the wells in its deserts, is easily come at, yet in several places it is venomous, and kills the animals which drink of it: and what is very surprizing, out of two wells a small distance from each other, the water of one is poisonous, and the other perfectly good. From Cotan to Carhgar is fifteen days journey, and from Carhgar to Sano and twenty-five. In Cotan are two rivers, Oracach, and Caracach, the stones of which being Jasper, are carry'd to other countries. These two rivers have their source in the mountain of Carangoutac.

To return to our subject: at the Mirza Iskender's arrival at Cotan, the inhabitants came out to salute him, and bring him presents; and he behav'd himself with so much prudence, that all the places and castles of this frontier-province were reduc'd to the emperor's obedience. He at length departed from Cotan, and came to Carangoutac, a very steep and rugged mountain, into which the inhabitants of Cotan and the neighboring places fly for refuge in time of war. When the Mirza was fully inform'd of the strength and inaccessible ness of Carangoutac, he did not judge it convenient to hazard his troops there, but chose rather to return, and spend the winter at Carhgar. He chose two
companies of Mogul young women, the most Chap. 4-
beautiful of Cottan, nine in each company, whom
he sent as a present to the emperor by the Cheik
Yefzou; he likewise sent by the same person nine
young women and nine horses to the Mirza Me-
hamet Sultan, who being extremely incensed against him, refus'd his presents.

The reason of this discord was as follows:
the Mirza Mehemed Sultan was come into Per-
kesstan with an army to join the Mirza Eskender,
and go with him to the war against the Gutes;
but Eskender, instead of waiting for him as he
ought, went before, and march'd directly into
Mogophilas, that he might not serve under Me-
hamed Sultan. This excited Mehemed's hatred,
so that he would not accept of his presents; and
he return'd to Samarcan with his army, without
putting any designs in execution.

When spring was come, the Mirza Eskender
return'd to Andecan, from whence he took the
road to Samarcan, to visit Mehemed Sultan;
but he learnt at the mountain Ackioteb, that
the Mirza being highly incensed against him,
had a design to seize him. This news made
Eskender jealous; so he return'd to Andecan,
and enter'd the castle; but the Emir, Pir Me-
hamed, son of Tagi Bouga, and Pir Hadgi son of
Melik, tax'd him with a design to revolt. They
assembled the militia of Andecan, and besieged
the castle, upon which the Mirza Eskender came
out, and went to lodge in a garden built by the
Mirza Omar Cheik, after having confer'd with
'em with a deal of good-nature. Then the Emirs
feiz'd his domestics, and bound 'em; of which
they sent advice to the Mirza Mehemed Sultan
at Samarcan, as alfo of Eskender's entering
the castle, and design to revolt. Mehemed Sul-
tan dispatch'd an express to bring Eskender to
Samar-
TIMUR designing to carry his arms into Georgia, in obedience to the precept of the Alcoran, which teaches us to wage war upon all who disbelieve the Musulman religion, he began to make preparations from the winter of 802, being then encamp’d at Carabagh Arran.

He gave a reef to the Cheik Ibrahim of Chitvan, and another to Sidi Ahmed of Cheki; and after having loaded ’em with his favors, he permitted ’em to return home. He chose three men out of every ten to serve as scouts, whom he order’d to take victuals for ten days; and he commanded the baggage and rest of the army to stay in this place. He went to join these scouts with the Mirzaz his sons; and being arriv’d at the river of Cyrus *, he crossed it with his troops on a bridge of boats. Soon after he was join’d by the Cheik Ibrahim of Chitvan, and Sidi Ahmed, prince of Cheki, who came to follow the court.

* Arabe is a prince’s governor.
The history of Timur-Bec.

The imperial army pass'd by Cheshi, and took Chap. 5.
the road to the defile of Comcha, where the
infidels dwell. and as this defile was full of
thick woods, the trees of which were very close-
ly interwoven with one another, the soldiers had
orders to cut them down to facilitate their passage.
Accordingly they made a road with their axes
and saws ten days journey in length, and broad
enough for five or six companies to march in
front. At that time it snow'd exceedingly for
twenty days together; but this could not hind
er Timur from arriving with his army in
Georgia. Our men made the great cry, Allah Es-
ker, and fell upon the enemy with so much fury,
that the surface of the mountain which the snows
had before render'd white, with the blood of these
infidels became as red as fields sown with tulpis;
and no quarter was given to any they met. Com-
cha the chief of these infidels, who disbelieve
any future judgment, was oblig'd to abandon
his effects and family, and fly. Our soldiers
pur-
su'd him as far as the defile of Arsen, and re-
turn'd with a great many oxen, sheep, and other
cattle. After Comcha's flight, and retreat-
ing into the woods, they set fire to his houses, and
pillag'd and ruin'd all his villages. And as
wise was absolutely necessary for this people;
their men, women, and little children being so
accustomed to it, that when they were on their
death-bed, they entreated that some might be
buried in their sepulchres with 'em, and order'd
by their wills that after their deaths their bodys
should be wash'd with wine, and their coffins
made with vine-tree: for this consideration,

* A town on the south frontier of Georgia near the Caspian.
† A defile in Georgia, belonging to prince Comcha.
that they might do 'em the more damage, and entirely ruin 'em, the vine-trees were distributed among the troops, who rooted up all of 'em, which they had with so great difficulty cultivated; they also cut down the other trees, and peeled several. They afterwards raz'd the great edifices of this country, and especially the temples, where they paid their adorations, which were so disagreeable to God. And what is remarkable is, that in the winter of the preceding year, which was that of the Leopard, Timur destroy'd the Guebres of India, and ruin'd their temples at Deli, and upon the Ganges: and that this winter, which was the year of the Hare, he was carrying on the same war of religion in Georgia, and razing the temples of the Georgians. The poet says, that he had one foot on the eastern frontiers of India, and the other upon the western limits of the country of Arran.

**CHAP. VI.**

Timur's return from the defile of Comela.

TIMUR liad near a month in this defile; and his soldiers had made themselves masters of all the mountains, after having slay'n an infinite number of brave Ommours, whose prince Comela was retir'd to so great a distance, that no advice cou'd be got of the place he was in; and the enemy's country was entirely ruin'd: besides all this, the cold was very violent, and the ways were clog'd up with snow; so that the horses had nothing to eat but the barks of trees, and even several of 'em died with hunger.

Where-
Whereupon Timur resolved to return, he repaired to the river of Cyros, and came back with glory to Carah Firuz, where he entered his imperial tent with the acclamations of all the lords and princes of his court. The joy at his presence was augmented by the birth of a son to the Mirza Cali Sultan. This young prince was named Berkul; and several days were spent in sprinkling gold and precious stones upon him; they had banquets and plays, accompanied with music, to celebrate this happy birth. Soon after a severe order was issued out, for prosecuting those in a council of war, who had not behaved themselves as they ought in the battle fought by the Mirza Miran Chah against the Georgians, in the neighborhood of Alengie. The Mirza Churuc was commissioned to see to the putting this order in execution; who having examined all the facts, in council with the Emirs of the Divan, they presented a memorial to the emperor, with the several interrogatory informations and proofs: upon which Timur ordered the punishment due by the laws of Genghis Can to be executed. The battinado was given to Haji Abdalla Abbas, and Mehemed Cagian: Yumno Harnrai Aperdi, who had fled first, was ordered to be put to death: but the Chah Lades, or emperor's children, obtained the favor of his being repriever'd after the battinado before the behind: and each of these three lords was fined thirty horses. They also fined the principal officers of the Mirza Miran Chah, some at fifty, some at two hundred, and some at three hundred horses; which horses were distributed among the foot-soldiers.

Timur bestowed many favors and honors on the Mirza Aboubecer, because of the valor he had shown in the fight, when he unhors'd Sidi...
The history of Timur-Bec.

All king of Chuli. At the same time the prince Burhan Aglen was likewise put to death, for having committed some considerable faults, very unworthy of his birth, in several skirmishes. His son was treated in the same manner; and his regiment, officers, and domestics were given to Rouflem Foudad.

C H A P. VII.

Continuation of the history of the Mirza Rouflem, who was gone from Djiari to Chiraz, A great crime committed by his eldest brother, the Mirza Pir Mehemed.

W E have said before that the emperor had sent the Mirza Rouflem from Djiarn to Chiraz, and that he was accompany'd in his journey by the Emir Sevindigic at the head of two thousand horse. They happily arriv'd at Chiraz by the road of Yezd and Abreough. The Mirza Pir Mehemed gave him a handom reception, and a sumptuous banquet, in the garden of Carabghil, and presented him with a vaft and a hundred thousand Dinars Gopeghis. Some time after the Mirza Rouflem, accompany'd by the Emirs Sevindigic, his nephew Hajlan Jandar, and Hajlan Jagadaou, who were at Chiraz, took the road to Bagdad, according to the emperor's order, and pass'd by Behbehun and Tellor, leave-

* In Constantin towards Jaffrana: the same with Stew Camik Djiarn.
* A royal garden at Chiraz, different from Carabghil near Tames.
The history of Timur-Bec.

ing at Chiraz, to govern that city; the Emirs Chap. Said Berlas, and Abbek Aita, a relation of the Emir Abbas, as Timur had commanded him. But the Mirza Mehemed, who had the same orders to depart at the head of this army, delay'd his departure, till a long time after; then pretending sickness, he return'd to Chiraz by Nobsdigan in Choulaiian.

This did not deter the Mirza Koulom with his Emirs from ravaging Lorallere, in the country of Ramhermez, from whence he brought a great quantity of booty; he made the same halte in passing by the village of the bridge, call'd Dezoun; he pillag'd in the plain of Donbar all the subjects of the prince Saki and Echel. From thence he went to plunder Bad and Barfi, whence he brought away several slaves; and in the mouth of Jumaizervel soz, he arriv'd at Mendel'. The Emir Ali Calander, the governor of it for the Sultan of Bagdad, put himself in a posture of defence; but he being repuls'd at the first onfer, they seiz'd on eleven of his men, whose heads they cut off, and then permitted the soldiers to pillage the place.

In the mean while the Mirza Pir Mehemed, who under pretence of sickness had turn'd back, arriv'd at Chiraz, where by the instigation of certain Tadgics, who had filled themselves in his service, he fell into some extravagances; undertaking to compose poisons and fascinations, the design of which he was utterly ignorant of. The Emir Said Berlas, governor of Chiraz, being inform'd of it by some of this young prince's servants, immediately made a strict search into

* A town of Lorallian, long. 56. lat. 31.
* Town of Choulais.
* A town of Arabia; dependency on Bagdad.
The history of Timur-Bec.

Book V.

the matter, and learnt from his very officers the whole of it, even before the Mirza's face. Upon these incontestable proofs the Emir Said imprisston'd Pir Mohamed in the inner fortress, and lodg'd himself in the castle to guard him, leaving Alibee Asfa in the city to govern it in his stead; and he sent advice to court of what had pass'd at Chiras. The messenger of the Emir Said gave an account of this to Timur in the winter-quarters at Carabhagh, who immediately sent the Emir Allahkadal to Chiras, to prosecute those wicked Tadjics, who had taught the Mirza to make the poisons, that they might be put to death: he was likewise order'd to settle the Mirza Rouflem upon the throne of Persia, in the room of his eldest brother, whom he was to bring bound to court. Accordingly the Emir Allahkadal, at his arrival at Chiras, put to death Moualana Mehemed Calife, Seid Dgerrah, and Rouflem Corafani, who were convicted of having taught the Mirza how to compose the poisons: he caus'd Maulam Conchchile's legs and arms to be cut off; and put in their Mohace Coja, Malib Cherberdar, and Chek Zuile Fird, who were accus'd of having been concern'd in the same crime. Allahkadal then sent the emperor's letters-patent to the Mirza Rouflem, in Irak-Arabi, by which he was install'd in the government of the kingdom of Persia. This prince receiv'd 'em at Mendoli, after he had gain'd the victory over Mir Ali Calundar. As soon as he had read the emperor's orders, he departed for Chiras; the Emirs Hassian Jandar, and Hassian Jagadaon, who accompany'd him, return'd back; and the Emir Sevidgic took the road to Chepchemal, for Carabagh Arran, where the army lay then encamp'd.
The history of Timur-Bec. 133

Mr. Alt. Calander, who had fled from Mendi, being arriv'd at Bagdad, gave an account to the Sultan Ahmed of what parts of this prince fell into a great inquietude, and order'd the gates to be shut, and the bridge of the city to be destroy'd.

About this time there happen'd a very remarkable affair, of great service to Timur. This monarch having given the government of Courtoian to one man'd Cheraman, this governor immediately gave himself up to the getting of money at any rate: he exacted great sums from Chamfiddin Debdar, and other principal men of the country; he even put to death the governors of Havia;* and what was worse than all this, he revolted, and with a thousand horse well-equip'd went to Bagdad, where he offer'd his services to Sultan Ahmed, who gave him a handsom reception, loading him with honors and carriages. Cheraman did not rest there; but endeavor'd to win over to him the Sultan's principal officers, and to that purpose secretly gave them considerable sums, from ten thousand to three hundred thousand Dinars of Bagdad. But it happen'd very unluckily to this traitor, that the memorandum of the sums paid to each of these lords was lost thro' the negligence of his secretary, and fell into the hands of Cour Behader, one of the Sultan's officers, who presented the note to his master, at a time when the afflicted Sultan had caus'd the gates of the town to be shut. This affair greatly increas'd his jealousy, and particularly a sum of ten thousand Dinars, fell down to the name of Rafe, whom the Sultan immediately caus'd to be arrested, and cut off

* A town in the province of Courtoian, Gill'd El Alman.
The history of Timur-Bec.

Book V. his head with his own hand. In the mean while, as he had already sent Cheruan, with Coutoubl Haideri, Mantour, and other Emirs, to savage Oirat: he immediately dispatched Yadghiar Ecatchi, with orders to the Emirs to slay Cheruan: which was accordingly executed, and his head brought to Bagdad, where the Sultan in less than eight days put to death near two thousand of his officers. He sent to Vafet the lady Vefa Cattoun, who had nurs’d and educated Cheruan from his infancy; where she was mother’d by a pillow laid over her face. He flew with his own hand mall part of the other ladies and officers of his household, whom he order’d to be call into the Tigris: and afterwards he flung himself up in the Seraglio, not suffering any one to come to him, and even when the Bayertchis, or Rewards, brought him his dinner, they knock’d at the door, deliver’d in the dishes, and then return’d without entering. He spent several days after this manner, and then order’d six of his most faithful servants to convey secretly six horses out of his stable to the other side the Tigris, which river he cross’d one night in a boat, and with those six persons rode into the country subject to Cara Yousef, prince of the Turcomans. In the mean while the Rewards, as usual, carry’d the king’s dinner to the gate of the Seraglio, and deliver’d it to an officer who was in the secret, the people having no knowledge of the Sultan’s absence. This prince join’d Cara Yousef, and persuaded him to come with his troops to pillage the town of Bagdad. When they were come there, he assign’d quarters on the other side of the water for the troops of Cara Yousef: the Sultan cross’d the river in a boat, and came to his palace; and he gave so much ready money, fruits, arms, Arabian horses, gold.
gold belts, and other riches, to Cara Yousof and Char. his men, that those Turcomans were content with what they had got. The Sultan wou'd by no means permit 'em to pillage the city; but as he very much fear'd being attack'd by the army of Zagatai, he sent out spys on all sides, who gave him a true information of the condition of Timur's affairs.

In the month of Zulhajg 802, Timur being July 1402, on his march to Seljuk, the Sultan of Bagdad insinu'd that if the formidable armies of this conqueror should again enter Natolia and Syria, all the passages wou'd be block'd up, whilst he must be oblig'd to save himself by flight. He therefore resolved to leave Farrudge governor of the city of Bagdad, whence he design'd to go out with Cara Yousof, his wives and children, and his jewels, with whatever he cou'd carry away worth taking. So they cross'd the Euphrates, fur Natolia; and being arriv'd at Aleppo, Temurtach, who commanded there, came out with his Emirs to oppose his passage. A barre'l ensued: but time of Aleppo being defeated, the Sultan and the rest pursu'd their road, and came to Natolia. As they were on their march towards the city of Seljuk, capital of Rumm, they were met by a party of Timur's army; but what pass'd between 'em we'll relate hereafter.
CHAP. VIII.

A diet in relation to the affair of Georgia.

After winter was over, that is, in the beginning of the year of the Crocodile, Timur left his winter-quarters at Carabagh. He assembled a diet, whereby the prince his sons, the Emirs, the lords and general officers did not fail of coming: he held a council with them, in which it was unanimously resolved, that the war with the infidels of Georgia was preferable to all others, as well for the good of religion, which ought to be the principal object of war, as for the increase of the power of monarchy, and the conjunction of the present affairs. The usual feast was made after the diet; and the banquet, which was very sumptuous, was accompanied with all sorts of pleasure. Timur, excited by a desire of liberality, distributed the treasures among the Chah Zades, his sons, the Emirs and all the soldiers of the army, and gave horses to those who were on foot. He afterwards informed himself of the roads and quarters of Georgia, where they should encamp, and had them very exactly set down in writing, and then implored the divine assistance. He departed from Carabagh, taking the road to Georgia, the country of Malek Gourghin. In ten days he arrived at the plain of Berdaa, where he encamped, and gave audience to Taharten, prince of Arzendgian upon the Euphrates, who had already gained his majesty's favor by his good services. This prince kissed the earth before Timur; made a discourse in his praise,
full of vows for his prosperity; and offer'd his Chap.
presents. Timur, being willing to distinguish
him by very particular favors, not only gave him
a vest, a cap and a belt, but he further honor'd
him with a horse-tail, a standard, and two ke-
tle-drums, which are the signs of sovereignty;
and then he permitted him to return to Ar-
menia; after having given him instructions
concerning the application and care he ought to
use in the government of the city in the pre-
cinent conjuncture; and expressly recommended to him
to use circumspection to preserve his frontiers
from the insults of the Ottomans, to which par-
pete he ought to be watchful, cautious, and lib-
eral to his soldiers, and neglect nothing to pro-
tect himself from his enemies artifices, who are
very politic and dangerous.

Timur departed from Bursa, and after se-
veral days journey arriv'd at the frontiers of Geor-
gia. He immediately dispatch'd an express to
Malek Ghourghin, to send to the camp the
prince Taker, son of Sultan Ahmed Gelair.
The messenger acquitted himself of his com-
mision; but the king of Georgia, Ghourghin,
return'd him a very uncivil answer. The express
came back without obtaining any thing, and
gave an account to Timur of all that had pass'd
in the audience. The ravinces of this refusal
kindled his wrath against these insidies; where-
fore leaving the baggage, he went before, and
order'd his troops to enter the lands of those
Georgians, and to put every thing to fire and
sword. The soldiers slew every one they met,
ruin'd the houses of the Georgians, and even
rooted up the trees: they destroy'd the vines,
spoil'd the fruits, and brought a terrible deso-
tion upon this country. The affrighted Geor-
gians fled for refuge into their high mountains,
where no one had ever yet conquer'd 'em; for here were, fortified caverns, and houses upon craggy rocks, which it would be vain to think any one could enter by force of arms. They had entrenched themselves in these places, and carry'd with 'em whatever they could find worth taking. Timur's soldiers, without examining the dangers to which they were expose'd, and full of confidence in their prince's good fortune, ascended these mountains, and then laid themselves in buses, to which strong cords were fasten'd, and to were let down by their companions from the tops of the mountains to the caverns of the Georgians; where discharging their arrows, they approach'd the enemy, and slew the most advanced: then taking lances in one hand, and swords in the other, they enter'd the caverns, notwithstanding the vigorous resistance of the enemy, of whom they made a horrible slaughter. Among these craggy places there were some so well defended, that our men were oblig'd to call a great quantity of combustible matter, as well to dissipate the enemy, as to burn their wooden houses, and the entrenchments they had made. Thus by the assistance of heaven, the these infidels fought with all imaginable resolution, the mululman soldiers had the advantage over 'em, according to the promise of the Alcoran, taking fifteen noted places, on which they very much relied. Those who would turn Muhumans obtain'd quarter: but those who, thro the temptation of the devil, stubbornly continu'd in the disbelief of the Alcoran, were beheaded.

Timur left several of the best troops of Corfiana in the garrison of the city of Telis, capital of Georgia, and then went to encamp in the plain of Mocor. The king Ghourghin being
The history of Timur-Bec.

being terrify'd at the success of the Mahometans, fled into the deserts, and as a vagabond wander'd about the uninhabited mountains; but the greatest part of the Ormouros of Georgia, seeing themselves reduc'd to the utmost extremity, submitted; they came in a humble manner to the gate of the imperial pavilion, where they begg'd quarter and pardon of the victorious Timur, making divers excuses to avert his vengeance. When our troops had reduc'd this country, they raz'd the temples and monasteries, where the Georgians had for a long time exercis'd their religion; and erect'd chappells and mosques, in which they proclaim'd the Ezan, and read the prayers of the mullahian religion with the usual ceremony, to the glory of Timur.

CHAP. IX.

Timur marches against prince Jani Bec, a Georgian.

AFTER the conquest and destruction of the country of Maskh Gourghin, Timur resolve'd to attack the other provinces of Georgia. He departed with expedition from the plain of Moeran, and leaving the baggage, march'd towards the defile of Jani Bec. When they were arriv'd there, the troops surrounded all the country, pillag'd it, and brought away a considerable booty. Jani Bec soon abandon'd

1 Ezan is the cry the Mahometans make from the top of the Minares (or steeples) of their mosques, to call the people to pray.
his mountain and fortress; and with an entire submission came before the emperor. In the mean while our soldiers ravag'd the villages, burnt the houses, and flew every one they met: they carry'd away the Georgians effects; and while they enrich'd themselves in this world, they were laying up treasures of merit in the other. Afterwards they return'd to join the baggage; and Timur sent, by the way of Senave, the Scid Coja, son of the Cheik Ali Beluder, to make inroads in other parts of Georgia: he order'd the Emir Gelian Cheik to pass the defile with the troops of the left wing: and the main body, commanded by Timur, pass'd by Senave, where it was join'd by all the troops which were gone out to make inroads in the provinces, from whence they return'd laden with spoils, bringing away a great number of horses and sheep; and, to mortify the Georgians the more, our soldiers destroy'd all the standing corn, and ruin'd their temples and other edifices. At the mouth of the defile was a fortress nam'd Bit, which was very high and difficult of access: nevertheless our army was no sooner arrived there than they had orders to besiege it; and the siege and conquest of the place were almost perform'd at the same time. Having taken it, they raz'd it, lest it should be of use to the enemy on another occasion. From thence the army went to encamp in the true ancient Georgia; and Timur sent the Emirs into all parts in search of King Ghourqhin, who, like wolves and chieftains, wander'd as a vagabond in uninhabited woods and mountains: but not being able to find him, they return'd to join the imperial camp with a great quantity of spoils, and some of Ghourqhin's officers whom they had taken. Timur at length decamp'd, cross'd the river of Cyrus, and happily encamp'd
camp'd on the other bank, loaded with good fortune, and pleased with his victories.

CHAP. X.

The taking of the fort of Zerit, and the town of Susant.

During these transactions, the spies brought advice that a great number of Ossamons were retrench'd into the castle of Zerit, situated on the ridge of a narrow mountain, which had never been taken by any conqueror. On this, Timur, to whom nothing appeared impossible, march'd with expedition towards this place, and order'd it to be besieged. The machines and battering rams were got ready; and after several attacks necessary at a siege, a general assault was given seven days after Timur's arrival. The fort was taken sword in hand, and raz'd the same day, after putting all the Georgians to the sword. Then they went out to make inroads, and brought away a great number of prisoners bound, whom the emperor order'd to be put to death, because they would not turn Mahometans. They afterwards receiv'd advice that king Gourghin was in the town of Susant. There order'd the roads to this town to be taken down in writing; and that the troops which were gone out to make inroads, should return to the camp. He left one half of the army with the baggage, and with ensigns display'd march'd with the rest. But Gourghin, who had his love about him, had advice of Timur's approach; he went out of Susant,
The history of Timur-Bec.

Suanir, and fled towards Abkhaze. The troops, at their arrival at Suanir, carry'd it upon the first assault, and then went in pursuit of Ghourghin, several of whose officers they slew; but this prince, reduc'd to the greatest misery, cross'd the rivers of Aigar and Corlan, and had the good fortune to save himself from the dangers wherewith he was surrounded. Then seeing himself, in a manner, ready for the slaughter, he found it was not for so weak a prince as himself, to protect the son of the Sultan of Bagdad, against the powerful emperor Timur: whereupon he oblig'd Taker to let an asylum in the country of the Ottomans, whither he had heard the Sultan Ahmed his father was likewise fled. At length Gourghin sent to the court of Timur an ambassador named Ilmael, who made known to him the great misery and extremity to which his matter was reduc'd; deplor'd the ruin of his state, and destruction of his country; and with his fact turn'd towards the ground, he spake thus to the emperor with all the submission that could be expected from a miserable and vanquish'd prince: "I have seen the evil success of the methods I have so unfortunately taken; I have tasted the fruits of my impiudence, and the bitterness of the punishment I have merited: but if the great emperor, whose generosity after victory, I may venture to say, softens the fury of his arms in battle, will take pity upon me, who am his servant, and confess my fault, and is willing to pardon me for what is past, and grant me my life, I will not only be entirely obedient to him, but my life shall always be

* A town of Georgia on the frontier of Cicilia.
* Rivers of Caphian.
The history of Timur-Bec.

...employ'd in his service. I will take great care not to hurt the Mussulmans in any manner; and moreover I content to pay the annual tribute to the imperial treasury, likewise promising to send what number of troops his majesty shall order into his service, at the time appointed.

---

CHAP. XI.

Timur marches against the Georgian prince Aivani.

Timur, upon hearing this discourse of Ghourenchin's ambassadour, was touch'd with the condition of this prince, and did not doubt the truth of what he said; considering the great misery and necessity to which he was reduc'd, his sincere confession of his fault, and his repentance for having dur'd to give protection to the Sultan Taher. These considerations, join'd with the promises he had made, and confirm'd with an oath, to be always ready in the emperor's service, and punctually to pay the annual tribute, caus'd Timur to grant him the pardon he demanded; who then went out of his country, and march'd towards the lands subjed to prince Aivani, one of the most powerful sovereigns of Georgia. The soldiers having enter'd his country, ravag'd and pillag'd all they met; and as there was no army to oppose 'em, they dispos'd themselves up and down, ruining the towns and castles, and destraying every thing with fire and sword. After they had entirely laid this country waste, they pass'd into that of Cara Calcanic, the inhabitants of which, gave...
The history of Timur-Bec.

Book V.

which, arm’d with black bucklers, were skilful mountaineers, and good horsemen. They were not treated with more mildness than the others; for their country was ravag’d, and the places raz’d whether they were retir’d, their houses burnt, and themselves put to the sword, after our soldiers had got what spoils they could from ’em, which were very considerable.

CHAP. XII.

Timur returns from Georgia.

Timur being satisfy’d with the conquests he had gain’d, and having reveng’d himself on the Georgians, gave orders for his return. After several days march he encamp’d at Yellac Mencoul; but having advice that the enemy were again assembled in a place nam’d Farasghard in Georgia, he sent the Emir Cheik Nouraddin thither with his troops; and being willing to be in person at the execution of all important affairs, he decamp’d some days after, and leaving the baggage, march’d to Farasghard. In five days he made himself master of seven fortresses of the Georgians, which he caus’d to be raz’d, after having claim an infinite number of these infidels; and from thence he return’d with all his army to Mencoul, where he staid several days.

About this time there came ambassadors from an European prince, who brought with ’em the son of the Emir Amurat, the Ottoman emperor, whom they had taken prisoner: and by the intercession of the principal Emirs of the court, they were admitted into Timur’s audience; to whom they made known the high esteem their master
maller had conceit his actions, and his desire to enter into alliance with him, which he shou'd account great honor. Timur receiv'd the ambassadors with all manner of civility, granted them they desir'd, and after having given them vells, dismiss'd them; and they return'd home the way of Trebizond, pleased with the honor they had receiv'd at court. The army encompass'd two months in the meadow of Noul, that the horses might have some rest in their fatigue, and to wait the arrival of their forces and troops, which were dispers'd up and down in the country.

CHAP. XIII.

Reason which induc'd Timur to march against the city of Aasir, capital of Anatolia.

PHILOSOPHERS tell us that the relation between a king and his kingdom is the same as between the soul and body; for when the soul and body are in the rules of moderation, the body is in perfect health; but if the contrary happens, it is affected with distempers, and at length falls into corruption; and so when a king neglects to do justice, his kingdom falls into decay. This moral may with justice be applied to the case of the Ottoman emperor, and the Sultan of Egypt; for these two princes, being in their power, committed several violent actions, which drew upon them...
The history of Timur-Bec.

Timur's anger, and caus'd the destruction of their country and the debility of their subjects. Timur being irritated at their proceedings, tho' but newly return'd from a toilsom campaign, and notwithstanding the great distance of that Sultan's dominions, did not fail of undertaking the conquest of their empires, which by the grace of God he brought into subjection, so that all the cities, towns and villages of the great countries were pillag'd by his soldiers: which calamity was brought upon the poor innocent people thro' the bad conduct of their princes.

But to come to a particular detail of this history, we must know that Edurum' Bajazet, firman'd the Thunder, who was then emperor of the Ottomans, usurp'd most of his predecessors in power, and the vastness of his dominions; he had brought into subjection a great part of the country of Roum*, to wit, the provinces of Aidine, Mentcheha, Kermian, and Caramania, which his ancestors had never been able to do: and he had likewise extended his dominions the space of four months journey in Europe. After he had taken prisoner Cara Osman, son of the Cadi Burhaneddin, prince of Sebafe, and had put to death the Cadi; he brought an army into the field, and having made himself master of Sebafe, he push'd his conquests towards Malatia*, a town on the Euphrates, and bordering upon the province of Aleppo. He even besieged and took the city of Malatia, which had been a long time dependent on Syria. He made the

---

* Edurum signifies lightning or thunder.
* Lang, 71° lat. 37°.
Emir Mustafa governor of Seballe, to whom he gave the government of Malatia. At length, as if he could find no one to dispute his conquests, he return'd victorious and loaded with spoils to the fear of his empire. He had a great number of troops and officers belonging to his household, and among the rest, near twelve thousand dog-keepers. His magnificence, riches, and power, render'd him so proud, that he forgot the sentence which teaches us, that God, the creator of the universe, hath made those who are superior to them who pride themselves in their strength. He had the boldness to send an ambassador to Taharten, to summon him to his court, and send the tributes of Arzengian, Erzeron, and their dependences, to his treasury; which order was in such haughty terms, that it did not become him to use. Taharten sent advice of this to court: and Timur was very much surpriz'd at the design of the Ottoman, who was not ignorant that Taharten was under his protection: whereupon he resolved to write a letter to him, to endeavor to bring him to a sense of his fault by sweetness and friendship.

CHAP. XIV.

Timur's letter to the Caiier Ream, that is, the Ottoman emperor.

Timur commanded a secretary to be call'd to him, whom he order'd to write a letter to Bidurum Bajazet, mix'd with counsel and reproaches, hoping by that means to make him reflect upon what he had done. The secretary began the letter in an eloquent manner,
The history of Timur-Bec.

Book V.

With praises to God, and blessings on Mahomet, he made use of this passage of the Alcoran, for the subject of his letter. God blessest those princes who know what use they should make of their power, and go not beyond the bounds prescribed for them. And he continued it with expressions which were as daggers to the heart of Bajazet, and ought to have shewn him his duty. The letter was as follows.

To the emperor of Rome, Bajazet the Thunder.

After the usual compliments, we let you know, that by the infinite grace of God, the greatest part of Asia is in subjection to our officers, which we conquer'd by our strength, and the terror of our arms. Know likewise that the most powerful Sultans of the earth are obedient to our commands; that we govern our dominions by our self, and have even constrain'd fortune to take care of our empire; that our armies are extended from one sea to the other, and our guards consist of sovereign kings, who form a hedge before our gate. Where is the monarch who dares refill us? Where is the potentate who does not glory in being of the number of our courtiers? But for thee, whose true origin terminates in a Turcoman sailor, as every one knows, it would be well, since the ship of thy unfathomable ambition has suffer'd shipwreck in the abyss of self-love, if thou wouldst lower the sails of thy rashness, and cast the anchor of repentance in the port of sincerity, which is

* This metaphorical way of expression is very common among the Orientals; but it founds more proper in this place, because of the race of Bajazet being related to a sailor.
the port of Lycy; tell by the temple of our
vengeance you should perish in the sea of the
punishment which you merit. But as we have
learnt, that in obedience to the precept of
the Alcoran, which orders us to wage war
with the enemies of the Mulsiman laws, you
have undertaken a vigorous war with the Eu-
ropians; this consideration hath hinder'd us
from making any insults in the lands which
are subject to you: and the reflection that
your country is the bulwark of the Muls-
mans, hath oblig'd us to leave it in a flour-
sishing condition; for fear the passage of our
armys into it shou'd raise a divition among
the inhabitants, and cause the Mulsimans
to be disquieted, and the infidels to rejoice.
Then take care of your self, and endeavor by
your good conduct to preserve the dominions
of your ancelors, nor lusting for the future
your ambitious foot to wander out of the li-
mits of your power, which is but small.
Cease your proud extravagances, lest the cold
wind of hatred shou'd extinguish the flame
of peace. You may remember the pre-
cept of Mahomer, to let the Turks remain in
peace, while they are quiet: don't seek to
wage war with us, which no one ever dar'd to do, and prosper'd. The devil certainly
inspires you to ruin your self. Tho you
have been in some considerable battels in the
woods of Natolia, and have gain'd advanta-
ges upon the Europeans; it was only thro
the prayers of the prophet, and the blessings
of the Mahometan religion of which you
make profession: don't be proud at these
advantages, nor attribute 'em to your own
valor. Believe me, you are but a pishire;
don't seek to fight against the elephants; for
they'll crush you under their feet. The dove which rises up against the eagle destroys it fell. Shall a petty prince, such as you are, contend with us? But your rodomontades are not extraordinary; for a Turcoman never spake with judgment. If you don't follow our counsels, you will repent it. These are the advices we have to give you: do you behave your self as you think fit.

This letter was seal'd with the imperial sig- net, and deliver'd to Bajazet by envoys who knew how to carry on the intrigues of princes. When they were come to Bajazet, they presented him the letter, acquainting him with the reasons of their coming, and their master's pretensions; but pride had taken too deep root in the breast of the Ottoman, for a letter, or the words of an ambassador, to have any effect upon him: he gave 'em therefore a very haughty answer. "It is a long time, said he, since we have been desirous of carrying on a war with you. God be thank'd, our de- sire has had its effect, and we have taken up a resolution to march against you at the head of a formidable army. If you don't advance against us, we will come to seek you; and pursue you as far as Tauris and Sultania. We shall then see in what favor heaven will declare; who of us will be rais'd by victory, and who abas'd by a shameful de-
CHAP. XV.

Timur marches to Sebaste, and takes that city.

The empress, at their return from Natolia, gave an account to the emperor's officers of Bajazet's haughty answer. Whereupon Timur, being incensed against this Turkoman, caused his ensign to be displayed, in order to make war on him; and he immediately marched towards Natolia. Being arrived at Avenic, he met the Emir Allanda, who had been sent to Chiraz to bring from thence the Mirza Pir Mohamed, bound like a criminal; which he accordingly did. Timur ordered that the Mirza should be interrogated by the council of war; and that after his prosecution, he should be punished according to his defects. Accordingly, after judgment was given, he received the blows of the burnisher, ordered by the laws called Yafa, after which his chains were taken off, and himself set at liberty. In pursuance of the same laws, the Cheik Zade Ferid, and Mahnzer Coja, who were then in irons, were put to death, for having corrupted the Mirza, and taught him magic.

Then the empress sent to Sultania the empress Seraf Mule Canum, Canzade, and the wives of the princes his sons, with the Mirza Oloubel, and the other young princes of the imperial household, under the care of the Mirza Omar, and some Emirs. After that he caused the great imperial standard to be displayed, and march'd at the head of his army. At his arrival at Erzor, he was saluted by Taharten prince of Arzandgian. Two days after he decamp'd, and

march'd
The history of Timur-Bec.

Book V. march'd beyond Arzendgian, to enter the frontiers of the country of Roum, or Natolia, which was then subject to the Ottomans.

Sept. 1403.

The first of Muharrem 803, Timur enter'd the country of the Ottomans, and march'd against Sebaste. When he was come before the city, he encamp'd upon an eminence, to view its condition and situation, and the troops encamp'd round about it. He saw the place full of men lifting up their heads to heaven, and singing and rejoicing with musical instruments in their hands: the walls, whose marble foundations were at the bottom of a ditch full of water, lifted up their battlements to the very clouds: and the soldiers in garison, arm'd with cuirasses, rais'd a great cry towards heaven. Then advice was brought that the vanguard of Bajazet's army, commanded by his son Kerichtchi, and Temourtach, one of the greatest Emirs of the Ottoman empire, who had been sent to Sebaste, having learnt the march of Timur's army, towards that city, were fled, and return'd into the very heart of Natolia. The Emirs Solyman Chah, Gehan Chah, and others, were order'd to pursue 'em with expedition: which they did, and came up with 'em beyond Cazarec in Cappadocia, where they briskly attac'd 'em, and cut 'em in pieces: after which, they made inroads, pillaging all the places near Cappadocia. They then return'd to the imperial camp before Sebaste, laden with the spoils of the Ottomans.

The city of Sebaste had walls of an extraordinary strength, being built of free-stone from the battlements to the very foundations: and each stone was three cubits long, and one thick. The wall was twenty cubits in height; ten in depth at the foot, and six at the top. There were seven gates, and those which open'd were of
The history of Timur-Bec.

of iron. It was built by Aladin Kelcobade*, Chap. 13, and surrounded on the east, north and south sides, with a great ditch full of water; so that it was impossible to sap the walls on those sides, for they had no sooner sapp'd a cubit than the water enter'd, but it was not difficult to sap on the west side. The place was commanded by Multafa* with four thousand horse, who prepar'd to make a vigorous defence, being furnish'd with all sorts of arms and machines for war. The besiegers rais'd a platform higher than the town, over-against the gate of Irraç, upon which they planted their machines to shoot stones. There were Arades*, Mangenies*, and Bafelies*; they likewise prepar'd battering-rams to beat down the walls. On the west side the sappers kept continually at work; while arrows were discharge'd from both sides, which did a great deal of damage.

After the siege had continu'd eighteen days, the violence of the battering-rams, and the great stones which were shot, began to shake the walls, and make breaches. On the other hand, the sappers had work'd with so much diligence, that the towers were propt only by it's, which Timur order'd should be set on fire, and so the towers fell. This struck terror into the hearts of the besieg'd, who perceiving that the troops would soon enter the city, and take it by assault, chas'd Multafa the governor out of it;

* A Seljuk's king.
* The Arabian history of M. Veget a says, that Selymen, sott Arab, of the emperor of Bagdad, was governor of Sebaste, which is chas.
  a mistake.
* Machines to cast fire.
* Machines to hurl stones.
* A kind of battering-rams.
and the Chiefts, Cadis, and doctors, full of hopes, came to call themselves at the emperor's door, begging quarter and pardon for them and the garrisons. Their prayers, mingled with the cries of the women and children, softened Timur's heart; he granted quarter to all the Musulmans of the city, on paying the right of annuity; but ordered that all the Armenians, and other Christians, should be made slaves. And as the major part of the cavalry, which had so stubbornly defended the place for Bajazet, were Armenians, he gave orders that four thousand horses should be divided among the Tatars of the army, and flung into pits, and then covered with earth, to serve as an example to those who should follow their steps. He afterwards caused the walls of Sebastie to be razed.

During the siege, advice was brought that Sultan Ahmed Gelair had fled from Bagdad, with Cara Yonfet prince of the Turchans, into Natalia. This obliged Timur to order some squadrons of horse to go in pursuit of them, which they accordingly did, and overtook their baggage, which they pillaged, and brought away captive the Sultan's Ditchade, eldest sister of Cara Yonfet, with his wives and daughter. But he sav'd himself from our hands, and being come safe before Bajazet, our troops return'd to the imperial camp.
WHILE Timur was employ'd in the siege of Sefalde, some robbers of Abuloffan, which is the country of Zuleadestia, were fo, lating as to come and steal away the horses of our soldiers, who were then busy'd in the siege. For which reason, after the taking of the city, Timur march'd to Abuloffan, to revenge himself on these robbers. He then sent the lord Taharen to Alzandgian to guard his frontiers; and the Mirza Charoc let out in quality of chief of the scouts, accompany'd by the Emir Solyman Chah, and a select troop, which compos'd the vanguard. The name of the soldiers were register'd, and they had orders not to abandon the Mirza one moment. They soon arriv'd at Abuloffan, from whence, on advice of their march, a great number of Turcomans fled into the mountains and deserts. The Mirza pursu'd 'em so briskly, that he overtook 'em: those miserable people seeing themselves closely press'd, endeavor'd to save their lives by fighting; but after a weak defence, they were all routed and slain, as a punishment for their rash enterprises. The Emirs return'd to the imperial camp laden with spoils, and a great many horses, mules, oxen and sheep. Afterwards Timur sent a courier to Malaria, to summon the inhabitants to submit to him. Mutala's son, who was governor of it, blinded with ignorance, which is an inseparable quality of the Turcomans, and especially of those of Natolia, imprisou'd the message.
The history of Timur-Bec.

Chapter V.

Timur on this was incensed against the governor, and marched towards that place. On the first advice, these cowards had of the march of the imperial standard, Mūlāfā's son fled out of the place with all his party. Timur at his arrival at Malatia, carry'd it the same day. The Georgians and Armenians were made slaves; but quarter was given to the Musulmans, after they had paid the tribute for an amity, which money was distributed among the soldiers. Timur order'd the Emir Ghan Chah to go, with other Emirs, to make incursions in the country of Malatia: he harangu'd 'em, and with the most charming eloquence let before 'em the excellence of good warriors above other men; he told 'em that they ought utterly to exterminate the enemy, to take from 'em all means of renewing the war; and he spoke with a great deal of force of the punishment they ought to execute upon those who after pardon us'd hostility. After this discourse, he chose out of each Toman some good soldiers, whom he gave to the Emirs to strengthen their body of the army; and then he dismiss'd 'em. According to these orders, they departed, and ravag'd the country on all sides, not stopping in one place; they gave no quarter to any one, and left not one habitation unpopulated; so that from Malatia to the castle of Kāīhīta, they made themselves masters of a great many places, some by fair means, and others by force; and after having contrain'd the natural princes of the country to submit to Timur, they return'd with a great quantity of riches, and join'd the imperial camp at Malatia, the government of which Timur gave to Cārā

* A castle in the country of Kāīhīta, frontier of Syria.
Osman a Tartarman. Thus the frontiers of the two kingdoms of Natolia and Syria were in a short time brought in subjection to Timur, whose fame spread it self thro all parts of the world; so that there was not one prince who was not struck with terror at the rumor of his conquests.

CHAP. XVII.

The reasons of Timur's carrying his arms into Syria and Mesopotamia.

Mahomet has told us, that when God resolves to destroy any one, he deprives him of common sense; conceals from him the methods he shou'd pursue, to protect himself from his destiny; and permits him to commit imprudent actions, which become the causes of his destruction, that the will of God may not fail of an accomplishment. The truth of these words was apparent in the fate of the country of Syria; for the governors of the cities of this kingdom, being blinded with excessive pride, turn'd from the ways of peace and justice, and committed actions as infamous as extraordinary, violating the rights of nations, and trampling upon the laws. Thus in the year 793, Timur, having made himself master of Bagdad, and conquer'd all Iraq Arabi, sent to the Sultan Barcoe in Egypt an ambassador, a doctor of Saxe, whose learning, birth and genius distinguish'd him from the chief persons of the empire, as as we have said before *. This Cheik being arriv'd at Rah-

*Book III. Chap. 32.
The history of Timur-Bec.

Book V. haba', he was sent according to custom, that his advice might be given the Sultan of Cairo of the arrival of an ambassador on his frontiers. Barcoo, being excited by the evil counsels of the Sultan Ahmed Gelair king of Bagdad, order'd this ambassador to be put to death, not reflecting on the consequences of so enormous a crime, nor the infamy of the action, since to insult an ambassador is to violate the right of nations. What is most surprising is, that such a king as the Sultan of Egypt should be ignorant how Sultan Mehemed, king of Coream, in the same manner put to death the ambassador and merchants of the great emperor Genghiz Can, and what was the tragic end of so black and barbarous an action, which would be too long to recite here. However the dullity, which caused the ruin of Syria, blinded the mind of Barcoo, and procured the causes of his destruction.

Moreover, after the conquest of Azerbijana, and Iraq Arabi, Timur being gone to make war in Capetian, and in Kufia, Malecoy, Caraffa, and the northern countries, there was a basset between Atilmich Contelein, governor of Avenic for Timur, and Cara Youlef, prince of the Turcomans, in which Atilmich was made prisoner. Cara Youlef loaded him with chains, and sent him to Sultan Barcoo at Cairo, who without any reflection upon the matter, continued his hostility against Timur, and confin'd Atilmich in a very close prison.

Timur being on the frontiers of Malatia, sent an ambassador with the following letter to Farrudge son of Barcoo, who succeeded his father in the throne of Egypt and Syria.

---

A town upon the Euphrates, otherwise call'd Hahabar, Mar Ben Tcac, frontier of Syria, long. 75. lat. 34.
The Sultan your father hath committed several criminal and odious actions against us; and among the rest, the murder of our ambassadors without the least shadow of a cause, and the imprisonment of Atilmich, one of our officers, whom he hath sent instead of sending him back to us. As your father hath surrendered up his life to God, which he had only upon trust, the punishment of his crimes must be brought before the tribunal of the general judgment: but as for your part, it is necessary you should have regard to the preservation of your self and your subjects; and to that effect you ought forthwith to send back Atilmich, lest the effects of your wrath and vengeance, falling upon the people of Syria, and even of Egypt, our furious soldiers make a cruel slaughter of their persons, and burn and pillage their effects. If you are to follow as to reject our counsel, you'll be the cause of the taking of the Mussulman blood, and the total loss of your kingdom.

The ambassadors, at their arrival at Aleppo, were seiz'd according to custom, that advice might be given the Sultan of their arrival. Farrudge, to imitate his father's example, sent messengers to bind the ambassadors, and put 'em in prison.

It is not to be wonder'd at, that a plebeian should commit actions of cowardice; what then may we expect from a Circassian slave? Barza'hall been told several times, and when his power increased thro' the kindness of his governor, who was also a Mameluque slave, he traitorously slew his benefactor, and usurp'd the kingdom: and as there had never been any king of his race, so he had not in him the least appearance of royalty. Thus was Barza'hall
The history of Timur-Bec.

Book V. his son Farrudge was the crooked branch of an evil flock. He mounted his father's throne, the but a child, no one having taught him how he ought to live: he had neither suffer'd heat nor cold; and was ignorant of policy and the art of war. In short, the father was of an ill character, and the son without merit.

Timur being inform'd of Farrudge's rashness, was transported with anger, and the fire of vengeance, which had lain lurking in his heart since the crimes committed by Esteece, did so far exasperate him, that he immediately resolve'd to enter the Sultan's kingdom, and destroy every thing with fire and sword: which resolution he the more easily took up, in that Bajazer, with all his pride and menaces, had not da'd to appear in the field of battle, and his proud Ottoman quietly saw our army besiege, take, ruin and pillage Sobaste and Malatia, and all the citys and towns of his kingdoms, as far as Kahlita, without making the least defence. But these are all the hidden decrees of providence.

C H A P. XVIII.

Timur marches into the kingdoms of Syria and Egypt.

The heroes who are destined to execute great affairs, are also endued with a discerning spirit, which makes those enterprises appear easy to 'em; and with resolution to carry 'em on with all the strength and power they are possess'd of; so that they easily compass those designs, which every one else accounts impossible. In effect, the Sultan of Egypt and Syria
The history of Timur-Bec.

Syria having added to his father's crimes, by the arresting and imprisoning of Timur's ambassadors; on advice of it, the wrath of our emperor was kindled, so that he resolved forsworn to chastise him for his fault: and tho' the execution of this project appear'd impossible to the eyes of all politicians, or at least exceeding dangerous and difficult; yet the boundless zeal of Timur, made this great and perilous enterprise appear easily to him. The Emirs and principal lords of the state on their knees remonstrated to him, that it being but a short time since the troops returned from the long campaign in India, they had not repos'd themselves, before they march'd to the Georgian war, where they had been extremely fatigued, after reiterated invades in the mountains and rocks; and the conquest of the towns of that country; that after this they had march'd to Natolia, and conquer'd Scipas and all the cities and towns between that and Aleppo, where they had perform'd actions of the greatest valor; that therefore at present the expedition into Syria and Egypt appear'd very toilsome and difficult, as well in that the country was full of towns and fortresses, with lofty walls and impregnable castles, as in that the army of the Syrians was very numerous, good warriors, and provided with arms and every thing necessary to a vigorous resistance; for which reasons they besought his majesty to have the goodness to disband the troops, and send back the soldiers into their own countries, to repose themselves for some time; and that afterwards fresh preparations might be made suitable to the greatest of this undertaking. Timur answer'd them, that victory was a gift which God liberally beffows on the princes whom he loves; that the great number of soldiers and arms had nothing to do with victory, which he had
The history of Timur-Bec.

Book V. had often prov'd: he put 'em in mind of the conquests he had gain'd with 'em, and the difficult enterprises they had gone thro', tho' they had believ'd 'em impossible; that it was requisite they should have the greatest ambition; and then he would answer for the success, provided they trusted in God. The Emirs perceiving the emperor firm in his resolution, loaded him with praises and applause, resolving to follow him, and thinking only of the expedition into Syria, and the means of making themselves masters of that kingdom.

Then Timur put his army in order; and causing the braze-drum to be beat, which is a sign of his departure, all the soldiers began their march, every one in his proper post; and they took their road towards Syria.

CHAP. XIX.

The taking of the castles of Behesna and Antapa.

Timur order'd the Mires Charno to depart with several great Emirs, as chief of the forces. Being arriv'd at Behesna, they encamp'd there, where they were soon join'd by Timur with the whole army, who encamp'd on an eminence near the castle, to view the situation of the place, which is in a dell where several torrents flow: its walls were high and strong, being built on the ridge of a steep mountain. The troops soon made themselves masters of the lower town, which they entirely ravag'd. The

* A fortress of Syria, between Aleppo and Malatia.
governor of the castle for the Syrians was nam'd Chap. 7. Mochel, who relying upon the strength of the castle, put himself in a posture of defence. While Timur was examining the condition of the place, the besieged discharged a great stone from their machines against the emperor's person, which fell upon the ground near his tent, and roll'd into the very tent. Thus stir'd up Timur's wrath, who immediately order'd the siege to be form'd, and that the walls among the Tomans of the army, round which they erected twenty machines, and one of 'em upon the very spot where the stone fell. The first stone cast from this machine struck that of the besieged, and broke it to pieces, which was reckon'd as a good omen. Then the Mirza Rouflem arriv'd from Chiraz with the Persian army, and join'd the imperial camp. The siege was continual, and the lappers follow'd their work close, while the Emirs and other brave men attack'd the place on all sides, and soon made breaches in several parts of the walls, propping the foundations with stakes. Mochel seeing himself reduc'd thus low, was seiz'd with fear, and resolv'd to surrender: he sent messengers several times to the emperor, to acquaint him with his weakness and want of power; and alleged as an excuse for not coming before him, the dread he had of his imperial majesty; beseeching Timur to grant him quarter, which con'd not in the least prejudice him or his officers. Timur made answer, that he would grant him his liberty, but not till after the taking of the place; because as this castle was esteem'd impregnable, if the army should raise the siege, those who had but little insight into things, would imagine that our soldiers were not able to take it by force; and that a conqueror should not be thought to have sur'd his enemy.
The history of Timur-Bec.

The 7th of Sefer 557, they were ordered to set fire to the breaches, and in the towers began to fall; which the besieged seeing, they were struck with fear, and Moebel left all hopes. He sent the Calf, the Imans and the Clerifs, with all the pearls and curiosities she had, as a present to Timur. They addressed themselves to the Miran Charec, whom they besought to be their advocate and protector. These doctors let the emperor know that Moebel was the means of his majesty's servants, that he sincerely repented of his fault; humbly demanded pardon for it, and hoped that the emperor would not refuse him the favor of sparing his life. Timur, at Charoc's intercession, pardon'd not only Moebel, but even all the garrison; and the envoys contentedly returned back, praising the emperor, and making vows for the prince Charoc. As soon as this good news was brought to the city, new gold and silver money was coined, and friday prayers read in the name of the invincible Timur.

After this, the army decamp'd and march'd towards Antapa. The walls of this city were exceeding strong, being built of liown stone, and surrounded with a ditch thirty cubits deep, and near seventy broad, with a draw-bridge: the counter-earp, which is of stone, has also a cover'd way, broad enough for a man to pass on horseback; which post was align'd the archers. The Tartar army on their arrival at this place,

* A town of Syria near Aleppo.

A Note taken from Arab Chah.

Timur left Celaar-Eregum without attacking it, which he did not do, because this place was very strong; and Nateri Mekhned, son of Moufia, son of Sokar, made someSTEPHEN GILPIN.

The Tartar army on their arrival at this place,
found the principal persons gone out; and only a few poor citizens left, who had shut the gates upon 'em; but the city was full of goods and ammunition. When Timur came before the place, the gates were open'd, and the keys brought out to him: he fix'd a governor over it, and join'd it to his dominions.

CHAP. XX.

The siege and taking of the city of Aleppo.

MAHOMET tells us, that the sole terror of his name made his conquests extend a month's journey; and we may with reason say, that Timur had the honor to resemble him in that, since the terror of his name was so great, that upon advice of the approach of his troops, kings and princes were to terrify'd, that they abandon'd their dominions; fear blinded their eyes, and darken'd their understanding, so that all their actions tended to their destruction.

While the army was in the quarters of Behesna and Antapa, Temourtach, governor of Aleppo for the Sultan of Egypt, dispatch'd a con-

* The Arabian of M. Vaitier says, that the governor of Antapa, named Alpazam, only came to defend himself; and being sabred and wounded, he fled to Aleppo, but was not pursu'd further.

* A city of Syria in the province of Cuntufin, it is the ancient Behesna, long. 72° 24', lat. 35° 35'.

* The Arabian says, that according to the computation of Cassem, Timur's conqueror, his army consisted of eight hundred thousand men.

* Arab Chah says, that Temourtach had agreed with Timur to betray the Sultan of Egypt.
rier to Grand-Cairo to give advice of it to his master. Whereupon the Sultan sent orders to the troops of all the towns and countries of Syria, to march towards Aleppo, with all the arms and ammunition necessary for a vigorous defence. According to these orders, Chadour*, chief of the Emirs of Damascon, march'd to Aleppo at the head of a great army. The governors and generals of Hamase, Hamz, Antioco, Tripoli, Napoleon-Samarie, Bailee, Canaan, Gaza, Ramle or Rama, Jerusalem, Kereli, Calat-Erroum, and all the other countries and lordships of the kingdoms of Syria, came to the same place, well equip'd and arm'd, cap-a-pie; and in a short time there were got together a very numerous army. Temontach, governor of Aleppo, who was esteemed one of the most considerable lords, assembled the chiefs of all those troops, and made the following speech to 'em, in order to know their opinions of the matter: "We ought not, sir, said he, to regard this affair which is coming upon us as a slight thing; and it is requisite we should reflect seriously upon it before it happens. The prince who is this day come against us, is exceeding powerful; he and his officers have performed such extraordinary actions, as are no where recorded in antiquity. Wheresoever he hath march'd, he hath always conquer'd the towns and fortresses; and who ever attempted to resist him, always repented in the end, and suffer'd the

---

* M. Varier calls him my lord Sodon.
* Principal cities of Syria.
* The action tells us, that Timur sent an ambassador or herald to Aleppo, to summon the inhabitants to surrender; and that this herald was immediately put to death by Chadour's order.
most rigorous chastisement. Consider, first, that in a very short time he has reduced many
vast and flourishing empires; as those of Cae-
rezem, Turkistán, Corellia, Zeboulia, and
India, as far as the great river of Ganges, the
kingdoms of Tabareián, the two Irahs, Per-
sia, Corellia, Georgia, Azi-bijana, and
Diarbekir, with all their dependences, which
he has wrested out of the hands of the most
powerful Sultans, and the most illustrious em-
perors of the universe. He has established
himself in those places with such an absolute
authority, that one of his lieutenants, with a
few officers, maintains a whole city under
his obedience; so that in the vast extent of
the countries of Iran and Touran, there is not
a soul who dares act the least thing against his
orders. It seems as if the great rise of this
prince was owing to the peculiar protection
of Heaven; it is, we ought not to tempt God.
My advice therefore, in this conjuncture, is to
treat with him by the ways of submission and
obedience; to coin our mony, and to say the
public prayers in his name; and to make use
of the Clerifs, Imans, and doctors, as our
mediators with him; seeing there are none but
men vers'd in the law, and pious persons, who
have any access to him, or whom he in the
least regards. At the same time we'll send
him presents and jewels, the most fa-
table to his grandur; that we may endeavour
to keep him from coming near us, and by that
means preserve the repose of the city, and per-
haps of the whole kingdom. He is a prince
favor'd by fortune, powerful, active, glorious
and ambitious: his wrath burns and consumes
a thousand times fiercer than fire; and if
it is kindled, the fire it self won't be able to
quench
quench it. Therefore now conclude upon
something: unless either peace or war, quiet
or militia.

Temour-tsch having finish'd his speech, those
who had most experience applauded his sentiments,
and agreed that it was the best method
they could take: but the majority, and espe-
cially Ciudadan governor of Damascus, were of
a contrary opinion. Pride and presumption
were rooted in their hearts, and ignorance had
so stupid'd 'em, that they gave no heed to
what Temour-tsch had said; and were far
from applauding him, that they made use of some
fancied expressions, and tax'd him with coward-
cide, saying, that he who is afraid, is already
frustrated of his desires. * What comparison,
say they, is there between this kingdom and all
those you have mention'd? Their towns were
built only of mud and brick: but ours are
all of solid stone, cut out of the almost imper-
ervable rock; they are fill'd with good
garrison's, and furnish'd with plenty of ammu-
nitions of war and victuals; so that it would
require a whole year's siege to force a single one.

Why therefore has fear got possession of your
hearts? Is it the great number of their cavalry
and infantry, or of their arms and equipages,
which terrify'st you? Only view ours, and
you'll see the difference: our bows are of Da-
mascus, our swords of Egypt, our lances of
Arabia, and our bucklers of Aleppo. In the
registers of this kingdom are thirty thousand
villages; out of each of which taking but a
few brave men, we shall complete an army,
which our vast plains won't be able to hold.
The houses and walls of these Tartars are only
of cords and canvas; while we live in good
fortresses, which are of hewn stone from the bas-
"lements
The history of Timur Bœc.

Thus fate, having resolv'd upon the destruction of these unfortunate Syrians, inspir'd sentiments of pride into 'em; and these obstinate people persisted in their error, notwithstanding what Temourtach, and other men of sense, cou'd say to divert 'em from the evil they had resolv'd to take; who represented to 'em the way of peace was always the most secure, considering the inconstancy of fortune, and the small hopes they cou'd reasonably expect of gaining the advantage over their powerful enemy. The others on the contrary said, they need only have courage and resolution; which if they had not, all sorts of disorders and losses would happen among 'em. After a great struggle on both sides, the latter carry'd it by a plurality of voices; and it was resolv'd and concluded, that no one shou'd go out of the city, but that they shou'd fortify it with intrenchments, and with arrows and stones hinder the enemy from approaching the walls.

Timur departed from Antapà with joy, and made two days' journey of six or seven leagues each; he afterwards gave orders that they shou'd march but half a league a day, and at each encampment dig a trench round the army, and make a kind of rampart with their bucklers. So that in a whole week they march'd but one day's journey, and that with extraordinary precaution. The Syrians, ignorant of the art of war, attributed the slowness of their march to fear, believing the Tartars mistrust theirown strength, at which they became haughty and insolent; for abandoning their first resolution of not going out of the city, and which indeed was the least dangerous, they rang'd themselves in order of battle, and pitched their tents in the open plains.
The history of Timur-Bec.

The 9th of Rabinderal 803, which answers to the year of the Serpent, the army of Timur arriv'd in the neighborhood of Aleppo; and the Mirza Sultan Hulfein, with some great officers, met the enemy's scouts: he fell upon 'em, the superior to him in number, and at the first onset unhors'd a cavalier, whom he collar'd, and carry'd prisoner out of the field of battle. His officers also perform'd some glorious actions, and took two prisoners; the rest of the Syrian army fled into the city.

The same day the Mirza Aboubecro advance'd with sixty men; and a great number of the enemy made a rally to repulse him. After a sharp skirmish, the two parties return'd to their several camps. The next day some brave Tartars advance'd to skirmish; and having shown themselves to the enemy, not one dair'd to attack 'em. The third day at sun-rising, Timur order'd the whole army to take horse, and with ensigns display'd, and at the sound of drums and kettle-drums, to march towards the enemy's camp. Every one having on a coat of mail, a cuirass, and a helmet, they advance'd in order of battle. The right wing was commanded by the Mirzak Miran Chah and Charoc, accompany'd by several great Emirs, as Solyman Chah and others: and the vanguard of this wing was led by the Mirza Aboubecro. The Sultan Mahmoud, whose lieutenant was the Emir Gehan Chah, had the command of the left wing; and his vanguard was brought up by the Sultan Hulfein. The main body was commanded by Timur himself, who had before him a rank of bully elephants, which had been taken in India, equip'd and carpi-fon'd in the most magnificent manner. They serv'd as a rampart to this body of the army; for the towers on their backs were fill'd with archers and
and slingers of wild-fire: and those animals had drawn in their fronts like serpents. When the army was rang'd in order of battle, a Toman of the left horse of the army was order'd to post themselves on an eminence on the right side of the field of battle, and to keep their ground there, when the Syrians shou'd be put to the rout, and fly.

The Syrian army was likewise rang'd in order: It was compos'd of a right and left wing, and a main-body; and advance'd with its ensigns display'd. The kettle-drums and trumpeters were the signal to begin, and both parties made the great cry of Allah Ebeer *. The battle began by the skirmishers, who rush'd furiously out of their squadrons into the midst of the enemy, and who after some brave action, as either the slaughter of some noted person, or the taking a prisoner from the midst of the opposite battalion, return'd glorious to their post. Our right wing immediately fell upon the enemy's left with so much vigor, that it was routed, thro' the valor of the Mirza Aboubecro, who enter'd the field of battle like a lion, and forc'd many of the enemy to fling away their arms, and abandon their ensigns; while others were slain, and the ground soon cover'd with helmets, head-pieces, and sabres, mix'd promiscuously among the dead carcases. Our left wing likewise defeated the Syrians right, and entirely dispers'd 'em, some crying out for quarter, and others laying themselves by flight. Our main-body did not in the least yield to the other; and the elephants enter'd into the midst, and with their trunks tos'd some up into the air, and trampled others under their feet, no one being able to stop them.

Chadoux and Temourtach having seen the strange manner of our soldiers fighting, quitted their
their former fierceness; they trembled at the sight of the dreadful slaughter which was made in a short time; and seeing no other remedy, they fled, and entered the city by the gate of Manouia. The soldiers, perceiving their generals measures, likewise fled and dispersed themselves: the major part took the road of Damascus, and were pursued by our men, who slew a great number, taking their arms and horses from them; so that out of this prodigious number of Syrians there escap'd but one horseman, who fled to Damascus to carry the news of the defeat.

After the rout of this army, part of 'em entered the city. The disorder was so great in the chief streets of Aleppo, and the gates so crowded, that one could hardly pass. Here was the greatest slaughter ever mention'd: for to avoid the fury of the sword, they flung themselves upon one another into the ditches, which were filled with men and horses. On the other hand, our men with a single pike often cut three or four of the enemy thro a time, in the throng at the gate: so that the dead bodys were piled upon one another to the very plinth of the walls; and at length a passage was made over the ditch upon those bodys, level with the draw-bridge. There one might see the horses and their riders mix'd promiscuously together, and cover'd with blood and dirt; some pierc'd with arrows, and others with their brains dash'd out; one with a coat of mail, his head bending beneath the blow of a war-club; another falling without his head, with a sword that clasped in hand.

During this horrible slaughter, a body of the army was sent to pillage the Syrians' camp, wherein they found the governor's pavilion, with his tents, furniture, arms, and several beautiful horses.
The history of Timur-Bec.

horset richly harnes’d. Each of the soldiers took his share of the spoils, of which there were great abundance. At length all the army march’d with so much vigor to the general assault, that they enter’d the city the same day, which was the 11th of Rabeelevel 803. Timur permitted ’em to pillage the city of Aleppo; and they spar’d neither the markets nor any of the houses: they carry’d away the women and children, the horses, mules, and all the cattle; besides a prodigious quantity of gold and silver, arms, curious furniture, precious stones, pearls, vessels of gold, the women’s rich habits and ornaments. All these were taken by the soldiers, who render’d no account of ’em to any one.

CHAP. XXI.

The castle of Aleppo attack’d and taken.

CHADOUN and Temourtach, not imagining themselves secure in the city, enter’d the castle, which was a fortress upon the ridge of a high steep rock, surrounded with a ditch thirty cubits wide, and so deep that there is a sufficient quantity of water to carry a boat. From the surface of the water to the bottom of the walls of the castle, which is the shelving of the mountain, is about

1. The castle of Aleppo is not built on a rock, but on a mountain of which covered with ice-houses.
2. The author seems not to have seen the ditch any more than the castle; for if the ditch was full of water, a vessel might fall in it.
a hundred cubits; and it is so smooth and steep, that 'tis impossible to ascend it on foot, because this shelving is cover'd with free-flone and flat polish'd bricks. The strength of this place render'd these two governors insolent; they undertook to make a vigorous defence, resolving to die rather than surrender; they made great cries in token of their resolution; and ran upon the walls and towers, to give orders to the garrison. They cast the great and little kettle-drums to be beat, and in good earnest began to insult the besiegers: they cast a great quantity of wild-fire, and pots fill'd with sulphur, which in their effects resembled a thunderbolt; as likewise stones and arrows: by which they let us know that they were in a condition to defend themselves.

Timur having enter'd the city as a conqueror, encamp'd over-against the castle, ordering his troops to range themselves round about the ditch; for the out-parts consisted only of a single key unguarded: then there were nothing to be seen but showers of arrows, which the besiegers incessantly discharge'd with so much vigor, that none of the besieged dur'd to get upon the walls. In the mean while the tappers went down into the ditch, and favor'd by the archers, cross'd the water upon floats; and being come to the other side, they began to work upon the bottom of the mountain, and to make the stones of the walls; but the besieged having perceiv'd their design, five of their bravest men went out by the great gate, and being resolv'd either to lose their lives or succeed in the design, they ty'd a cord to their waist, the end of which others held from the top of the walls, that they might descend and get up again, notwithstanding the steepness of the shelving, without fear of
of killing. These five men accordingly went Chapter
down, and ran sword in hand upon the lappers;
but the Tartars, who had orders to back the lap-
ers, fell'd out of their tents, and flew 'em
with their arrows. The besieg'd on this were
afraid, and drew up again the five dead bodies
with the cords. From that time no one da'd
so much as look thro' the loop-holes of the walls,
so far were they from making falls. Then
Timur, whose advantages were consider'd ra-
ther as the scourge of God, than as an effect of
human power, sent by an Ambassador the follow-
ing letter to the besieg'd, who now began to
conclude that obstinately resilling him would
in the end produce repentance: "The Almigh-
ty having reduc'd under my command the
greatest part of the kingdoms of Asia, my
armies can't be stop'd either by walls or fur-
tresses: the great number of soldiers or arms
are not able to oppose the full effects of my
wrath, nor ward off the deadly blows of my
vengeance. I believe the best way you can
now take, is to have pity on your own lives;
otherwise you'll be the murderers of your
selves, your wives and children, and must
answer for the crime of having shed their
blood."

The besieg'd seeing no other refuge, were
constrain'd to give way to force. Chadum
and Temourtach took the keys of the castle,
treasury, and magazines; and being accompa-
ny'd by the Cherois, Cadi's, Imams, and nobles of
the country, open'd the gate, and in an hum-
bile manner came to call themselves at Timur's
feet. Chadum, Temourtach, and other chiefs,
with a thousand soldiers, were shut among the
Tumans, and put in irons. Soldiers were sent
to the castle, who brake down the battlements
of
The history of Timur-Bec.

Book V. of the wall, Timur sent in embassy to Grand-
Cairo, to the son of Barcoe, Eden Bougyl Dau-
vardar, whom they had seized in the castle, with
advice that he had laid Chasoun and Temouri-
tem in irons, by way of reprisal for Atimbich,
and that he would not set them at liberty till he
them'd come back to him; that he must send
Atimbich immediately, if he was willing to
preserve the lives and liberties of these two go-
vernors, and of all the other slaves he had de-
tain'd. Timur n'd the place where Eden Bou-
gyl was to meet him at his return; then he
went to the castle of Aleppo, to take the direc-
tion of a very beautiful prospect, and also to
view the situation of the city and country; and
he lived there two days. He order'd the Emir
Ghuran Chah to guard the gate of the castle
and the riches within it, which consisted of the
treasures which several kings had amassed there,
and an infinite number of jewels and furniture
which the citizens had carry'd into it to pre-
serve 'em from pillage. The whole amounted
to immense sums, part of which he distributed
among the Emir and soldiers. He afterwards
left the baggage and cumbersome things belong-
ing to the army, with his treasure, in the castle
of Aleppo, and he plan'd eight considerable
Emir for governors of this strong place, and as
guardians of the treasures he left there. Then,
after fifteen days' residence at Aleppo, he be-
gan his march, to continue his conquests in the
realm of Syria.

CHAP.

* A note taken out of the history of Timur-Bec by Arch
Chah his enemy.

During the fifteen days that Timur lived at Aleppo, he or-
dred his doctors to come before him, to probe 'em with
hard questions, and from hence gave an opportunity to put 'em
to death. He told to Ahmed Ben Arab Chah (nephew of the
Assman
CHAP. XXII.

The taking of the towns and castles of Emessa and Hama.

When Timur lay encamp’d without the city of Aleppo, he sent the Mirasas Pir Mahomed and Aboubecere, with the Emir Soliman Chah, Serindighe and others, as scouts, towards Hama. These lords soon made themselves masters of the lower town; but they could not take the castle, because it was exceeding...

Arabian history of M. Vaurier. There have lately been six or seven of our men, and some of yours, which of the two are masters? This question, said Arab Chah, was formerly proposed to Mahomet by an Arabian poet; and I will return the same answer as he did. Timur demanded what answer he gave. The poet, answered Arab Chah, said to Mahomet, Lord, apostle or God, thou fightst for thine, others fight for God, others for thine, others for God, others for thine and God. Very well, says Timur, you could not have given a better answer: and then he resolved to win all his victories. I have one foot, says he, in the grave, but yet I have employed my life to a good purpose; for I have conquered, etc. Arab Chah then said, in general for the service you have rendered from heaven, permit those men of learning. I never pass one to death, answered Timur purposely, you are the sons of your own deaths; our two God I grant your conquest. Thus every one had liberty of speaking, and endeavor’d to answer best, as in the college.

When Timur, says the Arabian, determined to any one, he did it without delay; but when good, he required the execution of it in another.

Timur cut off several heads to erect a trophy.

* A town of Syria, of which the geographer Abulfeda was prince; long. 70° 42’. lat. 34°.

VOL. II. M. Strong.
The history of Timur-Bec.

Book V. strong. After the affair of Aleppo was finished to Timur's satisfaction, he went to Hama, and in his way took three or four castles. At the arrival of the great imperial standard before Hama, those who were in the castle, seeing this wonderful multitude of troops from the top of their walls, imag'ined it would be best for 'em to go out immediately with what presents they had, to offer the keys of the place, and submit to Timur. They accordingly did so, and addressing themselves to the Mirzas who were come before as scouts, they besought 'em to intercede and obtain quarter for 'em. The Mirzas promised 'em this favor, and quarter was granted 'em; but their spoils were given to their scouts. Timur laid twenty days at Hama, for the refreshment of his troops and horses; during which time he had apartments built for himself, the Mirzas, and principal Emirs of his court, and a magnificent Divan-Camé, where the councils of the state were held: so that this place in less than two or three weeks became a second city.

In the mean while the Emirs made another attempt, to persuade the emperor to stay at this place, representing, that for two years past the troops had been either on the march, or employed in a battle, that the enemy had a great number of cavalry, whose horses were fresh and not fatigued, and being in their own country, had vast advantages over us, and that if his majesty approved of it, they would go and repose themselves on the sea-shore at Tripoli in Syria, where they would take up their winter quarters; so that the horses might have some rest after their fatigues, and at the beginning of the spring they might march with vigor to extirpate the enemy. Timur would not hearken to their
their reasons, tho’ they were plausible; but an-CHAP. 11.
swer’d, that they ought to make dispatch, that
the enemy might have no time to recover them-
selves. Whereupon he order’d ’em to take horse,
and march towards Emessa’. One of our
great Emirs went thither first as a scout; and
had the good nature to advise the inhabitants,
telling ’em that their resistance would serve
only to ruin ’em, and it would be pity so many
should be delit; that if they would go meet
the emperor, and submit to him, he would an-
swer for the success, and their lives and even
their effects should be sparc’d. These words,
which on one hand caus’d fear, and on the
other hope, in the people of Emessa, made an
impression upon ’em; so that the principal men
of the city took up a resolution to obey Timur;
they came out loaded with presents, and ran to
meet him; they cast themselves at his feet,
kissing the earth, which they cover’d with gold
and precious stones; they presented him with the
keys of the town; upon which Timur had the
goodness to prohibit any one’s insulting ’em
either in their persons or goods. He gave ’em
for their governor Ali Lecber, whom he order’d
to have a singular regard to ’em, and to be
their protector on all occasions.

* Emessa or Homs, a town of Syria near Homs.
TIMUR decamp’d from Enumla; and continuing his road towards Balbec, he march’d a day’s journey, and encamp’d near a salt-pit, from whence he sent out a body of the army to make inroads towards Seid and Barur, and to pillage the country along the shore of the Mediterranean. When the imperial standard was arrived at Balbec, all the army admir’d the beauty of the walls of this town: the towers are of a prodigious size, and there is one at the corner of the castle, which looks towards the gardens, twenty-eight cubits long, sixteen broad, and seven high. This town is very famous, as well for the beauty of the walls, as for the height of its buildings; and it’s believed to have been built by Solomon’s order, by demons and genii, over whom he had an absolute command. Notwithstanding these advantages, it was reduced by our troops as fast as ever they appear’d before it. There were in it so great a quantity of fruits, pulse, and goods, that our soldiers were furnish’d with all manner of necessaries for a long time. Then Timur order’d the Emirs Cheik Noureddin, Chamelik, Serindie, and others, to advance towards Damascus at the head of thirty thousand horse.
C H A P. XXIV.

Timur marches to Damascus, capital of Syria.

THEY stay'd not long at Balbec, because it was situated near a mountain, which render'd the air exceeding cold; and it being the beginning of winter, there fell abundance of snow and rain.

The 3d of Jumaziylevel, the sun being in the sixth degree of Capricorn, Timur departed from Balbec; and after having march'd a day's journey, he halted to visit the tomb of the prophet Noah, whose blessings having besought, he set out for the conquest of Damascus. The body of the army, which had been sent out to make inroads towards Seid and Barur, return'd, after having ravag'd all the maritimer country of Syria, and join'd the imperial camp, loaded with the spoils of that country. As Syria was at that time under the dominion of the Sultan of Egypt, the Syrians were continually sending couriers, to carry the news of our army's march, to Ferrudge Ion of Barcroc, their king, whom they contin'd to press so affiendously to come to oppose Timur, that at their persuasion he rais'd an army, which he equip'd with great expense and magnificence, and above all, the cavalry, which was the best in the world. In this condition he took the road to Damascus; which he was no sooner enter'd, than he us'd all his precautions to examine the fortifications, to post guards and sentinels every where, to fort the walls in good order, and to augment the entrenchments as well of the city as of the castle.
Book III. In fine, he took all needful precautions; and using policy with strength, he left to Timur, in quality of ambassador, an eloquent and perfect villain, who the better to cover his intentions took the habit of a poor religious. He order'd him for his companions two young assassins, to each of whom he gave a poison'd dagger, with orders to use their endeavours to murder Timur during the audience of the ambassador. At Timur's arrival near Damascus, these villains join'd the court, and came to the foot of the imperial throne to pay their compliments; they had several times the honor to approach his majesty, and very favorable opportunities to execute their designs; but the Almighty, who was always Timur's guardian and protector, would not suffer 'em ever to come to perfection. Coja Moustoed Semnani, one of the great secretaries of the council, imagin'd by the proceedings of these ruffian fellows that they had some evil intention; wherefore he communicated his thoughts to 'em, who related 'em to the emperor, who order'd 'em to be search'd, and they found in their boots poison'd daggers. The chief of the villains perceiving himself and his companions discovery'd, declar'd the truth, and the resolution they had taken to assassinate Timur. The emperor return'd thanks to his sovereign protector; and said, "It is not the maxim of kings to murder ambassadors; yet it would be a crime to suffer this rascal, or his comrades, to live, who the cloth'd in the habit of a religious, is a monarch of corruption and perfidy." Then he order'd, that according to the passage which tells us that treason falls upon the head of the traitor, he should be flain with the same dagger with which he would have committed
mitted this abominable action; and his infamous carcass to be burnt for an example to others. His two auxiliaries had their throats cut off, but were not put to death, because Timur would send them back with a letter to the Sultan of Egypt.

Timur took horse, and having fixed his troops in good order, marched towards Damascus, near which he encamp’d at the foot of a hill near Cobei Seir: a trench was dug for precaution round the army, and fortify’d with bucklers and pallisadoes. Then Timur ascended the hill to examine the situation of Damascus and its outskirts. He sent scouts to skirmish with the enemy, and to keep them in play: the Emirs Serindig, Sainte Maure, and others, advanced; and were brought by the Said Coja of the right wing, and the Mirza Rouslem of the left, at the noise of kettle-drums, hautboys and flutes, mix’d with the soldiers’ cries. By next morning they attack’d the enemy’s scouts, whom they put to flight, after having slain several, and taken others prisoners. Then Timur, to revenge himself for the scandalous action of the Sultan of Egypt, order’d Chidum and the other prisoners brought from Aleppo, to be put to death.

The same night there happen’d an affair as ridiculous as extraordinary. The Mirza Sultan Haslam, after a debauch, was excited by some licentious Periotes to revolt against the emperor his grandfather; and he accordingly went to the city of Damascus, and lifted himself into the Syrian service: which adventure gave the Syriots a great deal of satisfaction, imagining it would produce to ’em considerable advantages. They conducted the prince into the city with a great
Book V. deal of pomp and ceremony. Farrudge, imagining the union with the prince would deliver him from all troubles, and cause a calm after the storm was over, treated him with all possible respect. The officers of this Mirza, Aboone, and Hussein son of Barat Caja, gave advice of what had pass’d to the Emir Chamelik, who informed the emperor thereof. At break of day they decamp’d, and after a league’s march towards the south side of Damascus, which looks upon the country of Canaan, Egypt, and the desert of Arabia, they encamp’d again, and built a wall about the height of a man round the camp, and dug a trench round the wall. The scouts went out to ravage the country in the neighborhood of Damascus; and Timur plac’d both infantry and cavalry round the walls of the camp to guard them in the night.

Two days after Timur sent Padi Chah Baguran ambassador to the Sultan of Egypt, with the following letter. *You are not ignorant of the effects which circumspection and exactness produce; and know that emulation and jealousy, mixed with ambition, are the motives which oblige conquerors to raise armies, undertake the most dangerous wars, and make themselves masters of countries and kingdoms; and that by this means they preserve the honor of their crown, and acquire eternal fame. All this great noise of the world is not so much to heap up riches, as to acquire honor; for half a loaf every day is sufficient for*
the nourishment of a man. We have several Chapte-
times demanded Atilimich of you, and you
have not once offer'd to send him to us;
but have always started some difficultys,
and delay'd an affair of such consequence.
This hath oblig'd us to make war in your
country, which will bring ruin and defolation
upon your subiects. If rocks could speak;
they would tell you that this action of yours
presents no good to you. Yet, notwithstanding
your unreasonable proceedings, if you'll
cause the money to be coin'd, and the public
prayers to be read in our name, that shall stop
our fury. This you ought to do, if you have
any compassion for your self or subiects.
Our soldiers are like roaring lions, which
want their prey; they seek to kill their enem-
y, pillage his effects, take his towns, and
overturn his edifices to the very foundations.
Thus are but two ways to chuse; either
peace, the consequences of which are quiet
and joy; or war, which produces disorder
and defolation. I have set both before you; it
is your part to follow one or other. Confide
your prudence, and make your choice. Fare-
well."

The ambassador having carry'd this letter,
they receiv'd him with very particular honors,
contrary to their usual custom; at which re-
ception they practis'd all the ceremonys us'd
towards the most illustrious men. And as fire-
works are very often made in this country, they
assembled a great many persons of this trade,
who pass'd in review before the ambassador, to
shew their strength and power; but they were
not ignorant that these were no more than atoms
in comparison of the court of Timur. After
they had endeavor'd to please the ambassador by
Book III. abundance of civil treatment; and several honors bestowed on him, they sent him back; and he was follow'd by several lords of the court of the Sultan of Egypt, who came to call themselves at the foot of the imperial throne, and spoke to Timur in these words. "Most excellent and formidable emperor, we know that we appear before your majesty as your meanest servants; yet we are full of respect and submission. We have resolve'd to send Attilmich to your august court within five days: and if after that you deign to pardon our faults, we'll omit no occasion of giving you marks of a perfect obedience: and as far as depends on the power of the Sultan, and the capacity of his subjects, they shall endeavor to merit by their services the good-will of your majesty, and the friendship of the illustrious lords and officers of your imperial court." The emperor, being touch'd with their discourse, which was color'd over with an appearance of sincerity, gave 'em a kind reception, worthy of his clemency: he made 'em presents of rails, and with very obliging expressions assured 'em of the sincerity of his heart; he afterwards sent 'em back very well contented and please'd with having succeed-ed so well in their embassage. And this appearance of an accommodation occasion'd joy to the inhabitants of Damascus.
C H A P. XXV.
Timur gives battle to the Sultan of Egypt, and gains the victory.

After ten days encampment, an account was taken of the state of the army: upon which Timur order'd they should depart from thence directly to encamp at Gouta, that the horses might feed in that delicious place. The army had no sooner began this motion, than thro' their ill-fortune, the inhabitants of this country imagin'd that this march proceeded from weakness, and that our troops were fled towards the Levant. They likewise thought that so numerous an army cou'd not decamp without falling into some disorder, and that if they laid hold on this opportunity to attack the rear of the Tartar army, they cou'd not fail of defeating 'em; that the surprize would so embarrass the soldiers, that they must be constrain'd to disperse and fly; and that this action would be a great honor to 'em in all future ages. In this hope the whole army of Syria took horse, and made a full out of Damascus: the populace joined with the soldiers, some having swords, and others sticks and stones in their hands; and as there were prodigious numbers of 'em, they had the rashness to fall on our rear. There came to great a multitude out of the city, that the whole plain was cover'd with horses and foot. The cavalry were arm'd with culfrasles, and were perfectly well equip'd; the infantry were arm'd with bows and arrows, swords, bucklers and axes, presuming in victory; and there were nev—
The history of Timur-Bec.

Timur being inform'd of this ridiculous rash action, knew that fate had resolv'd on the Syrías destruction: he implo'ed the assistance of God, and reflect'd seriously upon the conduct he ought to use in this conjuncture. He gave orders that the whole army shou'd face upon the enemy, and that all the cavalry shou'd dismount to encamp; he caus'd a kind of wall to be made with the bales of the baggage, prop'd up with great stones; and being thus entrench'd, they errected their tents and standards. Then Timur got upon an eminence with fifty of his favorites, and according to custom, on his knees address'd himself to God in prayer: he order'd his cuirass and other arms to be brought him, and then he took horse full of confidence, commanding the drums to be beat, and the great cry made. In the mean while the troops of our left wing arriv'd all in good order; and as the Syrians were already very near us, Timur sent instructions to the Mirzas Miran Chah, Charoc, and Abou-becre; who command'd the right wing, to attack the enemy on one side; while the Emirs of the left wing shou'd fall upon 'em on the other. In this order they advance'd against the enemy, and gave 'em battle. The Emirs Sevridig, Chamelik, Seid Coja, Sainte Maure, and others, as well of the vanguard as of the rear, began the fight; being back'd by the main-body. And as the two wings fell furiously upon the unfortu-nate Syrians, there was so great a slaughter, that the whole plain was cover'd with blood. After an obstinate battle, victory inclin'd to Timur: the Syrians were defeated, and repuls'd as far as to the gates of Damasens, having above half their soldiers slain, and a great part dispers'd:
The history of Timur-Bec.

Chapter 26.

Dispers'd; but this part was afterwards over-taken by the Tartars, who slew vast numbers of men. There were nothing to be seen but heaps of dead bodies, and rivulets of blood, armor, and standards, mix'd together. Some may escape the fury of our soldiers, except those who entered the city. This signal victory was gained the 19th of Jamazinleval, 805, which answers to Jan. 19. the year of the Crocodile. During the heat of the battle, the Mirza Sultan Hussein, who commanded the Syrian left wing, was sent against the Mirzas Miran Chah and Charoc; but Toquile Coutchesin, an officer of the Mirza Charoc, fell upon him, and having seiz'd his horse's bridles, brought him to his master, who gave advice of it to Timur. His majesty being incensed, gave orders that Hussein should be put in prison, and loaded with chains, as a punishment for his actions: but he was shortly after set at liberty, thro' the intercession of the Mirza Charoc, yet not till they had given him the bastinado, as ordered by the law of Yafte. This was not so much a punishment to him, as the blame and continual reproaches he received from the whole court; and he was never permitted to enter the emperor's hall.

CHAP. XXVI.

The taking of the city of Damasquin.

The next day our army encamped, and went to erect the standard near the city at the foot of a hill, while the news of the late victory spread it self everywhere. At length they departed at the noise of drums and trumpets.
and Timur order'd that the army shou'd march in order of battle, and place before 'em a great rank of elephants, as well to augment the magnificence of the army, as to strike terror into those who had never seen such things. It is remarkable, that from one end of the right wing to the extremity of the left, the Tartar army took up between three and four leagues of ground. Then having their elephants as their head, the army got upon a rising-ground, from whence there was a prospect of the city, that the enemy might see their power, and be dishearten'd. By this means all the inhabitants of the country, as well soldiers as others, were satisfy'd of the multitude of this army, of which before they had had but an imperfect knowledge. All the cavalry being upon this hill, the drum was beat, and the whole army made the usual great cry: and then they advance'd nearer the city, to encamp on the bank of a deep rivulet, which serv'd instead of a trench; and with their great and little bucklers they made a fort of rampart round the camp. After these precautions, both the cavalry and infantry eross'd the rivulet; and the army, according to custom, rang'd themselves in order of battle in sight of the enemy. There was a vast number of Syrians, but the disadvantages they had had the preceding day had so discourag'd 'em, that they dar'd not advance. The Sultan of Egypt held a council with his great Emirs, as Norous Hafezi, Yach Bee, Chadoonmar, Cheiki Hajeki, and others, upon what they shou'd do in this conjuncture. Some, who were attach'd to the inhabitants interest more than to the Sultan's, said, that tho' they had receiv'd a great shock, the city and walls were entire; that there yet remain'd a vast number of soldiers, who were dispos'd to fight; that
the best way would be to make a second sally, and afterwards to defend the city and fortresses. The others who had greater experience, and were more attached to the Sultan’s interest, were of another mind: they thought that men of fortune should not be perplexed with chimeras; that when the Tartars were disorder’d by a decampment, without precaution, or being upon their guard, and not in the least expecting a battle, the Syrians with their great numbers, and in good order, went to imprison ’em, and attack their rear, with all possible diligence and artifice; yet every one knows what the success was: from whence they concluded, that the best remedy would be for them to take the road of Egypt in the night, under favor of the darkness, according to the proverb, which tells us, That he who gains his life, gains all; that in the town and castle there were a great number of soldiers, as well as inhabitants, who were capable of defending themselves, and would use all their efforts to preserve their lives, their wives and families; that if fortune favored ’em, and they saw the city, the king would always continue master of it; but on the contrary, if the Tartars took it, and burnt and destroyed every thing, the king and court at least would be secure from the public devastation.

The whole Egyptian council was of this opinion; upon which Faradje sent an ambassador with presents to Timur, and a letter in these terms. “The affair which happened yesterday was a popular sedition, in which we had no hand: a number of ignorant young fellows of the common sort, had the rashness to fall out of the city, and receive’d the punishment they merited. For our part, we have no other desire than to keep our words, as we promised before:”
fore: and if your highness is willing to grant a cessation of arms for this day only, to morrow we will execute whatever you shall order, and endeavor to repair the fault committed against our will, and obtain pardon for it."

The ambassador acquitted himself of his instructions; and after he had made known to the emperor the subject of his coming, he ordered the army to return, and encamp a second time.

When night was come, the Sultan of Egypt took horse, accompany'd by the principal lords of his court; and having dispos'd every thing in a proper order for his departure, he went out of Damafens at midnight, and took the road to Grand-Cairo. A Tartardefender nam'd Thacmac, came with expedition to find the Mirza Charoc, to whom he gave an account of all that had pass'd. This Mirza ran to inform Timur of it, carrying Thacmac with him. He order'd that the troops of the right wing, under the command of the Mirza Alouebcre, shou'd invest the city on one side, and those of the left wing, commanded by the Emir Gehan Chah, on the other, that no one might get out. At the same time Timur sent some of the most famous Emirs of his army, with a great body of cavalry, in pursuit of the Sultan. These brave men march'd with so much diligence, that they overtook him: they slew several of his men, and oblig'd the others to abandon their horses, mules, camels, and all their equipage, to save their lives; so that the ways were cover'd with goods which they had call away to fly the better. On break of day, Timur took horse, and order'd the suburbs of Damafens to be pillag'd. Next day, the 21st of Jumaziulevel, after sun-rising, the whole army were commanded to march in order.
of barrets and after having pass'd the gardens, chapels, and suburbs, to involl the city. This order was exactly executed; and Timur went to lodge in the palace of Caihabac, situate over-against the fortress, and built by Malek Ezaher, formerly Sultan of Egypt. The Mirzas, Emirs, and soldiery took up their quarters in the suburbs, where they found a great quantity of furniture, arms, finery, and all sorts of merchandize.

Timur, who never omitted any opportunity of paying his devotion, visited the tombs of Oumme Selma and Oumme Habiba, two of the wives of Mahomet; and afterwards that of Behlhabach, whose intercession he implor'd; and then he return'd to his camp. As soon as the inhabitants of Damasen saw themselves besieg'd in form, they were so seiz'd with fear, that all the Cherifs, the Cadis, imams, doctors, and other lawyers of the city, open'd the gates themselves, and with an entire submission went out, and carrying with 'em presents, cut themselves at the foot of the imperial throne. They represented their misery, and the great displeasure they had at what was pass'd; and they besought the emperor to have pity on the Mussul-

* An extract out of Arab Coah.

The chief of this deposition was the Cad Validdin, son of Tschidon, who very much pleas'd Timur in his discourse with him: this prince made him, and the others who were with him, dine in his own table. And as Validdin had traveled into Africa, Timur was delirious of hearing him discourse concerning the Kings of that country; for Timur was well versed in the history of princes and states, and was not ignorant of what pass'd either in the east or west.

Timur gave robes at home to these lawyers, and sent 'em away contented.

He elegant him who came to see him, according to the value of his presents, and presently after gives him up at a pret to details.
The History of Timur-Bec.

Chap. XXVII.

Taking of the castle of Damascus.

Tho the condition of the city was as bad as we have represented; yet Yezdar Cennal, governor of the castle, confiding in the strength of this place, which was one of the most noted fortresses in the world, resolved to defend himself. Its walls were of great pieces of rock, very high and regularly built. It had round it a ditch of about twenty cubits; and

* Timur caus'd some of his soldiers to be cruelly'd, for having caus'd violence after the publication of quarter.
The place was supply'd with all sorts of ammunition. The garrison began first to cast stones out of their machines, as also arrows, and pots full of naphtha and wild fire, to hinder our approach. Nevertheless orders were given to all the generals of Tuman and Herazes to advance towards the castle, and besiege it in form. The necessary preparations were made, and the battering-rams and machines to cast stones were got ready; and the soldiers rais'd three platforms of such a height, that they commanded the castle. They afterwards entirely drain'd the ditch; then the sappers advance'd to the foot of the wall, and began to work with all imaginable diligence, not withstanding the great stones the besieging continually shower'd on 'em, which were answer'd by those from the machines cast on the platforms, and which hinder'd the besieging appearing so often in view. From our machines were likewise cast pots fill'd with wild fire like theirs, besides the arrows which constantly fell upon the place like hail. The siege being divided among the Emirs, every one shook the walls on his side with battering-rams and other machines.

During these transactions, Timur order'd the Mirras Miran Chiah and Charoe, and the Emirs Soleiman Chiah, Gehan Chiah and others, to go and take up their winter-quarters near Canaan, that their soldiers might refresh themselves, and their horses might get some pasture. The rest of the army advance'd in the siege with a great deal of vigor: they heated great pieces of the rock by putting fire underneath, and call'd vinegar there; and then with their hammers they broke 'em, and took 'em out of the walls: and when the wall and balions were ready to fall, they prop'd 'em up with great stakes lest they should fall on a sudden. In this manner they soon

N. 3

smith'd
fins'd flapping the bafhim of Tarma, which was the largell of any, and the place which Al-
obtain-Becchi infeckt was soonest fins'd. This being done, orders were given to set fire to 'em: and at the same time this high and famous tower fell, and made a vast breach by its fall. The sol-
diers ran with their bucklers on their heads to enter by this breach: but on a timely another part of the wall fell, which rais'd a prodigious dust, and crush'd to death eighty men of the troops of Coreilaam and Silan. This misfortune stop'd the ardor of our men, who wou'd advance no farther: and the besieging hold on the occasion, clos'd up the breach, and fortify'd themselves behind. These breches fluxk terror into 'em; and they had willingly surrender'd, if they had not despair'd of pardon. The other props were then order'd to be set on fire; and great part of the castle soon fell. This accident entirely taking away all hopes from the besieging, Yezaer governr of the place caus'd the gate to be open'd; and being contrain'd to go out, he came full of grief to deliver up the keys of his castle, and of the treasury and magazines with-
in it. The other sides of the walls, which had been prop'd up with flakks, were not set on fire.

Timur gave orders that the governr Yezaer shou'd be put to death, because he had waited too long before he surrender'd. They found in the castle great quantities of riches, jewels, curious stuffs, and rarities which had been kept there for many ages. There was a famous granary full of corn, being the revenues of the two renown'd cities of Mecca and Medina. Timur, who was sincer in his religion, prohibited any one from touching 'em: and Herimul, one of the Wayaechis, having taken a hundred Barmans
of burly, he was bastinado'd both before and behind, and the mony he had receiv'd for em taken from him.' Timur order'd the intendant of this magazine to sell him some corn at the price of three Dinars Copeglus for each Katman or pound, because the war had render'd provisions extremely dear. This intendant got a great sum of mony for the corn; and the whole sum was distributed among the officers of the above cities, who were sent back to Jerusalem, after having receiv'd a great deal of civil treatment from Timur.

The garison were made slaves, and distributed among the Mirzas and Emirs; it was mostly compos'd of Circassians, Mamlucks, Ethiopian slaves, and Zanghebars: all the women, children and old men had the same fate. The tradesmen were separated from the rest, and that among the Emirs, with those who had been taken out of the city, to be conducted to Samarcand. Mouniana Jumaleddin, and Mouniana Suleman, two celebrated physicians, were also carry'd with 'em. Then Timur went from the palace of Catarblic to lodge in the house of Boutecach, one of the great Emirs of Syria, which house was the most charming and noble of any in that country. At the sight of all this magnificence, Timur cry'd out, "Is it not a shame that in a kingdom so large an extent, where men give themselves up only to pleasures, they should build all these fine edifices to please their senses; and not have the charity to erect a single mausoleum of four walls for the holy wives of Mahomer, who lie underneath these tombs?" Whereupon he immediately order'd that two magnificent domes should be built over the sepulchres of these holy lads. The commision was given to the

N 3

Mizra:
The history of Timur-Bec.

Book V. Mirzas Aboubeere and Calil Sultan, and to the Emirs Cheik Nouredelin, Ali Sultan, and Mengheli Coja, who made the workmen proceed with so much diligence, that the whole was finish'd in twenty-five days. These two domes were of white marble, full of sculptures and chisel-work.

As the Syrian mony was of a base alloy, Timur caused new mony to be coin'd both of gold and silver, which was refin'd by the coppel: there were pieces of a hundred, of fifty, and of ten Medicales, which were all honor'd with the name and titles of the august emperor Timur. The mony was so common among the soldiers, that the Divan got about six hundred thousand Dinars Copperli out of the single revenue for monys.

Timur commanded the principal secretaries of state to prepare letters of conquest, to send to Samarcand, and all the capital cities of the kingdoms of Iran and Touran, which were subject to his empire, with advice of the reduction of Syria; and to command the governors to make public rejoicings for his victories. These letters were dispatch'd by couriers, who likewise carry'd with 'em several of these new-coin'd pieces of gold and silver, to be distributed among the empresses, the princes of the blood, and chief lords of the kingdoms of Iran and Touran.

Timur sent Coja Hallan to the Mirzas Miranche and Charoc, that they might order the Emirs Soliman Chah and Gehan Chah to make inroads along the coast of the Mediterranean, as far as the town of Akbia. These Emirs having departed according to order, made havoc in all this country, from whence they brought away a great quantity of booty, and return'd to Canmad.
During these transactions, Timur was attacked with a distemper, which proceeded from a flux of humors which fell upon his back, and turned into an impollution. He was very bad with it: and one of the Emirs who attended his person, nam'd Aratmar, was sent into Canaan, to order the princes of the blood and the Emirs to return with expedition; but at their arrival the distemper went off, and the emperor recover'd. Then Timur reflecting upon the history of Syria, assembled his privy-council to communicate his sentiments to 'em. "I have heard, says he, "that in the wars which the Meronanian Om-"middles Califs wag'd against the children of "Mahomet, and particularly with Ali, his son-"in-law, nephew, and lawful heir, where they "exercis'd all the massacres and crueltys they "could invent, the Syrians kept an intelligence "with 'em, encouraging 'em in all these abomin-"able actions. Nothing shou'd be more won-"der'd at than this: for how can a nation be "thought to be of the sect of a prophet, and "be drawn from the abyss of error and in-"delity by the light he has afforded 'em, when "it becomes so far the enemy of his family as "to unite with its most cruel adversaries, and "suffer all sorts of cruelty and injustice to be "m'd towards 'em? This is what I can't com-"prehend. We ought not to disbelieve this "tradition: for if it were false, no rigorous a "sentence would not have come from the tribunal of God's justice, in consequence of which "they have suffer'd so cruel a punishment at this "time, notwithstanding all their strength and "power."

Timur having related this piece of history, with which he was perfectly acquainted, they explain'd his highness's thoughts among one another.
The history of Timur-Bec.

Book V. The officers of his household were constantly reasoning on it. It was so infatuated into the minds of the warriors, that on the first of the moon of Schaban the troops forcibly entered the city without orders, and made a terrible slaughter, committing all manner of violations: they made both men and women slaves, took from them their jewels, and pillaged their goods, which consisted of an infinite quantity of gold, precious stones, curious merchandizes, rich fruits, and all sorts of rarities. They got so much riches, that all the horses, mules, and camels, which they had taken from Schabarte as far as Damascus, were not able to carry 'em away: so the soldiers were obliged to fling away a great part, and especially several pieces of gold and silver fruits, and curious belts of Egypt, Cyprus and Russia, which they had pillaged at the beginning of the campaign. This circumstance I have heard from several credible persons who were eye-witnesses of it.

March 28. The first floor of the houses of Damascus are built of stone, and the two upper ones of wood; and most of the ceilings and even of the walls of 'em are varnish'd, which renders 'em very inflammable: so that when any place has took fire, the judges and governors, notwithstanding all their precautions, are not able to stop it; and it commonly burns a great way. This often happens in time of peace.

March 29. The 12th of Schaban, the city took fire by accident, and every one strove in vain to quench it: it increased so much, that no place was free from the scent occasion'd by the ebony and lacquer, of which the varnish was composed; and the houses became exceeding black.

Timur, whose regard for religion was unparalleled, sent the Emir Chamelik to preserve the
The history of Timur-Bec.

The famous mosque of Ommiades from the fire: but the roof was made of wood cover'd with lead, instead of being varnish'd, God made his wrath appear against these people: for notwithstanding the soldiers endeavors to quench it, they could not hinder the eastern Minaret of this mosque's being reduc'd to ashes, tho' it was built of stone: whereas the Minaret of Arous, otherwise nam'd Mounar Beiza, remain'd safe, on which the Musulmans believe, that the lord Messiah Jesu, on whom, as on our prophet, may blessings and salvation be shower'd, will descend from heaven, when he shall come to judge both the living and the dead. And what was most miraculous is, that this latter Minaret, tho' built of wood, and platter'd over with lime on the out-side, remain'd intire, while all Damascus was burnt down, and the immense riches within it pillag'd and sack'd, as well as the rest of Syria.

Then Timur took up a resolution to return back; and to give the inhabitants of Syria some marks of his clemency, after having made 'em feel the effects of his wrath, he order'd that all the slaves of Damascus and the rest of Syria, men, women and children, should be set at liberty. Gelaelidham had the commission for executing this order, and conducting all the slaves to the city of Damascus, which was exactly oblerv'd.
The history of Timur-Bec.

Book V

CHAP. XXVIII.

Timur returns out of Syria.

March 31.

The fourth of Schaban 803, which answers to the beginning of the year of the Serpent, the Sun entering Aries, Timur decamp’d from Conbalbar, and march’d to Gouta, where he encamp’d. He there caus’d two orders to be drawn up; the one to the Mirza Mehemet Sultan, to leave the government of the frontiers of Mogolistan, to the Emirs Codadad Hulfeini, Birdi Bei, Sarbouga, and others, and to come forthwith to the foot of the throne, to receive the crown and investiture of the empire of Hulacou Can, which was granted him in consideration of his merits and services. The second order was, that the august empress Touman Aga, and the young princes his children, should come to meet the emperor. These two orders were seal’d, and sent by Dané Coja.

Timur being departed from Gouta, pass’d by Carthum Bec; and in three days he arriv’d at Emeda, the inhabitants of which had continu’d firm in their obedience, for which reason the troops did not molest ‘em in their passage. Then a council was held, and Timur order’d the Mirzas Rouflem and Aboubecre, with the Emirs Soliman Chah and Cheik Noureddin of the right wing, to march with ten thousand horse to the town of Tedmir, built by the prophet Solomon, the houses of which were of freestone, and to pillage the subjects of Zulcader, who were in the territories of this town. He commanded the Mirza Sultan Hulfein, and the Emir Beren-
The history of Timur-Bec.

... 

dae of the left wing, to march to Antioch at the Chapal, head of five thousand horse: and he sent the Mirza Calil Sultan, the Emir Roufem Tagi Bouga Berlas, Temour Coja, Aebouga, and others, with fifteen thousand horse of the main body, against the Turcomans of Coubec, who were encamp'd on the banks of the Euphrates.

Those of the right wing soon arriv'd at Tedmir, from whence they brought away about two hundred thousand sheep belonging to the Zulecdermans, who were constrain'd to fly into the deserts of Arabia with their horses and camels. After this the troops return'd, pass'd the desert, and came to the banks of the Euphrates, along which they advance'd.

Those of the left wing being arriv'd near Antioch, could scarcely enter it, because of the great waters, foughs and marshes: they pillag'd the city and country, and then turn'd towards Aleppo, where they join'd the troops select'd out of the main-body, and commanded by the Mirza Calil Sultan: with these they march'd into the neighborhood of Calar-Erroum, towards the Euphrates. Here they met the Turcomans, who had the boldness to wait their coming, and prepare for battel: they were briskly attack'd, and courageously defend'd themselves; but the Cheik Huflein, son of Coubec, their leader, being slain, his brothers and the rest of the chiefs were constrain'd to fly to the desert. Several of 'em were kill'd; and abundance of horses, camels, sheep and other spoils taken, which being join'd to the other booty of our soldiers, they counted above eight hundred thousand sheep; and the soldiers were so fatigu'd, that they cou'd not carry away the rest of the cattel.

When
When Timur was arriv'd in the neighborhood of Hama, the evil destiny of the inhabitants excite'd em to commit acts of hostility against our men; they destroy'd the edifices our soldiers had built when they were there the first time. This action inflam'd Timur's wrath, who permitted 'em to be pillag'd; the inhabitants were made slaves, and their houses set on fire, after they had taken from 'em their best effects.

The army march'd from Hama to Aleppo, from whence to Damasus are twenty leagues. After some days journey they came near Aleppo, and the Emirs Seid Azeddin, Hezaregheri, Chah Chahan, and Mousla Tui Bouga, who were in the castle belonging to that city, raz'd the walls, burnt the houses, as well of the castle as of the town, and join'd the imperial camp. After four days journey the army arriv'd at the banks of the Euphrates, and the Mirzas Routem and Aboubecre, with the Emirs of the right wing, arriv'd there at the same time, coming from the lower part of the river. The Mirzas Calil Sultan and Huflein Sultan, with the Emirs of the main-body, came there also by water; and they had all the honor to kiss the imperial carpet, and offer presents of the booty they had taken in their inroads. There was so great a number of cattle in the camp, that a sheep was sold for a Dinar. As the Mirza Sultan Huflein had perform'd several brave actions, and done the duty of a good subject in the last inroads, he obtain'd a pardon for his former fault, and kiss'd the emperor's feet, who promis'd to restore him his best favors, and take care of his advancement.
CHAP. XXIX.

Timur crosses the Euphrates, and hunts in Mesopotamia.

After all the Mirzas and Emirs had join'd the imperial camp, orders were given to repass the Euphrates: and accordingly two boats were brought from the town of Bire, on the east side of this river, to transport the emperor's baggage. The Mirzas, Emirs and soldiers swam over, and encamp'd near Bire, the governor of which came out to salute the emperor, bringing him presents: and in acknowledgment of his services, his highness confirm'd him in his government, and the inhabitants receiv'd no damage from our troops. Cara Olman arriv'd at this place, and killing the imperial carpet, made his presents; and he had a handsom reception.

The army being departed thence, Timur had a desire to hunt in Mesopotamia: the soldiers of the right and left wing form'd the great circle of five days journey in circumference; and the circle growing less and less, they found so much game of all sorts near the fine fountain of Rafetain, that they took the beasts with their hands. After the chase, tables were erected for a general banquet, to eat the game which had been taken, wherein the most delicious wines were fes't up: and as an incentive to drinking, they eat roe-bocks and antelopes, whose flesh is very tender, and the best-tasted of any creatures of the deer.
Then they decamp'd from Bire; and when they were come to the town of Edessa, the principal persons came out with presents to salute Timur, who treated 'em handsomely, after 'em of their lives, and sent 'em back contented. Passing farther, they found a castle inhabited by Armenian robbers. Timur gave orders for their being exterminated; and they were accordingly put to death, their goods seiz'd on, and the place raz'd. During these transactions Hendou Chah Carandgi arriv'd from Samarcand; he had an audience of the emperor, to whom he gave an account of the good state of affairs in Tranfoxiana. There also came an officer from the empresses Toukel Canum and Touman Aga; and another from Sultania, from the empress Sera Mule Canum, with presents of stuffs and jewels; and all these messengers inform'd the emperor of the good health of the princes his sons.

CHAP. XXX.

Timur marches to the town of Mardin.

Then the army march'd towards Mardin. Timur sent back Hendou Chah Carandgi, and the officers of the empresses, giving 'em presents, and letters full of affection for the princes his children. To the same place came the Sultan of Hufni Keifa, and the Sult-
The history of Timur-Bec.

The sultan of Arbinc, with the other princes and Chaps. 32.
lords of those quarters. They brought presents
and precious stones to lay before the emperor,
and they had the honor to kill the imperial
carpet.

As to the Sultan of Mervin, we have already
remark'd, that he being reduc'd to obedience,
had been imprison'd by the emperor's order
in the castle of Sultania; that Timur in comp-
passion to him had pardon'd him, and given
him a veil, with much civil treatment; and
that he had promis'd to become a faithful servant
as long as he liv'd, and let slip no opportunity
of giving marks of it, that so he might render
himself agreeable to the emperor, and merit
his favors. After this it became him to follow
our army into Syria with his troops; or if thro'
the nearness of the enemy's, there was any dif-
ficulty in that, he ought at least to have sent
one of his sons or brothers. But as he had fail'd
in this particular, he was conscious of his fault;
and dur'd not come to meet his highness. Ne-
evertheless Timur, being arriv'd near his fron-
tiers, had the goodness to ask after him, ord-
ering him to come before him in very oblig-
ing terms: but this unhappy prince, giving
way to his evil destiny, had the insolence to re-
fuse to come, and dreamt of defending his
town, being persuaded that it cou'd not be
taken by force. In effect, as a long siege
was necessary to the carrying it, tho' in the
neighborhood were abundance of fertile plains
full of pasture, and proper to encamp in; Timur,
was contented with ruining and
burning

* Timur cou'd not take the castle of Mervin, which was
flute upon an inscutable rock, large enough to contn
burning all the houses of the lower town, as well as the markets; and he ordered Cara Ofman, governor of Malatia, after having honored him with a veil, to form the blockade of Mardin, and shut the inhabitants up to close, that no one might be able to escape.

Timur wold abundance of civility to the Sultans of Hulm Keita, Arrime, and the other neighboring places, who were come to pay their devours to him at his arrival. He gave to each a robe wove with gold, a belt set with precious stones, and a fabre with a gold handle; and he permitted them to return to their own countries. Then Timur sent the Emir Allahdad to Samarcand, with orders to march afterwards to Achpece, to take care of the frontiers of Geta.

CHAP. XXXI.

Timur sends troops into Georgis, and to Bagdad.

The army being departed from Mardin, Timur ordered the Mirzas Sultan Husein, Pir Mehemed, Omar Cheikh, and Aboubeccre, as also the Emirs Gehan Chah, Temour Coja, Soid Coja, and others, to march with a great body of the army to Alengle by the way of Amad, much plowed lands. Here are great springs of water, and the garden land in so used of the country to maintain them.

The Arabian says, that to be defirous of taking Mardin, is to seek the friendship of an envious man, or to make a sign to the blind.
to make themselves masters of Alengic, and Chapa, from thence to pass into Georgia. The Mirzas and Emirs departed according to order; but as Alengic had been besieged already two years by others of our troops, (for when the army march’d towards Schaffe, the Cheik Mehemed Deruga, with the troops of the Mirza Miran Chah, Eroze Chah, and the Mirza Chataue, went to besiege it, and press’d it so closely, that most of the inhabitants died of hunger; they being in to great want of victuals, as to be oblig’d to eat old leather, skins and such like things, to appease their hunger; and even these things falling ‘em at till, constrain’d ‘em to go out and deliver up the place) Alengic, I say, having been besieged two years, when the Mirzas and Emirs came near Avenic, and heard of the reduction of Alengic, instead of marching to it, they turn’d towards the right for Georgia. They made great haste to surprize the Georgians, whose country they ravag’d. This exceedingly disturb’d Malek Gourghin, who sent an ambassador to the Mirzas, to acquaint them with the great surprize he was in at their coming into his country, seeing he was one of the emperor’s most faithful servants, and to assure them that as soon as his highness should come into those quarters, he would not fail of paying his obedience to him. The Mirzas sent an express to court, with advice of Gourghin’s submission; they ceased ravaging his country, and laid at Menonit, which is a place proper to pass the summer in, to wait the answer of the court, and know whether the emperor would grant quarter to Gourghin. The next day an order was ill’d out for the Sultan Mahmood Can, the Mirza Rooflem, the Emir Solyman Chah, and other Emirs, to march at the head of their
The history of Timur-Beck.

Book V. Tuman and company towards the city of Bagdad. Their lords set out immediately, and after several days march arriv’d at Bagdad, and encamp’d on the south-side. Farrudge, of the Mogul herd of Gelaiz, was governor for the Sultan Ahmed. The vast multitudes of Turks and Arabians, who were assembled in this city, render’d Farrudge insolent; and confiding in the strength of his walls, and the number of his soldiers, he even dur’d to sally out to oppose the Tartar army, and rang’d his men in order of battle in the view of ours.

As soon as the rumor of the arrival of our army was spread, the Emirs Ali Calander of Mandeli, and Dgian Ahmed of Bacou, began their march against us, and pass’d the Tigris at Medaine. On the other hand, Fatim Chah of Hille, and Micaill of Sib, also departed with the same design, and join’d together at Serler; and with three thousand men well arm’d advance’d to fight. The Mirza Roulieb, the Emir Soliman Chah, and others, immediately took horse with their troops, and surrounded the enemy. They repuls’d ’em as far as the Tigris, and a bloody battle ensued near the castle of the Emir Ahmed. Dgian Ahmed was there slain, with a great number of his bravest soldiers: many cast themselves into the river and were drown’d, while the rest escap’d with a great deal of difficulty. After the defeat, one wou’d have thought Farrudge shou’d not have held out any longer; but this peasant, who had never before been master of a government, and had attain’d this only by cowardly intrigues, cou’d not resolve to quit his new dignity of governor, but found a pretense to excuse himself. "The Sultan Ahmed my master, says he, made me swear, that if Timur shou’d come in person,
The history of Timur-Rece.

"I would surrender the city, for fear of bringing the people into misery; but if that emperor should not come in person, whatever number of troops approach'd, I would make a front of defence, and not deliver up the place; and I must obey my master's orders."

Under this fly pretence, he gain'd over the inhabitants and militia, whom he posted upon the walls to defend the city. There he with all his efforts; for he excited the soldiers upon the walls, and advance'd upon the water in a boat, discharging a shower of arrows on our men in the rear.

In the mean while Timur advance'd towards Tauris: he pass'd by Nasibene, a strong place, which he gave orders to besiege and raze; but the inhabitants coming out with presents, and bringing the keys of the fortress, Timur gave 'em quarter, and they receiv'd no damage from the passage of our troops. The army being arrive'd at Mauile, they built a bridge over the Tigris, which all the troops cross'd in a week.

CHAP. XXXII.

Timur besieges and takes Bagdad.

The Emirs who were before Bagdad, sent an express to the emperor, to acquaint him with Farradge's sentiment, and the pretence with which he color'd over his obstinacy in defending the city. On this advice Timur

---

1 A town of Cœmilia, long. 76. 31. Lat. 37.
2 A town of Mesopotamia, long. 77. 24. 50. 30.

chose
chose the bravest men of his army; and leaving the empress Tchelopan-Mule Aga, with the rest of the troops and baggage, under the care of the Mirza Charoe, accompany'd by the Emir Chameli, whom he order'd to march to Tauris by Tchinaran and Calaghi, he departed in person for Bagdad, by the way of Altoun Cuprie; where being arriv'd, he encamp'd at the lower part of the river, over-against the gate of Cairet Ulacah; and all the troops encamp'd round the city. He immediately order'd the sappers to begin to work. The Mirzacs and great Emirs of the Tomans, Hazares and Couchons, fix'd the sappers each before his poul, and some bodies of the troops to furnish 'em. Farrudge being desirous to know whether Timur was there in person, sent one to him whom he had confidence in, in quality of ambassador, because this person knew him, having had the honor to see him before. The ambassador met with a handsom reception; and after his audience was honor'd with a veil, and at length dismiss'd. At his return he gave Farrudge an exact account of what had pass'd; but this governor, tho' he well knew he spoke the truth, accused him of dissembling, and put him in prison, left others who'd likewise know the truth from him: and then giving out that Timur was not there in person, he contin'd to defend himself, and committed hostilities, not considering what the consequence would be. Then the Cojas Mafaoud, Semnani, and Mengheli, who were employ'd in building a platform, which might have a prospect upon the city of Bagdad, were wounded with arrows, and soon after expir'd.

"A bridge on the river of Altoun Sooi near Mouflit."

Timur
Timur sent Loeman Tavaeli to the Mirza Chapaa Charoe, to order him to return to Bagdad with the baggage and the rest of the army. Loeman join'd the Mirza at Calaghri, and accompany'd him in his way to Bagdad. When this great army was assembled together, Timur review'd it: and the inhabitants no longer look'd upon their city as the house of peace, but as the palace of hell and discord. The troops encamp'd on both sides the river, and surrounded the city, tho' it was more than two leagues in circumference. A bridge of boats was built over the Tigris below Carric Ulacab: and several skilful archers were laid in ambuscade down the river, to hinder any from flying. The care of the upper part of the river, was given to the Mirzas Miran Chah and Charoe, who encamp'd over-against Sous Efultan. On the other side of the Tigris were Mehemed Azad, and Tangri Birmich Caja, to guard the forepart of the city, that no one might get out that way. In fine, it was so block'd up and environ'd on all sides, that tho' the Tigris pass'd thro' the middle of it, and there was a great number of boats, yet it was impossible to get out. During these transactions, Ahmed Ogoulchel, governor of the castle of Alengie, who was left after the taking of the place, was brought to Timur, who order'd that he should be put to death, and the castle committed to the care of Malek Mehemed Ogoulchel. The execution of this order was given to him who had brought Sidi Ahmed to court.

At the same time the Emir Moulla arriv'd from the Mirza Mehemed Sultan at Tranfexi-

*Bagdad is Gram'd Darifilam, that is to say, the house of peace.*
Book V. 214, and gave the emperor an account of the good state of affairs in that kingdom. He presented him with a piece of a balafs ruby, weighing one hundred and twenty Medicales, dug out of the mine of Bedakhan.

In the mean while Farradge and the inhabitants of Bagdad were struck with fear; so that they fought not so much out of bravery as from despair: they perform'd actions of the greatest rashness, which almost exceeded human power; for as soon as the Tartars having made a breach, had set fire to it, and a side of the wall was about to fall, the besieging immediately repaired the breach with mortar and brick, and entrenched themselves behind. It was then summer, the sun being in Cancer: and as Bagdad was situate in a country near the tropic, the violence of the heat was so great, that the birds fell down dead; and as the soldiers had on their entrails, one may say they even melted like wax; Nevertheless they rais'd a high platform, which commanded the city, from whence they incessantly call great stones out of their machines. The Mirzas and Emirs fell several times on their knees before the emperor, begging leave to make a general assault, that they might take the city sword in hand: but Timur would not consent to it, saying, perhaps the besieging may come to a famine of their fault, beg pardon, and deliver up the place, that they may save themselves from being slain or made slaves, and that the kingdom may not be entirely ruin'd. But fate had it otherwise; for these unfortunate people continu'd in their stubbornness, notwithstanding the dearness and scarcity of provisions, the siege having already lasted forty days.
The 27th of Zilzad 807, at noon, when the inhabitants by reason of the heat of the sun, not being able to stay upon the walls, had retired into their houses, and fixed their helmets upon sticks which they had erected in their places, our army undertook to give a general assault. The Mirzas and Emirs instantly advanced, and having fixed their scaling-ladders against the walls, the Emir Cheik Noureddin mounted first, and erected his horse-rail upon the wall, crowned with a half-moon. He caused the trumpet to be sounded, and the drums and kettle-drums beat; immediately all the captains in their respective posts mounted the walls, and then call them down into the ditches, the troops watered the city sword in hand, and Timur advanced to the foot of the bridge which had been built below Bagdad. The soldiers being in the place, the inhabitants endeavor'd to get out by all the ways they could, but in vain; to they were constrained to call themselves into the Tigris, where escaping the swords of the Tartars, they became the prey of the fishes. Several got into boats, and others swam, to gain the lower part of the river; but they were no sooner come to the bridge than they were shot by the soldiers arrows, who lay in ambuscade. Farrudge embark'd with his daughter, and found means, notwithstanding all Timur's precautions, to escape by water. He was pursu'd along the banks of the Tigris by our soldiers, who discharged upon him a vast number of arrows; whom not being able to resist, he was constrained to cast himself and daughter into the water, where they were both drown'd, and the boat sunk to the bottom. The boatmen had orders to fish up Farrudge; and having drawn him up out of the water, they call his unfortunate
The history of Timur-Bec.

Book V.
nate carcasse upon the bank. As there had been several Tartar soldiers slain in the general assault, each soldier was order'd to bring one head of the men of Bagdad; which they accordingly did; and spared neither old men of fourscore, nor children of eight years of age. No quarter was given either to rich or poor; and the number of the dead was so great, that no one could count 'em up, tho' the Tavachis had orders to register it. Towers were made of these heads, to serve as an example to posterity. Some learned men found means to call themselves at the feet of the emperor, who granted 'em pardon and quarter, and even gave 'em veils and horses, with a convey to conduct 'em to what place of security they desir'd; all the rest of the inhabitants were exterminated. Afterwards Timur gave orders that there shou'd not remain one single house in the city unraz'd; but that the mosques, colleges and hospitals shou'd be spared. Accordingly they ruin'd the markets, caravanserais, hermitages, cells, monasteries, palaces, and other edifices. Thus, says the Alcufan, The houses of the impiant are overthrown by the order of God.

* Arabichal says two; and that there were nineteen thousand inhabitants of Bagdad slain in cold blood. They hung away the bodies; and made trophies of the heads, p'd together, There were one hundred and twenty towers made of the heads for trophies.
CHAP. XXXIII.

Timur's return from Bagdad, and march towards Tartis.

AFTER the Tigris was grown red with the blood of the inhabitants of Bagdad, and the air began to be infected by the dead bodies, Timur decamp'd from that city the beginning of Zilhadj, and march'd a league towards the upper part of the river. He encamp'd near the tomb of the great Imam Abou Hanifa, chief of one of the four orthodox sects among the Mahometans; to implore the intercession of this saint. Then he sent a messenger with letters and orders to Moulike, who was come from Tranfoxiana; which messenger he order'd to be accompany'd by Nemedee, Deroga* of Khivak', that this Nemedee might have the care of the government of Carezam in the absence of Moulike, and till his return to the Mirza Mehemed Sultan.

Timur order'd the Sultan Mahmoud Can, and the Mirza Caleb Sultan, accompany'd by several great Emirs and a good number of troops, to make inroads in the neighbouring places. They hafien'd to obey this order, pass'd by Hille, and went as far as Mehad Nedgeit.

---

* Deroga is the particular governor of a town.
* A town fouth of the Gibou, in the kingdom of Carezam.
* A place in late Arabia near the Esphrait, where Hollen, grandon of the first people Mahomet, was slain by the soldiers of Yende, son of Meaviar. To this place they go in pilgrimage from all parts of Asia, but
but instead of attacking that holy place, they paid their devotions there: then they ravag'd Hila and Valaz, and return'd to court laden with booty.

Timur took the road to Chehrezour and Calghi; and leaving the care of the baggage and main of the army to the great Emirs, he order'd 'em to march slowly behind, while no one shou'd separate from his Tuman or company. The emperor made haste, accompany'd by the Mirzas Miran Chah, Charoe, and Calil Sultan: but while they were on their march, the Coar- des were so rash as to attack those who were separated, tho' at ever so small a distance from the army, and rob 'em. Timur being inform'd of their boldness, plac'd soldiers in ambuscade round the roads; and as soon as these villains appear'd, our men rallying out of their ambuscades, seiz'd 'em, and hang'd 'em upon the spot on the chestnut trees which grew in the roads. As to these chestnut-trees, I have heard it reported by very credible persons, that one year they produce chestnuts, and the next gall-nuts *; which appearing so very extraordinary, I thought fit to mention it. Timur being arriv'd at the river of Jagarou, the em- press Serai Mule Camum, Canzade, and the other wives of the Mirzas, with their children, among whom was the Mirza Oulouc-Bec, came to meet his highness, and kiss'd his feet at Sineper, congratulating him on his conquests, and sprinkling upon him precious stones and pieces of mony. After having offer'd their presents,

---

*I believe the author is mistaken, supposing the oaks which produce gall-nuts universally with acorns, to be chestnut-trees, which are very uncommon in Syria.
they decamp’d, and being arriv’d at Aeziarar, encamp’d there. The Cherifs, doctors and principal lords of the empire of Iran, cloth’d with facings of Ihbran which they wear in the mosques, came as far as this place to meet Timur, who gave them a handom reception. They stayed twenty days at this place; and the baggage and remainder of the army soon arriv’d. And as the most learned Imams, and doctors were assembled in this place, Timur, who was extremely desirous of being enlightened upon any questions of religion, invited them to dispute upon some point of doctrine, for the better clearing up of the truth: he employ’d himself in this exercise as long as he continu’d at Aeziarar. Afterwards he gave leave to the Mirza Roufleem to return to Chiraz; with order, as soon as he should arrive there, to tend to court Hallan Vandaar, and Jafan Jaga’doua.

CHAP. XXXIV.

Timur sends the Mirza Charee to Arzendgian.

DURING Timur’s stay in Syria, Bajazer, surnamed Idurum or the Thunder, the Ottoman emperor, thro’ the instigation of Sultan Ahmed Gelair and Cara Youafe Turcoman, who had fled for refuge to his court, brought an army into the field; and to revenge himself for the ruin of Sebaste, he march’d to besiege Arzendgian, which he made himself master of, having routed Taharten. Michel, Taharten’s lieutenant, was kill’d in the battle; and Bajazer sent the disconsolate wives and children of Taharten to Broussa; and then return’d
The history of Timur-Bec.

Turn'd himself: When Timur was departed from Aezjaro, had pass'd by Oudgian, and was encamp'd at Hechiroud, that is to say, the eight rivers, he receiv'd advice that Bajazet was again marching towards the east: upon which he order'd the Mirza Charoe forthwith to fall upon the Ottoman, and make him repent of his boldness; he appointed the Emir Solyman Chahi, Chamelik, and other chiefs of Timur, and colonels of Hezares, to accompany the Mirza. He then sent orders by the Emir Mezrab, to the Mirzas and Emirs who were gone out to make inroads in Georgia, and had stopp'd in Mencoul, to depart directly to join the Mirza Charoe, which they accordingly did. The Mirza being set out from Avenica, and arriv'd at Nevine, met the Cheik Ali, nephew of Taharten, who brought advice that Bajazet, fearing the success of his bold undertaking, had besought Taharten to intercede for him with Timur, that he might obtain pardon for his hostilitys, on condition of his future obedience; that he would send ambassadors with letters to make a treaty of peace, and a sincere alliance between the two empires, that the Musulmans might live quietly; and that he promised that if the peace should be concluded by the intercession of Taharten, he would send back his wives and children, whom he had carry'd to Brocza. The Mirza Charoe sent the Cheik Ali to the emperor, to give him an account of this affair; and laid himself some time where he was. Timur having decamp'd from the eight rivers, went to Oudgian, and laid some days in the Kioch of Argoun.

* A town of Arsebiana near Timur.
C H A P. XXXV.

Arrival of the second empress Touman Aga, and the young princes, from Samarcand.

We have said before, that when the army decamp’d from Damascen, orders were sent to the empress Touman Aga, to repair to court with her children. As soon as the princess receiv’d that letter, she hasten’d thither. When she arriv’d at Bocara, she went to visit the tombs of the saints, and among others that of the Cheikh Seifeedtin Bureuzi, whose intercession she besought. She cross’d the Gihon at Amouy, and passing the defart, came to Macan; and then going thro’ the defart of Bigen, she went to Machhad of Tous, where she visited the tomb of the great Ali, making vows, and distributing alms. When she was arriv’d near Oudgian, Timur went to meet her, and had the pleasure of seeing and embracing his dear children the Mirzaz Ibrahim Sultan and Sail Vazcas. He return’d thanks to God for his favors; and afterwards gave audience to the empress Touman Aga, and his daughter the princess Beghile Sultan, as also his cousin Sadeckin Aga, who paid their respects to him. After having flaid several days at Oudgian, Timur took the road to Pauris, hunting in his way. When he was arriv’d there, he went into his imperial palace, where he inform’d himself of the affairs of all his people, and did justice to those who had been oppress’d by his officers. Then the Coja Ali Semuan arrived from Hera, and the Coja Seifeedtin from Subzuar, they saluted the emperor,
Timur having stayd some days at Taunris, refouled to march into Georgia; he went to encamp at Cotronopa, where he order'd the Coja Ismael Cavafi to be hang'd before the market-place of the camp, to punish him for the tyranny he had exercised upon the people. He afterwards cross'd the river Araxes, and went to encamp with all the army at Nakchivan. And as the castle of Alengic was near Nakchivan, he was desirous to see that strong place, which had been taken by his soldiers in so short a time; and carrying with him the empresses, with the princes his sons, and his favorite Emirs, he carefully examin'd the place, and return'd to his camp.

About this time Taharten arriv'd at court, where on his knees he presented Bajazet's letter, gave an account of his repentance, and begg'd pardon for him; which he did with so much eloquence, that he appeas'd the emperor's wrath, and obtin'd his desire. Timur stayd some days at this place, during which time he sent an ambassador into Georgia, to Malek Ghourghin, to demand the tribute of him. Then the Mirzas, Pir Mehemed son of Omar Cheik, Sultan Huflein and Aboubecre, with the Emirs who had been sent to Mencoul, to join
the Mirza Charoe, arriv'd at court, and fainted. Chap. 5.
the emperor. The army decamp'd from the meadow of Nahchivan, went to the dehle of Chabkouz, and enter'd into the mountains. Timur being arriv'd at Ghentcheytoukze, had a desire to take the diversion of hunting; and when the circle began to close as usual, they took a very great number of flags. After this chance they encamp'd, and the Mirza Charoe return'd with his Emirs, and had the honor to salute the emperor at that place. Afterwards they departed; and when they were encamp'd at Chembower, which is a delicious place, Idexon, son of Goja Seifeddin Berelas, arriv'd there from Kirman; he kill'd the imperial carpet, and made his presents. The commissary, whom Timur had sent into Georgia to receive the tribute impost'd on Maleh Ghourghin, likewise return'd to the same place. That prince sent with him his own brother, loaded with curious presents, among which were horses and animals proper for the chase; he also sent the tribute impost'd on him. He had an audience of the emperor, by the intercession of the great Emirs; and having offer'd his presents, related the subject of his embassage. He said that the king his brother had resolved to continue obedient to the laws of the emperor of the Musulmans; that if he had committed any fault, he sincerely repented of it; and if his highness would pardon him, he would not let one opportunity slip of rendering him his services; that the would faithfully pay his annual tribute, and always keep troops ready to march where his highness should please to order them.

* A town in Georgia, long. 47, lat. 42.
The history of Timur-Bec.

Timur pardon'd Malek Ghourghin; he look'd upon his brother with a favorable eye, and giving him a vell, permitted him to return home. He order'd him to acquaint his brother that he forgave him, and would quit his country, on condition that he kept within the bounds of his duty; that he treated the Mullahmans of Georgia civilly, and protested 'em from all insults and oppressions; and that he rais'd an army, which he should send directly to the imperial camp.

Then Timur sent to Samarcand Temour Coja son of Aebonga, with other Emirs, to serve under the Mirza Omar, in quality of lieutenant-general in the government of Transoxiana. The army departed from this place, and went to encamp at Caraoutopas, where they receiv'd advice that the Mirza Mehemet Sultan, who had orders to return from Samarcand to court, was arriv'd at Nichabour, and that the Emir Hadgi Seifeddin, his lieutenant-general, was dead. Timur was sensibly touch'd with this news, and melted into tears, because of the good services he had always receiv'd from that faithful servant.

CHAP. XXXVII.

Timur passes the winter at Caraugh. Arrival of the Mirza Mehemet Sultan from Samarcand.

After a month's stay at Caraoutopas, Timur departed; and having passe'd by Ghendge and Berdaa, went to encamp at Caraugh Arran the azd of Rabiulahher Soza, which answers to the year of the Serpent, the sun being
in the middle of Sagittarius. They built houses of reeds for Timur and the Mirzas his sons, and within the inclosures they pitched tents and pavilions. And as Timur's intention was to make war in Capchae in the spring, the face of the pavilions was turn'd towards Derbend, and every one took up his winter-quarters, after Timur had distributed the money in his treasury among the soldiers and Emirs. But at this time ambassadors arrived from Capchae; they obtained an audience by the intercession of the great Emirs, and on their knees affirmed the emperor of their Can's submission and perfect obedience. The respectful terms they used appeased his anger, who granted 'em pardon, and affirmed 'em of his friendship.

Then advice was brought that the Mirza Mehemed Sultan had pass'd by Ardebil, and was arriv'd at Atam, at the head of his army. The Mirzas Mirza Chah, Charoe, and others, accompanied by all the great Emirs, hasten'd to meet him: they cross'd the bridge of the Araxes, and join'd the Mirza on the bank of the river Agoue. The Mirzas embrac'd their brother with tenderness and affection, testify'd their joy, and congratulated him on his happy arrival. The Mirza Mehemed Sultan went to call himself at the emperor's feet, with the ordinary ceremony. Timur embrac'd him, discours'd with him on the fatigues and length of his journey, and gave him a thousand benedictions. The Mirza offered his presents, as did also the Emirs of his court. For joy of this happy arrival the emperor made a great feast for several days, where the empresses and ladies appeared with extraordinary splendor.

Timur particularly dilligently'd the Mirza Mehemed Sultan; he plac'd a crown of gold on his head, and gave him a belt of the same metal.
The history of Timur-Bec.

Book V.  tal, with nine sets of Arabian horses, with saddles of gold. When the feast was over, Timur again took upon him the care of the public affairs; and the first thing he did was to finish the process against the Mirza Eskender, whom the Mirza Mehemed Sultan had bound for a fault he had committed: he was interrogated in a full Divan, and being cast, receiv'd the ballimado appointed by the laws of Yafa; but at length his chains were taken off, and he set at liberty.

CHAP. XXXVIII.

Timur sends troops to make inroads in divers places.

We have before remark'd, that the Sultan Ahmed Gelair, for fear of Timur's troops, had fled from his city of Bagdad for refuge into Natolia to Bajazet. Upon the rumor of Timur's march, the same Sultan departed from Bajazet in the neighborhood of Calarea in Cappadocia, and went towards Chaldea, which is call'd Irac-Arabi: he pass'd by Calat-Erumum, and along the banks of the Euphrates; he went to Hit, and thence to Bagdad, which city he endeavor'd to rebuild, tho' entirely ruin'd; and he got together all those of his party who were dispers'd, and wander'd about as vagabonds in the deserts. Timur being inform'd of this, resolv'd to exterminate 'em before they shou'd be able to gather to a head: to which purpose he held a council with the Mirzas and Emirs, and order'd four bodies of the cavalry to march each a different route. The Mirza Pir Mehemed, son of Omar Cheili, had
had orders to go towards Lorestan, Cezfashtan and Vafar; the Mirza Aboubeere, with several Emirs of Tumans, was to depart for Bagdad; the Mirza Sultan Hulein and Calif Sultan were order'd to go with several Emirs into certain places of Chaldea, and the Emir Berendac was nam'd to march with a good tropo, to pillage Gezire, and endeavor to exterminate the rebels. And as the Courdes had dar'd to commit inuities against our army, on its return from Bagdad, and had rob'd some of our soldiers who were scatter'd, the emperor order'd that the first of these robbers they met shou'd be destroy'd without mercy.

Tho it was winter, and the cold exceeding violent, because of the snow, so that it was impossible to pass without laying felts before one; yet the Emirs readily obey'd their instructions. This execution was begun upon the Courdes robbers, who, for'd by the snow and violence of the cold, were come down from their mountains, and had encamp'd in the plains of Derbend Tachi Catoun: an infinite number were put to the sword, some wou'd have fled into the mountains, but were hinder'd by the snow and cold, and constrain'd to submit and beg quarter, which was not granted, because their own wickedness had brought upon 'em the wrath of Timur.

The Mirza Aboubeere, having the Emir Gehancha for his lieutenant-general, took the road to Bagdad, and blocking up the ways on all sides, arriv'd there in the evening, when the Sultan Ahmed least expected him. The Sultan was so surpriz'd and pres't, that he cast himself into a boat in his flint, pass'd the Tigris, and accompany'd by his son the Sultan Taher, and
some officers of his household, took the road to Hille. Our troops repos'd themselves that night at Bagdad; and next morning, when they were all well of the Sultan's being gone to Hille, the Emir Gohan Chahl was detach'd in pursuit of him, and went as far as Hille; but as the Sultan, who had caus'd the bridge to be broken, was gone towards the lower part of the Euphrates, into the isles of Khaled and Malek, Gohan Chahl would not march so far, but sallied out of Hille, and sent a horseman to give advice of it to the court.

The Mirzas Sultan Hullein and Calil Sultan pass'd by Chephemaf, and pillag'd Mendelti, from whence the Emir Ali Calander, who was governor of it for the Sultan Ahmed, fled, pass'd the river, and having got together some fugitive troops, poll'd himself on the bank of the Tigris. The Mirza Calil Sultan sent by the upper part of the river the son of Gelanghis Berlas, at the head of five hundred brave men, with orders to swim over the river, and attack'em in the rear, while himself, with his army, lay in their view to amuse 'em. This detachment cross'd the Tigris, attack'd the enemy's rear, while the Mirza's troops swim over the river, charg'd the enemy on both sides, and having defeated 'em, pillag'd and brought 'em away prisoners of war, after having burnt alive their commander, who had had the boldness to defend himself.

The Mirza Pir Mehemed, with his lieutenant-general the Emir Soyanman Chahl, pillag'd at Doudendas the hords of Sathi and Fili. He was join'd by the Mirza Roullam, who, according to his instructions, was come from Chiraz to pass the winter at Chuchter; and they went togethe
The history of Timur-Bec.

ther towards Abida and Vafer. The Cheik of Avis, a Conquer, offer'd himself to be their guide, and advise'd 'em to ford the Tigris at Coupier; they afterwards march'd all night, and came to Masedia, where they visited Sign Ahmed Kebir. From thence they march'd two days journey to plunder the Arabians of Abida, from whom they brought away great flocks of horses and camels. They went no farther but repassing the Tigris, return'd to Chardar, the government of which the Emir Soltan Chah confirm'd to Doucom, and that of Dzefohl to Mehemed Adjab Chir, as likewise that of Hacza to Temou Coja, and that of Conzelian with its finances to Chameledin Deldar; but by way of retaliation he exact'd of 'em great sums of money. Then the Mirza Roufleem departed, in order to return to Chiraz.

All the Mirzas and Emirs, who were gone to make inroads into divers parts, laid the whole winter in Chadez, where they several times beat the enemy, and brought away a great quantity of booty: and in the spring they took the road to the imperial camp; and being all join'd at the bridge of Cales near the mountain Dgebelhammari, twelve leagues from Bagdad, and four from the dome of Ibrahim Lic, they march'd together to court, to give an account of what they had done.

* A'zaw in Arabia, frontier of Chadez, on the Pishin gull, near Bafa or Belloa.
CHAP. XXXIX.

The causes which oblig'd Timur to return to make war on Bajazet the Ottoman emperor.

As Cara Yousef, prince of the Turcomans, had begun afresh to commit disorders in the Muslin man country, robbing all passengers of whatever quality, and even insulting the great caravan which goes yearly to Hidjaz and Mecca; and afterwards tearing the just indignation of our monarch, was fled for refuge to the country of the Ottomans, which was a sure asylum to all the robbers of Asia: Timur, who made it a point of conscience to quell the disorders which affected the Mussulmans, resolved to make war upon Bajazet. This prince receiv'd the news with indignation; and all the people of Natolia were so seiz'd with fear, that the principal men of the state, as well lawyers as Chronic, waited upon him, and gave him the following advice.

"The prince who designs to march into our country, is so formidable and powerful, that he has destroy'd all who have return'd to obey him. Whatever his armies undertake, they easily accomplish; and they have never yet attack'd a province, city or fortress, which they have not soon reduc'd. It is impossible, mighty emperor, to execute so great designs without the favor of God; which makes us presume that to wage war with such an enemy,

---

Each Mohammedan kingdom sends yearly a caravan for the pilgrims to Mecca.
is against the rules of prudence. We believe it best to act with him in the ways of peace and mildness; and that your highness shou'd use all your efforts to do what he desires of you, and to maintain a good correspondence with him."

The fear which had posses'd Bajazer made all this appear reasonable to him. He wrote a letter to Timur, full of submission and obedience, which he sent by a Cadi of the law, accompany'd by an eloquent Emir skilful in negotiations, who went in quality of ambassadours to our conqueror. They arriv'd in the imperial camp at Carabagh Arran; and by the intercession of the Mirzas and great Emirs were admitted to an audience: they fell on their knees, and having kiss'd the imperial carpet, presented their letter, and gave an account of the subject of their embassy. The letter import'd, "That since by the infinite favor of the great ruler of heaven and earth, your highness has been rais'd to the throne of the empire of Asia, we willingly resolve to be entirely obedient to you: and if for the time past we have acted contrary to our duty, we adore your highness that we will repair the fault by our zeal in embracing all opportunities of paying our homage and services."

Timur having heard the ambassadours harangue, and read Bajazer's letter, answer'd 'em in these terms, "Inasmuch as we have been inform'd, that your master wages war with the emidels of Europe, we have always call'd off all designs of marching into his country with our army, not being willing to content to the destruction of a Mahometan country, which will cause a great deal of joy to the infidels. But there can be nothing more disagreeable to
The history of Timur-Bec.

Book V. It is, then, to hear that he grants a protection to Cara Youcef Turco-an, the greatest robber and villain in the whole earth, who pillages the merchants, murders passengers on the high-ways, and commits a thousand other infamous disorders: and what is most dangerous is, that this wretch resides in the midst of the Mussulman country, where he is as a wolf among the sheep; and the evil he does is a thousand times worse than what a stranger could do, for he was the most powerful monarch in the world. If your matter has a real desire to remove the causes of our quarrel, and keep a good correspondence with us, he must resolve upon one of these three things: either first, to put Cara Youcef to death as a criminal, after a legal process; or secondly, to send him to us bound in chains, that being convicted of his crimes, he may receive the punishment due to 'em; or thirdly, that he at least capel him over of his dominions. On these conditions we will maintain a friendship with your master as he as possible; and give him proofs of it by the powerful succour we shall send him, to carry on the war against the infidels more vigorously.

The ambassadors received the emperor's answer with all possible marks of respect. Then his highness took horse to follow the diversion of the chase; he passed the river Araxes, and the plain of Actium was chosen for the place to hunt in. This vast country was surrounded as usual; and the circle growing large, the emperor and the Mirzas enter'd, and with their Jannes flew what game they pleas'd. Timur permitted Taharten and the Ottoman ambassadors to enter the circle with the Mirzas: seve-
ral officers of the household, as Mehemed Azad, Chap. 39.

Then the Baoutache, and others, had the same honor, and they slew a prodigious number of beasts. In the mean while the circle press'd closer, and there were five or six ranks of soldiers behind one another: and then the Mirzas and Emirs came out of the circle, and ordered the kettle-drums to be sounded. The beasts, terrify'd at this noise, fell upon one another in such great numbers, that they form'd a kind of mountains. Then all the cavalry were permitted to kill and bind the beasts; and the chase was so great, that every one took five or six with his own hands.

After this hunting, Timur return'd to the camp, and in few days made a most magnificent feast, in which he did particular honors to the Ottoman ambassadors, gave 'em caps of gold, and belts, and told 'em that he would take up his winter-quarters in this place, and at the spring set out for the frontiers of Natolia, where he would wait the arrival of the ambassador whom he should send to their master; that if he brought a reasonable answer, he should be glad; if the contrary, the sword should determine who was in the right. Then Timur sent with 'em, in quality of ambassador, Bayazid Tekempar Itechikede, with a letter to Hajzare, he gave 'em a numerous attendance, and then dismissed 'em all. The tenor of the letter was as follows.

"After the usual compliments, we declare to you, that if what your ambassadors have said be sincere and true, it is requisite that what we have proposed concerning Cara Youssef Timurman thou'd be immediately put in execution; and that you send to us forthwith one of your limirs you can most confide in,
The history of Timur-Bec.

Book V. to confirm with an oath the articles of a treaty of peace between us. After that, by ambassadors and letters, a good correspondence shall be maintain'd between us; so that the Musulmans shall no longer fear any insults from either of us: otherwise you may expect to see our army enter your country, and ruin your monarchy. Safety be to him who follows the right way.

C H A P. XL.

Timur digs the river of Berlas.

It is a common observation, that the grandeur of princes is known by the monuments which remain of them after their death. Never any potentate left so many of these marks of power as Timur. Some antient prince had dug a canal into which the Araxes was brought; but this canal was at length overflowed, and its banks demolish'd. While Timur was hunting in these quarters, he by chance cast his eyes upon this beautiful relic of antiquity; and at the same time his ambition, and the desire he had to immortalize himself, excited him to repair this canal. To this purpose, he crost'd the Araxes, and regulated the manner in which this project should be executed: the Tavatchis distributed the work among the Emirs, who were to take care that the soldiers wrought at it. This work was carry'd on with so much vigor, that in a month two entire leagues of the canal deep enough for a boat to swim in, were dug.
The history of Timur-Bec.

head is at a place nam'd Surcapit. Timur gave Chap. 4
it the name of Nehri Berlas, that is, the river of Berlas: and on its banks have since been built several towns, villages, mills, vineyards, gardens and pleasure-houses. Tho Timur employ'd almost all his time in war, with design to render himself master of Afla, using all the means of policy, which seconded by fortune, hath facilitated to him the conquests of this great empire, by a chain of almost incredible victories; yet this prince, the better to transmit his memory to posterity, has erected to many stately edifices and other famous monuments, that this canal, with all its beauty, ought to be accounted one of his least undertakings, since it compar'd with the others, 'tis but as a rivulet to the ocean.

C H A P. XII.

Timur departs from Carabagh for the plains of Chemkour.

T H E sun was now in Pisces, and the spring was advancing, when the emperor was as much resolv'd upon marching into the Ottoman country, the prince whereof was his enemy, as he was for against it by the consideration of the religious war which Bajazet at that time so zealously maintain'd against the infidels. His heart being agitated by two different motives, he remain'd in suspense. The vast extent of the Ottoman empire, the number and valor of its troops, who were perfectly skill'd in war, and prepar'd to defend themselves, did not a little contribute to keep up his irresolution. Moreover, our troops, having been employ'd
The history of Timur-Bec.

Book y

employed for three years in attacking places, fighting battles, and making inroads upon several enemies, were so fatigued, that the Emirs and generals feared they would be disheartened by this new enterprise; yet they durst not discover their sentiments, for fear of being thought guilty of cowardice or weakness. They judged it most proper to reveal their mind to Chamieddin Alamoghi, who, for his great wit, eloquence and clearness of thought, had obtained so much access to Timur, that he could declare his sentiments at any time, without being in the least thought ill of. The Emirs hereupon addressed themselves to him, and unanimously besought him to lay hold on some favorable opportunity to make known to his highness their thoughts of his march into the Ottoman country; they conjured him to let him know the consequence of it, and advise him to think seriously on it, before he began it; and they even engaged him to apprise Timur of the astrologers' opinion, that in the campaign against the Ottomans, there appeared in the heavens an inevitable misfortune attending the Zagataian army. Chamieddin willingly undertook this commission, and represented the Emirs' sentiments to Timur, which were confirmed by the prediction of the stars. Timur having heard him, ordered Moula Abdalla Lefan, one of the most famous astrologers of the court, to be called before him, and to take away all fear from the Emirs, he interrogated him in public, and ordered him to declare freely the different aspects of the planets, and the judgment which might be formed from them. Abdalla hereupon delivered the following prediction: "It appears by the Ephemerides of the present year, that the attendant of this empire is in the highest degree of strength, and..."
The History of Timur Bek.

"And that of the enemy in the lowest degree of weakness. A comet will appear in Aries; and an army which comes from the east, will make an entire conquest of Naxaria, the prince of which will be taken prisoner."
When the army was on their march, Timur order'd the empresses, and the Mirza's wives, to return home with the young princes; and they were conducted by Cohlugadji. They stay'd at Tauris the rest of the summer, and towards autumn they went to Sultania. Timur at his arrival at Mencoul, not being willing to do anything against the rules of policy, sent a second ambassador to Haji zet, with a letter in these terms:

"After the usual compliments, we give you advice, that tho we are on our march to meet you, yet our word is the same as we have before declar'd: if you consent to what we desire, and put into the hands of our lieutenants the fortress of Kenna, which has been always subject to the country under our obedience, we will let you peaceably enjoy the kingdom of Natolia, that you may continue the war against the enemies of the Musulmans; and we will not refuse the succour which you may expect on that account. Do what you think best for your good."

CHAP. XLII.  
Taking of the castle of Tartoom.

Timur having been inform'd that there was a strong place in those quarters nam'd Tartoum, in which were two hundred Georgians who refus'd to pay tribute, and insulted the Musulmans and passengers; and that the prince who commanded 'em was absent, and had left in his place a lieutenant nam'd Ghurdegibe; his highness commanded the Emirs Chamtilik, Cheik Noureddin, and others, to attack the place, and take it at any rate. They accordingly
ingly came before it; and sent to acquaint the enemy, that if they would willingly surrender, and pay the tribute, they should have quarter; but they refused to do, and trusting in the strength of the castle, prepared to defend themselves. Our soldiers made the great cry, Allia Eche, and Salli Allia Muhamed; and having invested the place, they gave several assaults, discharging infinite showers of arrows. The besieged vigorously defended themselves for five days; and the sixth the place was taken: our men put all the Georgians to the sword, and having overthrown the walls, they raz'd the place, even to the very foundations. The governor, who escap'd, came to the foot of the throne to beg pardon; and obtained quarter for his life.

Timur flaid at Avenic till the return of the ambassadors he had sent to Bajazet. When two months beyond the time agreed on were past, and he had no news from the ambassadors, he grew impatient. "In truth, said he, extraction is a strange thing. Whatever mildness we use with regard to Bajazet, in order to preserve Natolia, as being the frontiers of the Muf-fulman country, and hinder as far as we are able its being destroy'd by our troops; yet the Turecan blood of this ignoble person won't permit him to deal civility with us, and preserve peace and friendship between us. He does not send back our ambassadors, but carries his hatred and hostility so far, that we are constrain'd to enter his country with an army, tho' we have no desire to seize by force on his dominions and effects. But this is the

* That is to say, God is the most great, and God blest Mahomet.

** refuie
The history of Timur-Bec.

Book V. "result of providence, whose depths we are not able to fathom: and we know not whether the effects are design'd for good or evil till they happen."

Timur sent back, to Sultania the second empress Touman Aga, with the Mirza Sadwaccas, son of the Mirza Mehemed Sultan; and he afterwards continued his march towards Natolia. When he was arriv'd at Erzerom, he was join'd by the Mirzas and Emirs who had pass'd the winter in Courdistan and Chaldea, where they had pillag'd and exterminated the enemies, as we said before, and had departed thence in the spring, with great quantity of booty, by the road of Conlaghi, and the mountain of Sou-natal.

CHAP. XLIII.

Taking of the castle of Kemac: Arrival of ambassadors from Bajazet.

The castle of Kemac is one of the most noted in Asia; it is situate upon a high steep rock, and is surrounded with a delta in form of a labyrinth. At the bottom of its walls are gardens and parterres of flowers on the bank of the Euphrates; and no prince has ever taken it by force. Several poets have compar'd it to the terrestrial paradise, because yearly for three days together, little birds, as big as sparrows, and unmig'd, fall out of the air; the inhabitants gather 'em up, sale 'em, and preserve 'em in pots. If they don't take 'em in three days, their wings grow large enough to fly away.
The history of Timur-Bec.

The Mirza Mohamed Sultan besought the emperor to honor him with a commission to conquer this place; which having obtain'd, he departed with the Emirs of Tomans and Hazara, with all the arms and machines necessary for a siege. Timur being arriv'd at Arzandgian, sent the Mirza Aboubeere, Cali Sultan, Sultan Husfein, and Estender, with the Emirs Gehan Chali, Chali Nooreddin, and Berander, to join the Mirza Mohamed Sultan; which they had no sooner done, than they besieged the place in form. The siege continued ten whole days, during which our soldiers stop'd the water which flowed into the place. The eleventh night they made rope-ladders, on which the Meeric soldiers, who ran upon the steeped mountains like roe-bucks, got to the top of the mountain; and when they were there, they fixed cords, which they let down to the bottom. The Mirza Mohamed Sultan order'd a number of brave men, whose names he wrote down, to mount by these cords; which they did, and did with their entralces, during the darkness of the night. The besieged perceived them intended themselves, and call'd down great flones upon 'em. Acher, nephew of the Emir Abbaan, and others, shot the flones, and fell. The next morning, our soldiers mounted to the walls, at the sound of drums and kettle-drums; and the wild-fire in pots were call'd with machines from both sides; our men also attack'd 'em with arrows and flones; and every one gave marks of the greatest valour. The Mirza Mohamed Sultan us'd all his endeavors to encourage his soldiers. The Mirza Aboubeere did wonders; and his officers fell feat'd the walls, and erced their horse-tail. At the same time, the others mounted on all the gates.
The history of Timur-Bec.

Book V. sides, and enter'd the place, of which they made themselves masters.

Timur having advice of the taking of this place, departed from the meadow of Arzendgian, and came before the castle of Kemac, the government of which he gave to prince Taharten, because it was no more than seven leagues from Arzendgian.

From thence he began his march in earnest for the conquest of the Ottoman empire; and as several peasants and laborers were retreated into caverns and steep places, he sent Emirs to attack 'em. But these men having at a distance perceived the number of his troops, were seized with fear; so they came up to 'em, and with submission beg'd quarter; which was granted 'em. The army being encamp'd at Sebasto, Bayazid Tchempai Eitzik arriv'd there from the Ottoman Porte, accompany'd by fresh ambassadors from the emperor Hajazer; he gave an account to the emperor of his negotiation, and presented the answer to the letter he had writ to the Ottoman. This answer, which was very haughty and arrogant, made appear that fate had resolved the ruin of this monarchy: and Hajazer, to excuse his not surrendering up the castle of Kemac, alleged reasons very unsatisfactory to Timur's council.

The Ottoman ambassadors being admitted to audience thro' the intercession of the princes of the blood, they kill'd the imperial carpet; offer'd their presents, which consisted of ten horses of great price, several animals proper for the chase, and divers other rarities; and on their knees declar'd the subject of their embassy. The emperor having heard 'em, fell into a great passion, refus'd their presents, and thus address'd him-
himself to the person who had been the speaker. Chap. 44.
If it were not an infamous action for princes
to put to death an ambassador, I would this
hour separate your head from your body.”
Yet having a little moderated his fury, he said:
When fortune confess to be propitious, counsel
becomes of use, for tho' we had no intention
to hurt your country, yet we are constrain'd
by that faithless prince's manner of acting, to
make war upon him. Had he sent Cara Youset
to me, and delivered up the castle of Keman
to my lieutenants, he might have remain'd
quieter in his kingdom. God be thank'd, this
castle has been reduce'd to obedience by the
valor of our soldiers. Tell him from me, that
since he has refused to attend to my counsel,
and has carry'd his obstinacy so far, he must
prepare himself like a brave man to sustain the
attacks of our ever-victorious army.

C H A P. XLIV.

Timur reviews his army.

TIMUR having resolve'd to attack Bajazet
in his own dominions, order'd the troops
to rendezvous in the plain of Seballe to pass in
review; he posted himself upon an eminence
to examine their ranks, arms, and countenance.
When any squadron pass'd before him, the cap-
tain advance'd, fell on his knees, and holding his
horse by the bridle, made his compliment
to his highness generally in these terms: “Our
lives shall always be employ'd in the service of
our great emperor: we will not leave a plant
or shrub in the enemy's lands; but we'll lack
The history of Timur-Bec.

Book No. "Natalia, and destroy the Ottoman." Timur answered these compliments, by encouraging them always to behave themselves like brave men, rather to acquire honor, than in hopes of a reward.

Thus all the army match'd one after the other by Tomans, Hazares and Crouches, with great ceremony. But when the troops of the Mirza Mehemed Sultan, which came fresh from Samarcaund, pass'd by, Timur admir'd their beauty, order and magnificence; for as good order in an army is the sole and primary cause of victory, this Mirza had divided his into several bodies, which had each a standard of a particular color, that they might rally when at a distance from each other, and be known in the heat of a battle. A certain number of squadrons had their standards and ensigns such as likewise their cuirasses, saddles, quivers, belts, lances, bucklers, clubs, and other arms, of the same color. Another body of the army was yellow, and another white: there were likewise violets and other colors in the same order. One regiment had all coats of mail; and another cuirasses. The Mirza having made his troops pass in this pompous manner, paid his compliments to the emperor.

The review lasted from break of day till afternoon, when Timur went to prayers. He order'd the Ottoman ambassadors to be conducted through all the ranks: they admir'd the arms and beauty of the equipages, and were fear'd with fear at the sight of this great multitude of soldiers, having never seen anything like it. Next day Timur gave presents to the ambassadors, and at the audience of leave made the following speech to them: "Tell Bajazet, that be-cause he employs the whole strength of his
The history of Timur-Bec.

empire to make war on the infidels, we are Chap. 45:

ferry we must be constrain'd to conduct our

army into his country; that notwithstanding

all our reasons to make war with him, we

are yet willing to adjust matters with him,

and pardon him. He need only restore to us

the officers belonging to prince Taharten,

whom he hath seiz'd, and send to us one of

his sons, whom we will regard as our own

child, and treat with more courtezly than he

has ever receiv'd from his father. On these

conditions the empire of Nataiia shall re-

main unmolested; the war shall cease; and

the inhabitants of his country shall continue

in peace and tranquillity; and have reason to

praise their prince's clemency, on whom the

merit of this action shall fall.

CHAP. XLV.

Taking of the castle of Harouz.

AFTER the Ottoman ambassadors return,

the spy's who had orders to give advice of every thing which pass'd, inform'd the

emperor that in those quarters there was a

castle nam'd Harouz, into which a great number

of peasants were retreated, having forry'd the

place, with design to make an oblitrate offence.
The Emirs Cheiks Noureddin, and Borendae

were order'd to ruin this fortress: they departed

at the same time, and being arrived before Harouz, they cast into it so great a quantity of

wild-fire, that they made the inhabitants re-

treat from their walls, and no one dare'd shew

their heads. In the mean while the sappers

work'd
The history of Timur-Bec.

Book V. work'd with a great deal of briskness, and soon call'd down the walls. A general assault was immediately given, and all the pealters put to the sword.

CHAP. XLVI.

Timur marches to Caesarea in Cappadocia, and to Antioch.

When the army was encamp'd in the neighborhood of Seballe, the guides brought advice that the road of Tocaz was full of forestis, the passages of which are extremely narrow; that Bajazet was arriv'd at Tocaz with a numerous army, and had seiz'd on the passage of the river ". This oblig'd Timur to turn towards the southern side of Naxolia: He took the road to Caesarea in Cappadocia, and sent before Ali Sultan Tavachi to hinder the troops going into the city. Timur was six days in his march from Seballe to Caesarea, where he had some time, and granted quarter to the inhabitants, as well the criminal as the innocent. Some fled for refuge into caverns and caves; whom the soldiers perceiving, pillag'd their effects, because of their being suspicious. As it was the season for reaping the corn and pulses in that country, the soldiers had orders to gather enough for the ammunition appointed to 'em. Timur nam'd the Mirza Aboubeere, and the Emir Cheik Nourreddin for leaders of the
The history of Timur-Bec.

[Text continues]
The history of Timur-Bec.

Book V. "we wait the enemy here, to give time to our soldiers and horses to repose themselves from the fatigues of a long journey; the other, that we march into the midst of his country, and ravage it, which will oblige him to pursue us with expedition: and if we shall destroy his army, which for the most part consists of infantry." He resolve'd upon the latter, and order'd his army to march. He left in the camp the Mirza Sultan Hufejin with two thousand horse: and he went before to Ansora, the Emirs Berendæ, Ballest, and other captains of companies, with orders to shut up the passage against the enemy, they should meet: some infantry were order'd to march with them, to dig wells in those places where they were to encamp at night. These Emirs March'd according to order, and were follow'd by Abderrahman Fawwaz, at the head of the infantry. Those who had been sent out the preceding day to gain intelligence, met a party of the enemy, whom they put to flight, cut off the head of one, and took another prisoner.

In the mean while, the emperor Bajazet's ten advanced at the head of a thousand horse towards our camp, to observe our motions: he pass'd the night near our army without being perceived, and laid in ambuscade in a defile. In the morning, when our men return'd from making inroads, he attack'd 'em; and as they were but fifty in number, he had certainly defeated 'em, tho' they fought bravely, and always advance'd towards our camp, had he not perceived the squadrons of the Mirza Sultan Hufejin, who

---

* A great city in Nucia, the same as Anghama, long...
were come to their assistance: so he was con-
strain'd to abandon 'em, and retreat.

The Emirs and infantry, who had taken the
road to Ancora, acquitted themselves exactly of
their orders. The cavalry march'd as far as the
city, pillaging all the country: and the infantry
who follow'd them, dug wells in the road, to get
water for the rest. Timur finding the way so
good, went in three days to Ancora, and encamp'd near it with all his army. An Emir,
am'd Yacoub, was governor of the fortresses for
the Ottoman emperor: and the garrison consti-
tuted of several of the bravest men in that coun-
try, who were resol'd to defend themselves to
the last. Next day Timur took horse, and rode
round the city to view it. Then he gave orders
for the water of a rivulet which runs into the
city to be cut off, and the walls to be flay'd,
while the sappers should be back'd as usual.
Some of our brave men even seal'd a bastion
which looks upon the rivulet, and almost
made themselves entire masters of the town:
but advice was brought from our scouts, that
Bajazet was advancing with design to fall upon
our army in the rear, and was but at four leagues
distance. On this Timur forthwith order'd the
sige to be rais'd, and that those who were
mounted on the bastion should come down
fighting: and they forthwith decamp'd.

The army march'd not far that day, but en-
camp'd, leaving the river behind 'em. Then
a trench was dug round about the camp,
and fortify'd with bucklers and palisadoes, fires
being made all the night. There was a little
fountain at the foot of a hill near the passa-
ge of the enemy's army: and as the Ottomans had
no other water than this, Timur sent a great
body of soldiers to destroy this fountain, and
corrupt the water.
When night came, Timur enter'd his closet as usual, to humble himself before God, and beseech him to give him the victory, when in the most devout manner he offer'd up the following prayer: "O Lord, who art the great creator of the universe, and my particular benefactor, it is of thy grace alone that I hold the victories I have obtain'd during the whole course of my life: for what am I? Does not the union betwixt my soul and body depend on thy will? And thus, Lord, what thou hast done for me, redounds to thy glory; and thou art, the conqueror and the triumphant. On this occasion therefore I beg the continuance of thy favor, which thou hast never yet refused me: why then should I despair?"

CHAP. XLVII.

Timur ranges his army in order of battle, to fight Bajazet.

Timur having spent the night in prayer, at break of day gave orders that the drums should be beat, and that every one should march out of the entrenchments with their arms, to prepare for battle. Then he rang'd his army in order. The left wing was commanded by the Mirzas Charoe and Calil Sultan, who had for their lieutenant-general the Emir Solyman Chah; and the vanguard of this left wing was led by the Mirza Sultan Husein, who had under him Ali Sultan. The right wing was under the command of the Mirza Miran Chah, who had for his lieutenant-general the Emir Cheik Noureddin; the vanguard of this wing was given to the
the Mirza Aboubeere, whose lieutenant was the Chup Emir Gehan Chab.

The main-body consisted of a vast number of the greatest lords in Asia; forty colonels at the head of their regiments were on the right, and as many on the left. The Mirza Mehemed Sultan was general of the whole body; and before him was carry'd the great staff, on whose top was a red horse-tail, and upon that a half-moon: he had for his lieutenants-general the Mirzas Pir Mehemed, Omar Cheik, Esquender, and other princes his brothers; with the Emirs Chamfeddin Abbas, Chamelic, Einas Coffe, and others. Timur commanded the body of reserve, compos'd of forty compleat companies well arm'd, with which he design'd to succour that part of the army which Shou'd have most need of assistance. He order'd several ranks of elephants to be placed at the head of the whole army, as well to intimidate the enemy, as to serve for trophies of the spoils of India. They were cover'd with the most splendid trappings, and as usual arm'd with towers on their backs, in which were plac'd archers and calivers of wild-fire, to spread terror and disorder wherever they Shou'd go.

Bajazer also took care to range his army in order of battle. The right wing was commanded by Petier Laut an European, his wife's brother, with twenty thousand cavalry of Europe, all arm'd in steel from head to foot, so that nothing cou'd be seen but their eyes. Their armor is fallen below the foot by a padlock, which except they open, their curtains and helmet can't be taken off.

The left was led by Musulman Chelebi son of Bajazer, and compos'd of the troops of Natulia. The main-body was under the command
mand of Bajzer himself, having for his lieutenants-general his three sons Moulla, Aifa, and Muffazi. The most skilful of his five sons, nam'd Meheined Chelebi, and fornam'd Kireche, was at the head of the rear, and had for his lieutenants Bajlah Pacha, Ali Pacha, Hasan Pacha, Mourad Pacha, Asude, and Pachadje, with a great number of brave captains.

Thus the Ottoman advanced in good order, and well equip'd, full of armor to come to blows with our Tartars, who were not less devisers of that than himself.

About ten in the morning, the infantry with their bucklers before them posted themselves on the neighboring hills. The drum was beat for the battle to begin, and the great cry Souron made, at the sound of the large trumpet Kervenai.

CHAP. XLVIII.

Timur gives Bajzer battle, and gains the victory.

The two armies rang'd in order of battle came in view of each other, being resolved either to conquer or die. The drums and little-drums were beat, and Timur got on his horse to go to prayers; following the counsel of the Santon Abdalla Kusarti: then he remounted, and gave orders for attacking the enemy.

The Mirza Abouheeret, at the head of the vanguard of the right wing, began the battle by a discharge of arrows on the enemy's left wing, commanded by Muffulman Chelebi, Bajzer's eldest son. The Emirs Geltuf Chat
and Cara Osman did wonders, breaking thro' the left wing. Kirichte, the most valiant of Tadjet's children, performed very noble actions; but when he had prov'd the strength and intrepidity of our soldiers, he found it impossible to resist 'em, and so took up a resolution to fly with his troops. The Sultan Hosham, who commanded the vanguard of our left wing, advanced vigorously upon the enemy's right, of whom he made a cruel slaughter. The Mirza Mehemed Sultan, on his knees besought Timur to give him leave to enter the field of battle, and our monarch perceiving our left wing had advanced too far, sent this Mirza to back it. He accordingly marched thither at the head of all the Behaders whom he commanded; and rushing full speed into the midst of the Ottoman army, he broke their ranks, and put 'em into great disorder. The Europeans on the other hand, falling upon our men, gave marks of a prodigious valor and invincible courage. Each party sometimes repuls'd its adversary, and were as often repuls'd by him: but at length our soldiers had the advantage by the death of prince Piri Lash, as also by the slaughter of the infantry of the enemy's right wing. The Mirzas Pir Mehemed, Omar Ciaheh and Eschender, with the Emirs Gemelic, Cieheh Noureddin and Berendae, chased the enemy's infantry from the hills where it was posted. Timur perceiving the enemy begin to give way, ordered the Mirzas and Emirs to fall upon the Ottomans with all the army. These generals accordingly advanced sword in hand, and quickly made a terrible slaughter, that the great

* The Behaders are the bravest men of the army, as the following are among us.*
The history of Timur-Bec.

Book V. battle between thofe of Iran and thofe of Toun-
ran, commanded by Roufom and Estendiar, was nothing in comparison to it. Part of the
Ottoman army was put to the sword, and the
rest fled.

While the Mirza Mehemed Sultan routed the
enemy’s right wing, fix companys belonging to
this Mirza ascended a hill, which properly was
their pell. Bajazer, observing their small num-
ber, attack’d em at the head of his main-body,
and having chased them from that pell, drew up
his own men there. Our soldiers having joined
the Mirza, rally’d; and being strengthen’d with
several regiments, return’d with design to at-

tack Bajazer’s main-body. The Ottoman em-
peror having carefully examin’d from the hill the
disposition of his army, and perceiving the dis-
order, or rather defeat, of his two wings,
was seiz’d with fear. And as several of his sol-
diers came to him, who had fled out of both his
right and left wing, Timur advance’d thither
himself with the Mirza Chahoe, and enter’d into
the midst of the enemy. The Mirza Miran
Chah, with the Emirs of the right wing, and
the Mirza Sultan Husein, with the Emir Solym-
man Chah, and others of the left wing, halt-
en’d thither likewise; and at the same time all
the troops, falling upon Bajazer, surroun-
ded him with his army, like beasts in the circle of
a chase. The Ottoman defended himself like a
brave hero, and skilful warrior: he maintained
his ground all the day, notwithstanding the mis-
erable state he was reduc’d to; and when night
was come, he descended from the hill, and fled.
Our soldiers discharged a shower of arrows upon
him, and slew several of his men, while him-
sell escap’d from that danger. Several of our
brave warriors pursu’d him sword in hand, kill-
The history of Timur-Bec.

... every one they met; and as the sun was in the sixth degree of Leo, it was so hot, that most of those who tied d'ay'd of thirst, there being no water in the place where they went to rest themselves.

After the battle Timur return'd to his camp, and gave thanks to God for this glorious victory. The Mirzas and Emirs on their knees congratulated him, and sprinkled upon him gold and precious stones. This victory happen'd on Friday the 19th of Zilcade 854, which answers to the year of the Horse.

CHAP. XLIX.

The taking of the Ottoman emperor, who is brought in chains before the throne of the conqueror.

BAJAZET could not fly so swiftly, but that he was overtaken by our brave men, who went in pursuit of him. The Sultan Mahmoud * Can seiz'd him, bound him as a prisoner, * Guard and sent him under a good guard to Timur, to whom he was presented at the hour of sun-set, with his hands bound, by the great Emirs. Timur perceiving him in this condition, could not suffer the tenderness of his heart; but was mov'd with compassion, and taking pity on the misfortune of so great a prince, order'd his hands to be unbound, and he to be brought before him with respect. When Bajazet was admitted to the chamber of audience, Timur went to receive him at the door of his tent, with great ceremony; and causing him to sit down by him, he deliver'd himself to him after this manner.

* Tho
The history of Timur-Bec.

Book V. 

Timur's speech to Bajazer.

...The accidents in this world happen thro' the will of God, and no one, how powerful soever, can conduct 'em as he pleases; yet it may be truly said, that you are the sole cause of the misfortunes which have befallen you. They are thorns which your-self have planted, and a net which you have wove. You have let your feet stray beyond their bounds, and have constrain'd me to march against you, to revenge my self for your insults. I con'd not resolve upon any thing, because I knew that your troops were always at war with the infidels. I have us'd all possible ways of mildness; and my intention was, if you had heark'n'd to my counsels, and consented to a peace, to have given you powerful succours, both of mony and troops, to carry on the war for religion with greater vigor, and to exterminate the enemys of Mahomet. To prove your friendship, I entreated you to deliver up the fortress of Keneac, and to send back the family and officers of Taharten; as also to drive out of your country Cara Yousef Turcoman, and send to my court an ambassador who might be confid'd in, to confirm the treaty of peace between us; but you haughtily refus'd to grant these small trifles, and contumaciously refused to grant these small trifles, and contumaciously refused. Every one knows, if God had favor'd you with the victory, as he has me, in what manner you design'd to have treated me and my army. Notwithstanding all this, to return thanks to God for my good fortune in this battel, I will neither treat you nor your friends ill; and you may rest satisfied as to that point.

Bajazer, full of confusion, confess'd his fault in these terms: "I have indeed done ill in not..."
The history of Timur-Bec.

following the counsel of a great an emperor, Chapter and have likewise received the punishment I merited. If your majesty is willing to pardon me, I swear that neither my self nor children shall turn aside from the paths of obedience to your orders.

Timur then gave him a splendid veil, and comforted him by kind promises, and by treating him as a great emperor. Bajazet perceiving Timur's generosity, remonstrated to him, that his children, Moula and Mullaha were with him in the battle; that his heart being tenderly affected to 'em, he besought him to order that fines might be made after 'em, and if living, that they might be brought to him; adding, that this would be an addition to the obligations he should be under to him during the remainder of his life.

Then the emperor order'd the Tavatchis to search every where for Bajazet's children; they found only Moula, whom they brought to Timur, who gave him a veil, and sent him to his father, for whom he had order'd a royal pavilion to be erected near his own, commanding Hafiz Ben-las and Bayazid Tchempai to keep guard at the gate, and furnish Bajazet with every thing he should want. Timur, in using Bajazet after this generous manner, imitated the great prophet Mahomet, who, after the conquest of Mecca, return'd thanks to God, and thus address'd the inhabitants: " How do you think I shall use you at this time? " They answer'd in the proverb: " You are a generous brother, and the son of a generous brother; and the generous man pardons when it lies in his power." Mahomet said to 'em, " I tell you the time that Joseph told his brethren, who had mis'rd him. I

V. II. R
Timur orders troops to make inroads in divers parts of the Ottoman empire. He sends relations of his victory to the cities of Iran and Tauran, with orders to make public rejoicings.

Timur then decamp'd, and went down to the meadow of Ancora, the governor of which place, nam'd Yacoub, came out to call himself at his feet, and beg his pardon, after having deliver'd up the castle to the officers of the court, who resign'd it to Ali Sultan Tartachi. Then the commissary of the Divan began to receive the tribute imposed on the inhabitants of conquer'd places, as a ransom for their lives.

Timur sent the Mirza Mehemed Sultan northwards to the city of Prusa* in Bithynia, the seat of the Ottoman empire; and he was accompanied by the Mirza Aboubecre, and the Emirs Ochan Chah, Cheik Nourreddin, Sevindjio, and others, with their Tomanis. The emperor order'd the Emir Cheik Nourreddin to stay at Prusa, and seize on all the treasures of Rajazet, and the riches of that city. He likewise commanded the Mirzas and Emirs to ravage all the country as far as to the banks of Ilara Yaca, otherwise

* Cal'd Broury by the Turks; it is situate at the foot of mount Olympus; and was the seat of the Ottoman empire, before the Turks took Adrianople.
* A hole towards Europe.
The history of Timur-Beg.

The history of Timur-Beg.

nam'd the defile of Alexander. He also sent the Chap. 30. 
Mirza Eskender with several Emirs towards Ieonim', Acehcher', Caraifer', Olaya', and Satala'.

Afterwards Timur order'd an account of his victory, and the conquest of the Ottoman empire, to be drawn up by Moullana Chamilladin Munchi, and sent into all the kingdoms of his empire, that public rejoicings might be made. One letter was dispatch'd to the empresses at Sultania; another to the Mirza Omar at Samarcand; another to the Mirza Pir Mehemed Gehanghir at Cabul and Zabul in India; another to the Mirza Rouflem at Chiraz, the seat of the kingdom of Persia; and others into Turkelian, Cachgar, Cotan, Bedaikhan, Corasiana, Carezem, Mazendram, Tabarellan, Ghilan, Azerbijana, Irar-Arab, Irar-Ageni, Kirman, Kidjet-Mecatia, and the maxim countries. The couriers who carry'd these letters had each of 'em a guide. On the arrival of one of them at Yezd, the Coja Cayseddin Sellar Semnani, who had resided there to receive Timur's revenues, built a magnificent chappel in the middle of the great square, which he nam'd the chappel of victory.

The Mirza Calil Sultan had orders to go with his troops to Samarcand, and from thence to the frontiers of Turkelian, and to take care of the limits of the kingdom; he was accompany'd by the Emir Mobacher and Doleh Timur Tavachi. As the Emir Aschouz, governor of Herat, was dead, the Emir Meesrab had orders to repair to that place, and accompany the Mirza as far as Corasiana, where he shou'd stop.


R 2  * Timur
Timur departed from Ancona, and in six days arrived at the fortress of Santhiaf, the walls of which place he ascended, and observed the neighborhood with circumspection. He sent the Mirza Charoe to Ghulhiifar, Eftanous, and Keria, with ten Tomans of the left wing. The emperor afterwards went in two days to Kilisurania, a delightful town, as well for the purity of the air, and the charming taste of the fruits, as for the beauty of its pleasure-houses, and the number of its fountains. As this place exceedingly pleased him, he staid here a month, and granted quarter to the inhabitants, on paying the accustom'd ransom to his commissaries, who at the same time lent on the goods which Timour Tach had laid up for a long time in this place. As soon as Timur was arriv'd there, he sent the Emirs Chamelic, Abdolkerim, and Hadji Seifeddin, with several captains of companies, to Kiarada, Coja Eili, and Mentechi.

Timur, being highly pleas'd with the conquest of Natalia, and the taking of the Ottoman emperor prisoner, resolved to make solemn feasts and rejoicings, to recreate himself after the fatigues of war. The most beautiful ladies of the court were at these diversions, where the best wines of Asia were drank, and the musicians performed extraordinarily. In the mean while the troops sent out to make inroads,

---

* Towns of Roum towards the north.
  1 A town of Roum northwards, long. 52° 31'. 41'.
  2 On Chalcedon, a noted city of Roum, long. 51° 41'.
  3 A town of Roum near Rhodes.
  4 A province of Roum near Rhodes.
  5 A province near Susata, which has a town of the same name.
plunder'd and ravag'd all Nafolia. The meanest soldier became in a manner a great lord by the booty he had gain'd; and he who before had not a single horse, was now master of several stallions throng'd with 'em. The whole army return'd thanks to their Creator, who had so enrich'd 'em. Timur distributed the treasures of Timur Tach among the Emirs, which were in the custody of the commissary; and he refer'd nothing for his own use, to show 'em that he fought rather for them, than for himself.

CHAP. XI.

The continuation of the History of the Mirza Mehemed Sultan, who had been sent to Prusa in Bithynia.

The Mirza Mehemed Sultan being departed from Ancora, for Prusa, according to the emperor's order, made so much haste in the five days he was marching, that of the thirty thousand horses he had, but four thousand arriv'd with him at Prusa. Yet he could not get there soon enough to execute the design he had in hand; for Mussulman Cherub had got there before him, and fled with all the treasures belonging to his father, which he could take along with him. The principal inhabitants of the city also fled with their effects and families, some to mount Olympus, otherwise nam'd Kechich Daghli, at the foot of which the city of Prusa is situate; and others to the sea-shore. Our soldiers pursu'd 'em, pillag'd and brought 'em away-bound. The grand Cherk Chamfalah Mehemed Jasari, with the chief men of Prusa, was
The history of Timur-Rec.

... was met in the plains of Kuyra, by the Charis Mehemed Bocari, and Chamseddin Fañari, and others, who were gone out to make inroads; they pillag'd the Cheik, and brought him with his son to the Emir Cheik Noureddin. Bajazet's wife and two daughters, who had hid themselves in a house in the town of Yenicheh, were taken; as was likewise the daughter of the Sultan Ahmed Gelair, king of Bagdad, whom Bajazet had demanded in marriage for his son Mustafe, and who fled at Prusa with her attendants, while her father return'd to Bagdad from the country of the Ottomans, to which he had fled for refuge from our troops.

As for Cara Youcef, as soon as our army arrived in the neighborhood of Caesarea in Cappadocia, he fled from Prusa to Hills, and from thence to the desert of Arabia.

After Prusa was reduce'd under the emperor's obedience with very little resistance, the Emir Cheik Nourreddin enter'd the castle, and seiz'd on what was left of Bajazet's riches, among which were a great deal of silver-money, vessels and furniture of gold and silver, pearls and precious stones, rich stuffs, splendid habits, and other curiosities which had been laying up together a long time. Ali Semnani and Seifeddin Touni, Bitlichis or secretaries to the imperial council, wrote an inventory of these riches.

When they had carry'd away the wealth of the place, the city and castle were pillag'd by the soldiers; and afterwards the houses were on fire, which being built of wood, were soon consum'd.

... four leagues from Prusa, and six days journey from Constantinople; the same as Yeniche.
As soon as the troops which had been left behind were arriv'd, the Mirza Mehemed Sultan march'd to the sea-shore, and sent to Nice the Mirza Aboubecre with ten thousand men; which is one of the most famous cities of Natoia, the air and water being very wholesome. Near it is a lake two days journey in circumference, whose water is exceeding sweet and agreeable. This city is situate near the Thracian Bosphorus.

Timur sent the Emir Sevindji with a great body of the army to Kianende, and along the sea-shore; and this Emir pillag'd all that country. The Mirza Aboubecre being come to Nice, march'd as far as the sea, laying and plundering all he met. Musulfan Chelebi was there with several peasants: but having again perceived the fury of our soldiers, he found it was impossible for the Ottomans, in ever so great numbers, to resist 'em: so he embark'd, and crossed the sea. A reasonable resort, says the proverb, is sometimes as good as a victory. Having pass'd the Bosphorus, he went to Sah Yaça; and his wife and effects fell into the hands of our soldiers. After the pillage of Nice, our soldiers ruin'd that town, and went as far as Yenicche, ravaging every thing, and making the people slaves. The Mirza Aboubecre sent advice of the taking of Nice to the Mirza Mehemed Sultan, adverting him that all the country was reduc'd under the emperor's obedience, and that Musulfan Chelebi was fled with great difficulty into Europe. The Mirza receiv'd this

* A city of Bithynia, famous for the first general council held in it: long. 46° 33', lat. 37°.
* A town on the gulf of Nice.
Book V. news at his camp in his meadow of Micalidge, of which he sent word to the emperor, as also of the state of other affairs, by a hundred men, who immediately departed. He also sent by the same persons a Chonear, which is a very large bird of prey, besides several other presents of great price. The Mirza Aboubeere also sent a Chonear by Ac Sultan.

Between Prufa and Kioutahia, which are two days journey from each other, is a mountain full of very close trees, above four leagues in length, into which several presents had tied for refuge; they attacked the Mirza's messengers in a desible with advantage. Our men, tho' far inferior to him, forced their ground, and thus Timur's good fortune, Melhem Coursnounchi Yefouri, Ismael Ahmed, Facrashin, Melhemed Caderer, and Kefar, defended themselves with so much bravery, that a great slaughter ensued; and the enemy were constrained to retreat, and let them pass by. They had the honor to salute the emperor at Kioutahia, and offer their presents, after having given him an account of all that had happened.

The Emir Cheik Noureddin having separated the gold and precious stones from the other riches of Bajazer's treasury, of which he had taken possession, delivered them to Chameddin Alma-leghi, whom he sent to Timur under a convoy of several brave men. Chameddin carry'd all to his highness at Kioutahia. The Mirza Melhemed Sultan being return'd from Micalidge, took up his quarters at Prufa, where he was join'd by the Mirza Aboubeere, who was come from making inroads. The Emir Sewindgie also came thither, after having pillag'd the villages on the sea-shore, and ruin'd Kuanende. Then the Mirza Melhemed Sultan decamp'd with all his troops,
troops, and went down to the meadow of Ye-Chap.1s.

nischeher, contiguous to that of Prusa, where
the Mirza Abosbeere, with the emperor's per-
mission, marry'd Bajazet's eldest daughter.

C H A P. LII.

Account of the Mirza Sultan Hussein, and
the Emir Solyman Chah, who were gone out
to make invades.

The Mirza Sultan Hussein, and the Emir
Solyman Chah, who were gone out to
make invades in the southern parts of Natoa,
plunder'd Kepec a Turkoman prince, and took
the towns of Achehker and Caraifer, in which
places the Emir Solyman Chah establish'd go-
\begin{verbatim}
    T
\end{verbatim}

\begin{verbatim}
    H E Mirza Sultan Hussein, and the Emir
    Solyman Chah, who were gone out to
    make invades in the southern parts of Natoa,
    plunder'd Kepec a Turkoman prince, and took
    the towns of Achehker and Caraifer, in which
    places the Emir Solyman Chah establish'd go-
    vernors to defend the inhabitants from miuls: He
    place'd Tcherkes Sourkei in Achehker, impos'd a
    tax on the towns for the ransom of the inhabitants
    lives, and plunder'd every one who oppos'd him.
    He pillag'd the town of Tchaker Boplagh, and
    the lord of Caoum Hamid: and feiz'd on so
    many horses, camels and sheep, that the soldiers
    were not able to bring 'em away. After having
    taken the town of Chechermata, he flop'd at
    Icium; he took the tribute of Gems from
    the soldiers he had made prisoners, which he
    sent to Timur. The Seid Coja, son of Cheik
    Ali Behader, went to the country of Ailin, which
    he ravag'd, killing all the enemies he met
    as far as the sea-shore. Bajazet's treasure was
    carry'd upon mules and camels to Kiourahia,
    where it was presented to Timur by the
\end{verbatim}

\begin{verbatim}

\[ The \textit{tribute due to a prince from captives}. \]

Emir
The history of Timur-Bec.

Book V. Emir Cheik Noureddin, with Bajazet's family, and his beautiful slaves, who were good dancers, could sing well, and play finely upon music. The generous emperor sent to Bajazet his wife, nam'd Dellina*, daughter of Lains an European, with his daughter and all his domestics; but he was desirous that that princess, who till then had been tolerat'd in the Christian religion, even in Bajazet's seraglio, shou'd embrace Mahometanism. The Cheik Chamreddin Mehemel Jazari, who had been carry'd away prisoner of war, was likewise present'd to the emperor. They brought to court the Emir Mehemel, son of Caraman, who had for twelve years been kept in chains by Bajazet; Timur honor'd him with a veil and belt, and gave him the government of all the province of Caramanis, with Iconium, Larenta, Acervai, Anzarya, Alaya†, and their dependences; and thro' the protection of our monarch, all these provinces remain'd without opposition in the hands of this Emir, and after him in his children.

C H A P. LIII.

Timur departs from Kioutahia.

After Timur had stay'd a month at Kioutahia in the delights of banquets and plays, he departed from thence, and was join'd

* The EuropeanRomancertell hereczara, and say this Timur kept her for his own use; the truth of which the authour denies.
† City of Narolia.
in his way by the Mirza Mehemed Sultan, who Chap. 53, had left the Emir Chamseddin Abbas with the baggage at Cheherno *, and was set out with the Mirza Aboubeere, the Emir Gehan Caah, sickne, and Sevindgie Behader, to return to court, where he kiss’d the ground before the emperor, and offer’d his presents.

Timur, who as emperor was oblig’d to take care both of church and state, illu’d out a severe order that the brave Sainto Maire and his brother Mourad should be put to death, for several crimes they had committed; and that even his son and other brothers should be sought for, and treated in the same manner; which order was immediately put in execution.

The Mirza Mehemed Sultan, with the Mirza Aboubeere, and the Emirs of his court, return’d to join the baggage, which had been left at Profs and Cheherno. Timur march’d towards Tangualiq, pass’d the mountain of Aleumstach, and encamp’d in an agreeable meadow near it. He then gave orders that the Coja Firouz, prince of Iíra Yace, should be put to death; and he afterwards made preparations for feasts and banquets, with music and dancing; and the wine was serv’d about by the most beautiful damsels of the country. Timur invited Bajazet to these entertainments; that as he had ral’d the bitterness of his wrath, he might also partake of the sweetness of his friendship. Bajazet was conducted into the assembly with great honors, and Timur did every thing he cou’d to please him: he spair’d neither carkes, nor expressions of kindness and affection; and in fine, he even granted him the investiture of the kingdom of Natolla, which he had possess’d before his disgrace: then the crown was plac’d on his head, and the scepter put into his hand, with the
The history of Timur-Bec.

Book V. the patents usually given to princes for their governments: After this last Timur departed, and continued his road towards Tangestan.

CHAP. LIV.

Timur dispatches couriers into divers countries. The arrival of several ambassadors.

TIMUR sent the doctor Bedreddin Ahmed, son of the Cheik Chamieddin Mohemed Lazari, into Egypt, in quality of ambassador to the Sultan Furudge son of Baroco, the subject of whose embassy was comprised in this letter.

"By the grace of the Almighty, the empire of Natolia is now reduced under our authority, and joined to our dominions. Our will at present is, that the money which is coined at Grand-Cairo, and throughout all Egypt, have our inscription; and likewise that the prayer of the Court be made in our august name, and with our titles. We will also that without delay you send Atliminh to our court; and if, inspired by your evil genius, you don't readily execute these orders, we let you know, that at our return from the Ottoman country, which will be shortly, we shall march to Grand-Cairo at the head of our ever-victorious army. And that you may not pretend ignorance, we send you this ambassador, whose merit you are sufficiently acquainted with."

Bedreddin departed, with full instructions the 25th of Rabimeler 823, accompanied by several couriers, who carried relations of the conquest of Natolia into Syria, with orders to make public
public rejoicings. Moulana Omar conducted Chap. 34 the ambassador as far as Sarafin, where he embark'd for Alexandria, from whence he was to go to Cairo; and Omar return'd after they had set sail.

Timur likewise sent two ambassadors to Constantinople, vulgarly nam'd Edembol, to the Tecour, or Greek emperor, to summon him to pay the tribute and customs. He afterwards sent two mesengers to find out Mussulman Chelebi, Bajazer's son, who had fled to Iira Yazd, and resided at Ghuzahilma, which his father had built over against Constantinople. These messengers had orders to tell him that he must repair to court forthwith, or at least send some mony to Timur; otherwise the army would immediately cross the sea to seek him, which he would have cause to repent. Some time after, the ambassadors who had been sent to the Greek emperor return'd, accompany'd with two others, who came to make their master's submission to Timur. They had the honor of an audience, and having notified the Tecour their master's respects and obedience to his highness's orders, they declared his consent to pay an annual tribute, and the customs, and to do every thing he could desire of him. At length the ambassadors offer'd their presents, which consisted of gold florins, and several curiosities. Timur impos'd on 'em the tribute he thought reasonable; and they confirm'd it by a solemn treaty. Afterwards he gave 'em victual, and permitted 'em to return home.

* A town in Europe, built by Britons. There is another of the same name in Ismbula, near Tar, on the river Mus-
The history of Timur-Bec.

Book V. When Timur was arriv'd at Boulook *, he was join'd by the messengers he had sent to Mufulman Chelebi; and with them came the Cheik Ramadan in quality of ambassador, with several presents of animals, horses and florins. This ambassador, who was a very illustrious person, having been prime minister to Bajazet, and grand Cadi of the empire, brought a letter from his master to Timur in these terms. "I have the honor to call my self your highness's servant. If you have had the goodness to pardon my father, and have done him the honor to grant him a place in your imperial assembly, according to his rank: I have all the reason in the world to confide in your highness's bounty; and whenever you shall order it, I will come to the foot of your imperial throne, and perform the duties of a faithful servant in whatever you shall please to command me."

Timur receiv'd the letter and the ambassador's speech very graciously, and return'd the following answer. "All that ought to have happen'd in this affair has happen'd: fate has executed its project. We have pardon'd all that is past; and to your matter need only come here without any fear, that there may remain no more animosity between us, but that I may give him some marks of my favor." Then Timur present'd a belt and a cap of gold to the ambassador, and dismissed him.

Advice was afterwards brought that the Sultan Mahmoud Can, titular emperor of Zagatai, who by Timur's order was gone to make inroads in the Ottoman country, had been seiz'd with a violent distemper at Ketchie Bourlough.

---

* A town of Nalcia, long. 61. lat. 40.
and had pass'd from this world into the other: Chap. xii. at which news Timur was very much afflict'd.

In the mean while the Emirs ravag'd the maritime countries of Natolia. The Emir Chamelie pillag'd Ketchic Bourlough, Aycara, and Satalia, situate on the sea-shore. The Cheiks Ali Seblai and Hadji Selduz were slain. The provinces of Mentechea and Teke Eili were afterwards ruin'd, and the Emirs return'd to court laden with booty. During autumn Timur lay encamp'd at Tangouliq, to which place the Seid Coja return'd, after having pillag'd Aidin. As it was exceeding hot, and the air infected at Tangouliq, several soldiers fell sick and died; and even Seid Coja was near the point of death, but the joy he conceiv'd at the good reception his highness gave him, reicer'd him to his health.

In this place is a fountain, whose water purifies when it flagonates; and some soldiers, who being ignorant of its effects, had drank of it, lost their lives.

C H A P. IV.

Timur regulates the winter-quarters.

TIMUR held a council with the Mirzas and great Emirs touching the distribution of the winter-quarters: he appointed a town to each colonel, and sent orders to the Mirza Mehemed Sultan to pass the winter at the town of Magni Siah in the province of Serhan Eili. * Or So-
This Mirza departed from Prat to Micaldige, where

* Long. 60. lat. 40.
where he stay'd several days; from whence he march'd to Ballyktra, which he pillag'd, and encamp'd in a meadow. In the night he was attack'd by Elias Soubachi at the head of a number of peasants, of which Velador had given advice, too late; for the enemy came to surprize our camp, while part of the soldiers were gone to make inroads, and the others were asleep in the camp without any precaution. The Mirza immediately took horse, and fall'd out of the camp; and the Emir Gehan Chah with the other Emirs having join'd him, they fell upon the enemy, and having slain several, and constrain'd the rest to fly, they encamp'd in that meadow, till the Mirza's equipage arriv'd there. The Emirs Gehan Chah and Serindgi were sent from this place to the town of Birana to pillage it. The Mirza after that went to Magul Siah, where he pass'd the winter; this town is situate at the foot of a mountain, well'd by many rivulets, the waters of which are wonderfully good, and the air is sweet, even in winter.

The Mirza Charoc, with the troops of the left wing, had the province of Ghermyan-Eili for his winter-quarters; and he encamp'd between Oloue-Bourlough and Ketchic-Bourlough.

Timur departed from Tangouzliq, and march'd to Dougourliq, a town full of goods and all sorts of delicious fruits, to the inhabitants of which he granted quarter on the payment of the tribute for their ransom. Then he cross'd the river of Mendouras * on a bridge which Temur-tach had built, and encamp'd on the other side.

* Or Madre, a river which passes by Tiro in Namia, and Aidin, and falls into the Archipelago.
where he gave audience to the Emirs Mehemed Chas, and Esfendiari, sons of the Emir Mehemed prince of Mentecha, who made him a present of a thousand horses. Timur, after giving them an honorable reception, presented them with a veil, a belt and a crown. Esfendiari follow'd the court, and Mehemed contented to pay the tax, and return'd to the place of his residence, with the receivers Elias Cotehin, Firouz Chah, and Mirouz Chah Cherbetdar. Timur being arriv'd at Ghurzehillusar, stay'd there some days till the entire payment of the ransom was made. Near this place was a mountain, in which two hundred peasants had fortify'd themselves: these rash fellows slew and pillag'd our soldiers, who were gone out to fetch in wood and forage. Timur being inform'd of this, resolv'd to attack 'em in the night. Several of our soldiers who were enrag'd, invalet the mountain, and at break of day fell upon these villains, whom they cut in pieces, and afterwards return'd to the camp. The doctor Abdulgobbar Carizmi fell sick, and died in this place.

Timur departed some days after from Ghurzehillusar, and went to encamp at Ayathlic, where he stay'd several days: he order'd em to pay the tribute for their ransom, and establisht a governor, and a comptroller of the finances. From hence he went to encamp before Tire, one of the most noted cities of Natolla, the inhabitants of which he oblig'd to pay the ransom for their lives: and those who were gone with the Emir Mehemed prince of Mentecha, to receive the sums these people were tax'd at, return'd loaded with ready money, jewels and divers curiosities, and bringing with 'em several horses and other beasts, from this Emir; all which they presented to Timur.
In the mean while the emperor was inform'd that there was an exceeding strong place on the sea-shore, built of free-stone, surrounded with the sea on three sides, and on the other with a deep ditch, entirely built with lime and mortar, from the foundation to the top; that it was inhabited by Europeans, and nam'd Esmir or Smyrna; that the Greeks esteem it a holy place, and go in pilgrimage thither with great devotion; that near it is another fortress on the ridge of a mountain, also nam'd Esmir, but inhabited by Muslims, who incessantly wage war with the others, because of the difference of their religion; and as the Smyrna of the Christians is surrounded by the sea on three sides, the Europeans supply 'em with ammunition and all necessaries, looking upon this place as of great importance, seeing it is at the extremity of Asia and of the Muslim country; that it had never been taken by any Mahometan prince, nor paid tribute to any; that Amurat, Bajazer's father, had several times appear'd before it at the head of a formidable army, but to no purpose; and that Bajazer had laid siege to it seven years in vain; that this place, as strong as that of Caiber*, very much molested the Muslims, whose blood was always flowing into the sea like torrents.

* A place celebrated in the oriental romances.
C H A P. LVI.

Timur besieges Smyrna, and takes it.

When Timur was informed of the state of Smyrna, his zeal for religion inspired him with the thoughts that it was his duty to deliver the Mussulmans from troubles, by exterminating their enemies. Whereupon he sent thither the Mirza Pir Mehemed, son of Omar Cheik, the Emir Cheik Noreddin, and others, to summon 'em forthwith to embrace the Mussulman religion, according to Mahomet's order; which if they should be so fortunate as to do, they should be well treated, and partake of his favors; and if they would leave their obstinacy, tho' they still remained Christians, and pay the tribute, he would fix the sum, and order the rector; but if they undertook to defend themselves, he would order 'em all to be put to the sword.

The Mirzas and Emirs being arrived before Smyrna, sent an ambassador to invite the inhabitants to turn Mussulmans, as well by promises as threats; but as they were resolved to perish, it all proved in vain. Mahinous, the governor, had sent to demand succours of all the European princes, so that there was assembled a great number of the bravest Christian captains, or rather a band of desperate wretches, who had laid up ammunition in the place. Our generals sent advice of all this to Timur, who resolved to march thither in person. He left the baggage at the foot of the mountain of Tiro; and tho' it was winter, and great rains had fallen, yet
yet he took horse that he might acquire the me-
rit of this religious war. He arriv’d at Smyrna
on Saturday the sixth of Jumazig, 865, and
sent orders to the Mirza Mehemed Sultan, who
was in his winter-quarters at Magni-Siah, to
repair to him. The same order was sent to
the Mirzas Miran Chah and Aboobeere, as also
to the Emir Gehan Chah and others.

At Timur’s arrival before Smyrna, the drums
and kettle-drums were beat, and the great cry
made by the whole army. The place was im-
mediately attack’d on the land-side; and each
general order’d the lappers to work, and the
machines and battering-rams to be got ready
over against his respective post: while arrows
were shot, and pots of wild-fire thrown upon
the gates of the castle. The Emir Chamelle
built in the midle of the water, great scaffold-
with three feet, near one another, on which
they laid planks: and from the two sides of
the castle, to the place where the feet of the
scaffold touch’d the ground, they made an
even way, which they set up on each side, so
that the soldiers might fight upon it with safery,
as if they were on land. The Mushumans,
arm’d with their bucklers, mounted the scaffold,
from whence they gave assaults upon the
castle: and as the way was shut up to the sea-
side, it was impossible to bring any succour to
the besieged.

In the mean while the Mirzas Mehemed Sulta-
nan and Miran Chah arriv’d, having left the
baggage at Magni-Siah under the conduct of the
Emir Chamfeddin Abbas: which reinforce-
ment did not a little serve to forward the
sige. Then Timur order’d a general assault.
The Emirs of Tomans, and the colonels of
Hazaar, advance’d with their troops, against
their
...their respective posts; and the attack lasted from morning till evening, and from evening till morning; wherein the bravest men of both sides perform'd actions of the greatest valor. If the attack was carry'd on with resolution, the defence was equally so. The battering-rams and other machines beat down the walls and towers; and the dauntless besiegers never ceased throwing pots of naphtha and wild-fire, arrows and stones. In the mean while it rain'd in such abundance, that a second deluge seem'd approaching; notwithstanding which, the indefatigable Timur was always giving orders to his generals, and exciting his soldiers. After the sappers had done undermining, and prov'd up the battlements and courtains with stakes, they put in a great number of false doors over with naphtha; which having let on fire, the walls on a sudden fell down, and with 'em several of the besiegers, who were thereby destroy'd. The Musulmans forc'd the enemy to quit the breaches, and then enter'd the place, returning thanks to God, and crying out, 'Halleluia!' A few few'd slaugher by casting themselves into the sea, and swimming to the vessels; while others were drown'd. After our soldiers had put the inhabitants of Smyrna to the sword, they raz'd the houses, as well of the city as of the cattle, calling their arms and movable goods into the sea. There were come from certain parts of Europe great ships nam'd Carack, with two masts, and some with more, which brought over soldiers and arms to favour the inhabitants. When they were come near the place, and beheld the town and cattle in ruins, they were struck with fear, and anchor'd. Timur order'd that some of the Chrisians heads should be thrown into these ships, which the slingers of wild-fire ac-

S 3
The history of Timur-Bec.

The mariners seeing their companions' heads, return'd in fear, and frustrated of their hopes. From the beginning of the siege to the ruin of the place there pass'd but two weeks; which very much astonish'd the men of that country, who were acquainted with the strength of the place; and especially Bajazet. Everyone acknowledg'd that Timur was the greatest and most formidable monarch that ever appear'd in Asia. The author of this history in his travels afterwards pass'd by the walls of Smyrna, which then belong'd to the Musulmans; and one of his companions having related to him the history of this place, the author express himself in these words: "Smyrna hath been ruin'd by Timur in less than two weeks, the the Ottoman emperor in vain believ'd it seven years; judge from hence the power and conduct of each of 'em."

CHAP. LVII.

Second arrival of ambassadors from Bajazet's sons.

During these transactions the Cheik Ramadan, who came once before in quality of ambassador to Timur from Musulman Chelebi, arriv'd here again; and being admitted to an audience, offer'd large presents of horses and other animals, curious stuffs, and florins of gold; and with abundance of submission made the following speech: "I take the liberty to represent to your highness, that since you have been pleas'd to pardon the emperor Bajazet, and load him with honors and favors, every
one is freed from the fears he was in, and even hopes for advancement thro your highness's benevolence. The prince Mufiulman my master, who looks upon himself as one of the meanest servants of your court, and is resolv'd to obey the orders with which you shall honor him, with all imaginable sincerity, waits with impatience for an opportunity to give you the true marks of his respect, and his desire to expose his life in your highness's service, to whom may God continue ever- lusting glory and prosperity.

The ambassador having ended his speech, Timur was touch'd with compassion for the deplorable condition to which Mufiulman was reduc'd: he confirm'd him in the principality of all the country of Ifra Yaca, by which he confer'd a patent, which he seal'd as usual with his red seal; he honor'd the ambassador with a magnificent vellum, and a horse richly caparison'd, with a saddle of gold; and having given him a vellum robe with gold, a crown, and a belt for Mufiulman Chelebi, he dismissed him.

About the same time arriv'd an ambassador, nam'd Catoobeddin, from Ifra Chelebi, another of Bajazet's sons: being admitted to an audience, he kiss'd the earth, and made his presents; which Timur having accepted, the ambassador deliver'd his message, declaring his master's respect, and obedience to whatever his highness should order. Then he return'd, after having receiv'd the usual honors, and the testimonials of friendship for his master.

Timur afterwards gave orders to the Mirza Mehemed Sultan to besiege the castle of Fodgia.*

* Ifra Yaca is Turkey in Europe.
* A town on the gulf of Smyrna.
The history of Timur-Bec.

Book V.

Situare on the lea-shore, a day's journey from Smyrna, because several European Christians had retreated thither. The Mirza immediately departed, and encamp'd before it; and was about to besiege it in form, when the governors of the place flung with terror at the name of Timur, came out to call themselves at the Mirza's feet; and with submission and obedience gave consent to pay the tribute, provided quarter was granted the inhabitants. The Mirza agreed to their proposal, imposed a tribute on 'em, and nam'd commissaries to receive it; after which he return'd with his Emirs and troops to Magni-Siah, where he had left his baggage.

CHAP. LVIII.

Timur departs from Smyrna.

After the destruction of Smyrna, and the extirpation of the enemy of the law, Timur took care to restore peace and quiet to the Mussulmans who inhabited the other castle, giving 'em vests, bucklers, curasses, haws and arrows, sabres, lances, and all sorts of arms, to enable 'em to carry on the war of religion in these frontiers against the Europeans, and hinder the Grecian Christians ever falling into Asia this way; and he order'd 'em to build a strong citadel near the place where Smyrna stood.

After Timur had deliver'd the Mussulmans from the continual insults they receiv'd from the Christians of Smyrna, loaded 'em with favors, and succor'd 'em with arms and money, he departed from this country, and went to encamp
at Ayazlic, where he was join'd by the Emir Chap. 58. Solyman Chah, who had departed from Ancora to make inroads; return'd by Esonac, and join'd the Mirza Charoe at Caraigadje; but he came alone to court, and after his audience went back to join the said Mirza.

An European nam'd Soba, prince of the island of Chio, in which maltich grows, having heard by credible persons of the great valor and power of Timur, sent him several presents by an ambassador, whom he order'd to acquaint him that he was one of his meanest servants, willingly contented to pay the tribute, and was ready to obey his highest's orders, hoping Timur would design to give him some marks of his clemency. The ambassador being arriv'd at the imperial camp, was admitted to an audience, where he made an harangue in the form his master had instruct ed him. Timur handsomely receiv'd the king of Chio's offer of service, promised protection to him and his subjects; and after having fix'd the sum for a tribute, made a peace with him; he gave a veil to the ambassador, whom he honor'd, and permitted to return home.

Timur then sent the Mirza Eskender, son of Omar Cheik, and Ali Sultan Tavachi, to plunder the country of Bezem; they enter'd the capital of it, and having taken the ransom for the inhabitants lives, return'd to the imperial camp.

After this Timur decamp'd from Ayazlic, and being arriv'd at Tangazliq, he was join'd by the Mirza Mehemed Sultan, who had left his winter-quarters at Magni-Siah, and having taken the road of Alichecher before the rest, came
to court with a small number of his domestics. Timur ordered him to march at the head of the troops of the right wing by the road of Ancona, and rejoin the imperial camp at Cefarea. This Mirza landed at Tangouziq till all his troops had joined him. Timur departed from thence for Sultanhillar; he ordered a great number of peasants, who were got together in the neighboring mountains, to be put to the sword; and he gave the towns of Chuontahia, Tangouziq, and Caracheher, as well as the demesne of the province of Ghermanyane-Eili, to Yacoub Chelebi, to whom the principality of these provinces fell by right of succession. This Yacoub had formerly fled from Bajazet into Syria, after the conquest of which kingdom he followed Timur's court. The emperor issued out his patents to this purpose; and honoring him with a vest and belt, left him in this place, the principality of which remains in the hands of his children to this day.

The court took the road of Olour-Bouriough, where it was joined by the Mirza Charoe, who was come from his winter-quarters. As this place had not, yet surrendered, Timur gave orders that it should be attacked. It was taken in a very short time; and as the Emir Cefalehi was slain by an arrow, all the men were put to the sword, and the women carried away captive, after the razing of the place.
CHAP. LIX.

Taking of the towns of Egridur and Nasibine.

In the province of Hamid-Eli is a lake of sweet water, five leagues in length, and four in breadth, into which several rivers fall, and go out again by other passages; and round it are kitchen-gardens, orchards, and cultivated lands. On the bank of the lake stands a town nam'd Egridur, built of free-lime; three of its sides are surrounded by the lake, and the fourth by the mountain. This lake is nam'd Falae Abad by some historians. Near the town, in the middle of the lake, are two isles: one nam'd Ghulifan, and the other Nasibine: in the latter, which is exceeding large, is built a fortress with houses and gardens. The people of the neighboring places had convey'd thither their money and belts of cloth; and abundance of soldiers were got into it, who had laid up stores of all sorts of ammunition, believing themselves safe, because of the lake which surrounds the place. Timur being inform'd of all this, conceiv'd it would redound to his honor to conquer this place: whereupon he order'd the baggage to be conducted by the road of Akcheher.

About this time Bajazet falling sick, Timur order'd several skilful physicians of his court, as Moulim Azeddin, Mafaoud Chirazi, and Moulim Gelaleddin Arab, to attend him with the same care as they would use towards himself; and Bajazet was conducted with the baggage.
Timur departed from Olone-Bourlagho, and in two days and one night arriv'd at Egirdur the 17th of Regels 803 in the morning. Next day the Mirzas and Emirs march'd towards the walls of the town; some ascended the mountain, while others attack'd the gate by the foot of the mountain; they gave assauts on all sides, and soon made themselves masters of the town, which they enter'd in a furious manner, and put most of the inhabitants to the sword, a few only escaping to Nahibine in boats.

Then Timur caus'd floats to be made of the skins of oxen and horses, on which the Mirzas and Emirs row'd over to attack Nahibine, which they surrounded, ordering the drums to be beat, and the great cry made. The inhabitants were surpriz'd, not imagining they could have been besieged by water. The governor Cheili Baba, perceiving he was unable to defend himself, went out, and besought the Mirzas to intercede for him. They brought him to Timur, before whom he kiss'd the ground, submissively begging pardon and quarter. Timur order'd that he and his family shou'd follow the army. Thus Nahibine was taken by our troops, who brought to the camp all the riches they could find, which Timur distributed among 'em.

Then Mehabet's son arriv'd from the Mirza Mehemed Sultan, to give notice that this prince was fallen sick. Timur was exceedingly griev'd, and sent a skilful physician to him immediately, to discover the true state of his illness, and bring him back certain advice of it.

The court at length decamp'd, and march'd toward Akheheres, they met the troops of the left wing, and the Mirza Charcok's camp. This prince made a feast for Timur, and offer'd his presents; as did likewise the Sultan Huslein and the
the Emir Solyman Chah, who strove to excel each other in entertaining the emperor. At this time the Emir Mehemed Caraman came to court from Iconium; and under the name of a ransom, he presented such vast sums of silver, money, curious limbs, and great numbers of horses and camels, that it was believe'd he did more than he was able, considering the small extent and power of his country; upon which Timur distinguished him by several honors, and confirm'd him in his principality. As the emperor had before deliver'd him from prison, where he was detain'd by Bajazet, and had restored to him his father's estates, so he again join'd other countries to his dominions, and dismiss'd him; after which the court departed, and continu'd its march.

C H A P. L X.

The death of the Ottoman emperor Bajazet, and of the Mirza Mehemed Sultan, Timur's grandson.

THE world is so inconstant, that we may rather look upon it as a continual destruction, than an agreeable habitation, since there is nothing of a certain duration but God: a melancholy instance of which we find in Bajazet, who died of an apoplexy at Alchebey on Thursday the 14th of Chaban 805; at whose death Timur March 23; was so extremely affected, that he bewail'd the misfortune of that great prince with tears. He began to reflect how providence often baffles human projects; for he had reform'd, as soon as he had finish'd the conquest of Natolia, to raise the
The history of Timur-Bec.

Book V. dejected spirit of Bajazet, by re-establishing him on the throne with greater power and magnificence than he had before been possess'd of; but fate had otherwise order'd it.

Timur being got to the frontier of Akcheher, Danç Coja arriv'd from the Mirza Mehemed Sultan, with advice that doctor Farrudge had given some medicine to the prince, which had had an ill effect; and that the vapors having got into his brain, he was fallen into a delirium. This news very much afflicted the emperor, who dispatch'd away Danç Coja post, to acquaint the Mirza that he would soon be with him.

Timur encamp'd at Akcheher, where he confer'd Bajazet's officers by several largesses he bestow'd upon 'em. He made a present to his son Moulla Chelebi of a royal vest, a belt, a sword, and a quiver enrich'd with precious stones, a load of gold, and thirty horses; he likewise gave him his letters-patent seal'd with the impression of his red hand; and then dismiss'd him, telling him that the coffin of the deceased emperor his father was laid by his orders in the tomb of the Cheik Mahmoud Hairan at Akcheher; and that it shou'd be convey'd to Prusa with all the pomp and magnificence us'd to the greatest kings, to be inter'd in the mausoleum, which he had built there himself.

Timur then left the baggage, and departed from Akcheher, for the place where the Mirza his grandson lay sick. On his way thither he learnt that the lord of Turcomans nam'd Durgot, whose chiefs were Kezerbei and Ibrahim, had revolted, and were entrench'd in a mountain near the great road, hoping to defend themselves there. Some troops being order'd against 'em, they block'd up all the avenues, and invested the mountain; and then attacking the Durgots with their
their arrows, they fled. Our soldiers pursu'd Chapa- 
' em with sword in hand, slew several on the spot, 
plag'd their horses, camels, oxen and sheep; 
and made their wives and children slaves, to 
serve as an example to mariners.

The sixteenth of Chaban, Timur met Dolet March 25.
Caja Ion of Eltehi Bouga, who gave advice that the 
Mirza's sickness increasing, his life was de-
spair'd of. This oblig'd Timur to hasten his 
march; and being come to the place where he
was, he went up to his bed-side, where finding 
im very ill, having lost his speech, he became 
very disconsolate. Timur order'd the Mirza to 
be put in a litter, and departed the same day.

When they had march'd three days journey, and
were come near Carahiijar, they encamp'd; 
and here the great and mighty prince, the Mirza 
Mehemed Sultan, who was but nineteen years 
old, pass'd from this life into the other, on the 
18th of Chaban 805, which answers to the 
year of the Sheep, the sun being in the tail 
degree of Pisces. Thus died this great prince, 
who tho but a child in a manner, had already 
obtain'd more victories, and perform'd greater 
actions of valor, than many famous heroes re-
corded in history.

\[A cry long. 70. 1st. 58.\]
Mourning for the death of the Mirza Muhamed Sultan: and the translation of his coffin.

The natural love which fathers bear towards their children, was not the only motive that afflicted Timur for the death of the Mirza; but the great thing which this young prince's virtue promis'd, were the principal cause of his excessive grief: he flung his crown aside, and quitted his throne, rent his clothes, and call himself upon the ground in the most surprizing transports of grief. This caus'd a great change in his temper: and in this delightful season of the spring, instead of being cheerful, the princes and lords of the court cloth'd themselves with hair-sacks, and black and blue habits, with felts about their necks. The ladies did the same; and they sprinkled earth upon their heads, and fill'd their bosoms with stones: they would take no rell but upon chaff and ashes, instead of bedding; and nothing cou'd be heard in the court but groans and lamentations, especially from the princes Canike, wife of the deceased, who was so overcome with sorrow, that she often fell into swoons, and lost her senses.

Such is the hated course of affairs in this world: we shou'd not place our confidence in it, for those who do, will at last repent; but we belong to God, and must return to him. Timur order'd the Mirza's coffin to be convey'd in a litter to Avenic by two hundred horsemen, commanded by seven Emirs; and that
that, when they arrived there, Ouziaf and Ch. 47.
Ourdouche, shou’d lay the corps in a new coffin,
and carry it to the tomb of the prophet Gadar
in the town of Sultanie, from whence it was
afterwards to be translated to Samarcand; and
the likewise gave order that the other five Emirs
shou’d lay at Avenie with a letter and an empty
coffin, whose covering shou’d be stak’d up.

After their departure Timur return’d to the
camp, and then set out from the meadow of
Alchecher to continue his journey. The grief was
beyond comparison; and not only the courtiers,
but even the soldiers of the army, never cease’d
from weeping. When they had march’d some
days journey in this condition, the principal
Emirs and ministers of State came to the emperor,
rung on their faces, remonstrated to him,
that all the soldiers of the army continu’d in
such excessive grief, that nothing was ever like
it; that the continuation of this grief did not
become the majesty of so august a court; that it
was better he shou’d arm himself with patience,
and endeavor to comfort his royal heart. To
at last persuaded Timur, tho’ with great difficulty,
to compose his mind, and live after his
usual manner; so he gave orders for every one
to leave off their mourning habilis, as being of
no advantage to the deceased.

CHAP. LXII.

Arrival of ambassadors from Egypt.

When Timur’s ambassadors, whom we
before mention’d, were arriv’d at Grand-
Cairo, they found a handsom reception. Par-
V. o. i. 2
udge,
Book V: Rudge, son of Barco, surnamed Elmalekennaf, king of Egypt and Syria, having been informed that his father had paid his respects to Timur and Bajazet, whom he had esteemed the most powerful prince in the universe, was now convinced that it would be wrong to think of dealing with Timur upon any other foot than that of an entire submission and perfect obedience; and he repented of the difficulty his father and himself had made of sending back Atilmich. He thereupon held a council with the principal persons of state, and with their approbation released Atilmich out of prison, admitted him to an audience, treated him in an honorable manner, and made divers apologies for what he had done. He caused the money to be coined, and the prayers read in the august name and titles of Timur; and sent back Atilmich, with two ambassadors, Ahmed and Acha, beseeching Atilmich to be his intercessor at the court. Farrudge order'd his ambassadors to make known to Timur his repentance for his former faults; his consent to pay the annual tribute, and what he had done in relation to the money and the public prayers. He sent as a present, by the same persons, abundance of gold and silver mony, precious stones, belts, Alexandrian flints, swords of Cairo, horses of a fine breed, and other curiosities.

As soon as they entered the frontiers of the Ottoman country, Atilmich set out before the court; and having the honor to salute the emperor, he informed his highness of the affairs of Egypt, and of the Sultan and people's fears. The ambassadors soon arrived at court, and being admitted to an audience, declair'd to the emperor the intentions of the Sultan their master, and offer'd their presents.
The history of Timur-Bec.

Timur was again pleas'd to shew his clemency to the king of Egypt, and spoke to 'em as follows: "I know that Farrudge took his father when very young; which will make it my glory to take care of this young prince, and be to him as a father. If he continues firm in his obedience, which is the only way of securing himself, we will give him testimonys of our benevolence, and grant him succours, with which he may preserve his kingdom, provided he zealously continues in the service of the two holy cities of Mecca and Medina." He afterwards presented veits, belts, and crowns to the ambassadors, and permitted 'em to return home; giving 'em a crown, a royal mantle, and a belt enriched with precious stones, for the Sultan Farrudge their matter, to whom he promis'd his protection.

CHAP. LXIII.

Timur marches against the Caratatari, or black Tartars.

CARATATAR is a nation of Turks, which Hulacou Can lifted into his army when he was sent into Iran by Mangou Can, emperor of the Moguls. Hulacou being establisht on the throne at Tauris, and having experience'd the malice of this wicked people, oblig'd 'em to reside with their families in the fron-

* All Mahometan princes take upon 'em the title of the servants of the two cities of Mecca and Medina.
* Brother of Mangou Can, and grandson of Goughie Can the great.
The history of Timur-Bec.

Book V. AD. 1520.

To the tiers of Nattolia and Syria. When by the death of the grand Can Ahoufald, there remain'd no longer in Iran any absolute emperor of the race of Genghis Can, this people revolted, and divided themselves into fifty-two hords, every hundred chusing a particular residence, being all resolv'd to live independent. When Bajazer, after the reign of Cadi Barhaneddin at Sebasto, was become master of this kingdom, he enroll'd 'em in the Ottoman army, and gave 'em a residence in his empire: and as there were no great taxes or tribute to pay in these parts, these Tatars enrich'd themselves, and became exceeding powerful. But Timur, who design'd to make 'em change the place of their residence, and to fix 'em in the colonies of Gete, that they might repopulate that country, treated their chiefs in an honorable manner when they came to salute him: he gave 'em robes wove with gold, belts and swords of gold, with several largesses. As no one insulted 'em in the least manner during the whole course of this war, but follow'd 'em to make quiet in their hords; this sufficiently denoted that they were in obedience and subjection, or at least ought to have been so.

When the ambassadors of Egypt arriv'd at court, Timur laid three days among the Car-tatars; and after having held a council, and maturely deliberated about the ways of bringing his enterprize to perfection, he resolv'd to remove 'em out of that country, and conduct 'em into Tranfoxiana. But as there were between thirty and forty families of 'em, he order'd the Mirzases and Emirs to surround 'em, each on their respec-

* Son of Godabenda king of Peria, and of the race of Genghis Can.
tive sides, so that none of 'em might get away, but not to do 'em the least damage. Accordingly the Emir Şehan Chah, with the Emirs of the right wing, and the troops of the Mirza Mehmed Sultan, took the road to Tezer and Amalia. The Emir Solyman Chah, with those of the left wing, march'd by Cefarez and Sebaleh. Timur went by the plains of Amalia' and Cefarez, the residence of the Caratatars; and he sent the Mirza Charoe, with the Sultan Haffein, to cut off their passage, and hinder any one's flight.

The emperor having pass'd the bridge of Kachlicher, after several days march, arrived at the country of the Caratatars, whose chiefs he order'd to be call'd before him. There came two of 'em, Alki Tebarec and Murvet: they kiss'd the ground before the emperor, who gave 'em a handson reception, presented 'em with veils and belts wrought with gold, and swore he would never do 'em the least harm. "It is a long while," says he, since your ancestors came out of the country of Tourn, which was their ancient residence, into these foreign lands, by the orders of the emperors our predecessors. As all that vast country is at present govern'd by one master, God having brought it under my obedience, you ought to look upon this opportunity as very fortunate to you; and return from hence, with your wives, children, slaves, cattle, and other riches, under the convoy of our soldiers, to the country of your ancestors, where you may pass your life agreeably under the shadow of our protection."

*T believe it shou'd rather be Asfera.*
The history of Timur-Bec.

The chiefs return'd thanks to Timur, and affor'd him that they were ready to obey his orders with pleasure; that they look'd upon it as a piece of good fortune to be under his protection; and that they were resol'd to spend their lives in his service. Timur order'd they shou'd be divided into companies and regiments, and distributed among the Emirs of the Tomans. Being thus made to decamp with their cattel, they began their march; they were prohibited buying any sheep or horses, that they might be less embarras'd in the roads, and that if they shou'd endeavor to fly, they might the better be prevented.

CHAP. LXIV.

Timur returns from Natolia.

Timur was highly pleas'd with his conquest of Natolia; of which he was become the Sole and sole monarch, without any opposition, and with the love of all the people; which great affair he had brought about by the strength of his arms and the valor of his soldiery, at the same time that he won the hearts of the people by his good conduct. This vast conquest, by the divine assistance, was finish'd in less than a year; and thro'out all Asia Timur's name was flam'd on their coins, and the prayers were read with his august titles.

For these reasons his majesty resolv'd to return to the seat of his empire; he caus'd the great standard to be display'd, and began his march with all the army. He sent orders to the emperors Serai Mule Canum, Touman Aga, Tchelpan
The history of Timur-Bec.

pan Mule Aga, and Czezade, mother of the Chapo dees'd Mirza Mehemed Sultan, to come and meet him as far as the borders of Avenic. This new emperor of the lesser Asia, being arriv'd at Caesarea in Cappadocia, the inhabitants Hill'd with fear, conceald themselves in caverns; whereupon he sent Ali Sultan Tavachi, with a good troop of soldiers, in search of 'em; who having found 'em, they defended themselves against him, and shot him with an arrow in the Vena-cava, of which he dy'd upon the spot. Yet these rebels being vanquish'd and taken, Mehemed, brother of Ali Sultan, caus'd 'em all to be put to the sword, to revenge his death.

Afterwards Timur departed for Sebastian, where he confer'd several honors upon Cara Olman, and sent him back into his principality. From thence he went to Arzendjian, where Taharten, like a faithful servant, offer'd his presents to the emperor, of horses, cattel, and other things, nine of each sort. Taharten follow'd the court two days journey; and then Timur, honoring him with a royal veil, permitted him to return home. He sent back the messenger who had brought advice of the empresses departure from Sultania, with orders that the princes should hasten, that so they might arrive at Avenic before the ladsys. Timur being come to Erzerom, was join'd by the Mirzas Olie-Bec, Ibrahim Sultan, Mehemed Gehanghir, Aidgel, and Sadvaccas, his grand-children; he tenderly embrac'd 'em, and was over-joy'd to see 'em; but he cou'd not refrain from tears at the sight of the Mirzas Mehemed Gehanghirs.

* Made governor of Sebastian by Timur when at Maknica; he was son of the Cadi Barhamachlan, prince of Sebastian.
CHAP. IXV.

The manner in which the death of the Mirza Mehemed Sultan, son of Getharghir, was made known to Cazaze his mother.

The empresses who were let out from Sultanin, made preparations at Tauris for mourning for the Mirza Mehemed Sultan: they clothed themselves in black, and then came to Avesta, according to the emperor's orders. When they were informed that Timur was near the place, they acquainted the prince Cazaze with the death of her dear son: upon which she was transported with grief, that she swooned away; and being a little recovered, she rent her clothes, and twirling her hair about her fingers, began to pluck it out by degrees: her head, and took her lovely cheeks with her nails; the swoon'd away the second time, on seeing all the ladies, whose heads were cover'd with black mantles, and who could utter nothing but cries and lamentations.

Timur being encamp'd, they began their cries afresh: and nothing was to be seen more dismal than this court, which at other times was the gayest and most magnificent of all Asia. He order'd that to moderate the princess's affliction, the empty coffin, nail'd down very strongly, and cover'd with a lock, should be presented to her: she twirled her self round it, crying and groaning: "My eyes, said this disconsolate princess, were continually looking towards the public..."
public road, in expectation of some news of Chap. 67. my dear child, which would have been the delight of my soul. I did not expect this cruelty from fortune, this fatal dagger, which thus breaks my heart at the sight of this coffin. O deplorable condition! O wretched Canzade! O unfortunate prince! thou wast design'd for the throne of the empire of Iran; but merciless fate has snatch'd the scepter from thy hands. It is not without cause that a torrent of blood gushes from my eyes, and I make the earth red with my tears; since, my dear son, thou hast thus pierc'd my heart in thy tenderest age.

After this excess of mourning, Timur judg'd it proper to do something for the spiritual good of his soul, which lives as well in the other world as it did in this; he gave alms among the poor, and provided a funeral banquet. The Chermis, doctors, grandees and nobles of all Asia assembled together for this ceremony; they sat down according to their rank at the emperor's table; and a Hafiz, with a Nazar, the lecturers, read over the Alcoran several times. The banquet was serv'd up by the emperor's stewards: and the Mirza's brais drum was beat, at which the ladies, the Emirs, and soldiers, as well masters as servants, on a sudden made a great cry, and wept bitterly; and then the drum was broke to pieces, according to the custom of the Moguls.

The doctors and Imams, who came from Tauris, Sultania, Cazvin, and other places, to salute the emperor at his return, and pay their compliments of condolence; endeavor'd in several conferences to comfort him and the princes; they forgot not any of Mahomet's counsels on this occasion, and strove to inculcate 'em to patience, assuring 'em that the deceas'd were torment
Book V. mented by the lamentations of their living relations, and that it was hurtful to their souls. By the force of their eloquence, they persuaded the emperor to arm himself with patience against the assaults of affliction caus'd by so sad a misfortune. Timur then permitted an order to be illued out for leaving off the mourning-habits, black scarfs, hair-facks, and other marks of grief. He loaded the doctors with favors and honors, and after having given 'em veils, sent 'em back to their respective residences.

The end of the fifth book.
BOOK VI.

A war in Georgia. Timur's return from a campaign of seven years. The defeat and pursuit of Eskender Cheiki, prince of the race of the ancient Persians. Timur's departure for the conquest of China. His death at Otrar near the river Juxartes, and his interment at Samarcand. The strange revolutions which happen'd after his death. The Mirza Calil Sultan his grandson, Jon of Miran Chah, usurps the crown; and the ruin of that prince occasion'd by his prodigality, and passion for a woman.

CHAP. I.

Timur marches into Georgia.

Timur-Bec's greatest ambition being to merit the happiness promised to those who wage war with the infidels for the advancement of religion; and Ghourghin king of Georgia, having fail'd in the prin-
The history of Timur-Bec.

Book XI. principal article of the treaty made, the preceding year, which was to have come at a fixed time to call himself at the emperor's feet, and beg pardon; his highness took up a resolution to march again into his country. To this end, he departed towards Mencoul, where he received the submissions of Malek Illa prince of Merdin, who repenting of his faults in not coming before to pay his homage, and knowing he should be ruin'd if he left Timur's favor, confidently set out to come to court, where he presently addressed himself to the Mirza Charoe, whose protection he besought. This Mirza brought him to the throne, where with his head uncover'd, like a criminal, he begg'd pardon on his knees. Timur having reprimanded him, forgave his faults, and comforted him by his kind promises. This prince brought the tribute for several years past, which he paid exactly, and made abundance of handsom presents. The emperor gave him a crown, a royal veil, and a belt set with precious stones; and as an addition to the former favors confer'd on him, his daughter was betroth'd to the Mirza Aboubeere, and so he had the honor to be ally'd to Timur.

At the same time Youami grandson of Abouga, a Georgian prince, came to pay his homage to the emperor, and made several presents of curious animals and fine horses; being introduce'd by the great Emirs, with Cuffundil, brother of Malek Ghourghin, king of Georgia, who was at war with him. There came also the lords and princes of all the neighboring places, to pay their respects, and offer their pre-
The history of Timur-Bec.

Chap. II.

The government of Chiraz a second time given to the Mirza Pir Mehemed, son of Omar Cheik, and that of Isphahan to his brother the Mirza Rouflem.

In the neighborhood of Mencoui, Timur again invested the Mirza Pir Mehemed, son of Omar Cheik, in the government of the royal city of Chiraz, capital of Persia, for which he issued out his letters-patent, and made the Mirza set out for that country, after having given him a vest and a belt, and oam'd for his ministers Latfallah, son of Bevan Temour, son of Aeboug, and Tchel Panchat Berlis.

Then he dispatched orders to the Mirza Rouflem at Chiraz to come to court. The messenger found him in the summer-quarters of the palace of Cafrier, and delivered his commission. The Mirza immediately set out, and being arrived at Canfar, a place dependent on Ghurbadecan, he received a packet from court, by which he learnt that the emperor had given him the government of Isphahan ¹, ordering

¹ Two old men of great experience and craft.
² Capital of Mirzaa or Isac-Agha, where the king of Persia is present resides.
Book VI. him to send his baggage thither, and go to Ouroudgerd to rebuild the fortres of Ormyan. The Mirza Pir Mehemed, who was sent to Chiraz, also arrived at Canfar. These two brothers tenderly embraced each other, and entertained themselves with conversation on the present state of affairs; and afterwards they separated, and took their respective roads. The Mirza Pir Mehemed departed for Chiraz; and Rouflem, having sent a lieutenant to govern Isphahan in his absence, went with expedition to Ouroudgerd, the fortres of which he rebuilt, and repeopled the city.

CHAP. III.

Timur sends the Mirza Aboubekre to rebuild the city of Bagdad, and gives him the government of Irac-Arabi and Diarbekir.

WHEN the court was arrived in the neighborhood of Cars', Timur order'd the princes his children, and the great lords of the state to come before him; and then made the following speech to them. "The war which the inhabitants of Bagdad have heretofore undertaken against us, having been obstinately continued by them, has been the cause of the defolation of their state, our vengeance having drawn upon them a total ruin. Nevertheless, if we consider that this is one of the principal cities in the Mahomitian world, that the knowledge of the law deduces its origin

* A city of Armenia near Georgia.
The history of Timur-Bec.

...from thence, and that the doctors of other countries have drawn from this source the most sacred parts of religion, and the most useful learning; it would be a crime utterly to destroy this famous city, wherefore we design to re-instate it in its former flourishing condition, that it may again become the seat of justice, and the tribunal both of religion and laws.

The emperor's speech being universally applauded, he entrusted the execution of this commendable project with the Mirza Aboubecere, giving him the government of the provinces of Irac-Arabi, as far as Vafet, Baha, Cardillan, Merdin, Diarbekr, Oirat, with all their dependences, and appointing for the great officers of his court the Emirs Payende Sultan, Pir Hussen Bertas, Serindige, Sultan Sendger, Hadgi Selidadin, Doter Coja Einac, and others, with a great body of the army. Timur order'd the lords of Irac-Arabi to obey him, and mark'd out his road by the province of Diarbekr: he strictly enjoind him to exterminate all the disturbers of the public peace, who remained in that country, and to be in Irac-Arabi in the autumn, when the equinox renders the air more temperate. The emperor likewise instructed him to begin with ruining Casa Yousef Turcoman, who had made himself master of Irac-Arabi, and afterwards to encourage and comfort the inhabitants of the country, that they might rebuild their houses, and cultivate the lands; and in fine to employ all his care in restoring Bagdad in its former splendor, that the following year there might depart people enough out of that city, to form a caravan for Mecca.
The history of Timur-Bec.

With regard to Cara Yousef Turcoman, and his usurpation, we must know that that prince, for fear of our troops, fled into the country of Roum or Natolia; but when our army arrived at Casmara, he again fled from thence into IRA-I-Arabi, where having assembled all the Turco-
man hords, he stop'd at Payan-Hit. The Sultan Ahmed Gelaiz at that time went out of Bag-
dad, and retir'd to the Sultan Taher his son; but the Aga Firooz; in whom the Sultan Taher repon'd the care of his affairs, excited a jealousy in his master: whereupon he held a council with his father's Emirs, Mehemed Bei governor of Orm, the Emir Ali Calander, Micayl, and Farrac Chah, who likewise fear'd the Sultan Ahmed, and unanimously agreed to revolt, and having pass'd the bridge during night, they en-
camp'd on this side the river. When the Sultan Ahmed was inform'd of it, he broke down the bridge, and marching along the bank of the river, stop'd in presence of his son and the Emirs: he sent an express to Cara Yousef to come and join him, which Yousef having done, they pass'd the river together. The two armies being rang'd in order, a battle ensued, in which the Sultan Taher was vanquish'd: he ende-
vor'd to fly, but coming to a brook, and strivi-
ing to make his horse leap over it, he fell in with his horse and armor, and perish'd.

The Sultan Taher having been thus punish'd for his revolt against his father, his Emirs and troops dispers'd; and the Sultan Ahmed, grow-
ing jealous of Cara Yousef, went to Baghdad. Cara Yousef came out of Hille with his army to the gates of Baghdad, and took the city. The Sultan Ahmed hid himself to save his life, but was perceiv'd by one nam'd Cara Hatlan, who as-
isted him in making his escape during the night;
night: and taking him upon his shoulders brought him to a place near five leagues distance. On their way they met a man who had an ox, which the Sultan mounted, and went to Teerit with Cara Haffan. Serec Omar Orirat, governor of that place, made a present of forty horses to the Sultan Ahmed, with what mony, arms, stuffs, and belts he was able. The Sultan was join'd in this city by several of his officers, as the Cheikh Maclouf, Dolet Yar, Adel, and others. From Teerit he went to Damascus, while Cara Youlef became the peaceable possessor of Izza Arabi. This digression was necessary for the better understanding of the history.

When Timur therefore made the Mirza Ahoubecre depart for Bagdad, he sent orders to the Mirza Rouflem at Ouroudgerd, to join Ahoubecre before Bagdad, and march with him against Cara Youlef. The Emirs Toukel Arus Boga of Hamadan, Tammir Soutchli of Noahven, Chah Rouflem of Sendgjar and of Dinaver, had likewise orders to march to Bagdad with the Mirza Rouflem. The Mirza Ahoubecre arriv'd at Arbae, and caus'd the governor Abdalla, and the other chiefs of the rebels, to be form'd and sent bound to court, with a present of Arabian horses, the care of which he gave to his Sultan. At this place died Payee de Sultan Berlas, and the Mirza Ahoubecre having left the baggage, march'd with expedition against Cara Youlef. The Mirza Rouflem departed from Ouroudgerd, according to order, and having taken the road to the dome of Ibrahim-Lic, he pass'd to Bagdad, and join'd the Mirza Ahoubecre in the neighborhood of Hille.
TIMUR having decamp'd from the neighborhood of Cares, entered Georgia. After having pass'd thro Armenia, the Greek Ibrahim prince of Chirvan, as a faithful servant, was gone before to make inroads into the enemy's country, and had already seiz'd on some pillages and delites. Malek Ghourghou, king of Georgia, heard with a great deal of surprize of the march of the imperial standard. Fear excited him to send ambassadors to court with several presents, and the subject of the embassy was compriz'd in this speech.

"There is no comparison, great Sir, between you and me, who am your slave, and it is very astoning that you should have propos'd to march against so mean a subject as I am, who am absolutely resolved to bestowed your highness as your faithful servant; and on the first order I shall receive from your officers, whether to fend in mony, or to march at the head of my troops in your service, I will not fail of acquiting myself faithfully and readily. I have not the confidence to come down directly to call myself at the foot of your throne, for fear has too far seiz'd my heart; but if your highness shall please to grant me a short reprieve, till my fear is blown over, I will run to kiss your feet, as the prince of Mervin, and other governors have done; and I shall have the honor to prostrate myself before you, and receive your orders as a slave, acknowledging this favor as an excess of your bounty."
The history of Timur-Bek.

Timur would not hearken to what the ambassadors said, nor accept their presents; he told them, that their master's want was no ways like that of the other princes, who were Mahometans, because the interest of religion pleased for them, and render'd their faults more pardonable; but he being a Christian, ought not to expect the same favour; that if he was conscious of life, he must come directly to court; but if the grace of God should not grant him sufficient assistance to enable him to embrace the Mahometan religion, he would impose the tribute of the Carage on him, leave him once more the principality of his country, send him back contented, and suffer his subjects to live in peace, without fear of being either murder'd, pillag'd, or made slaves: and thus his honor and reputation would remain unblemish'd. He likewise told them, that the emperor of Constantinople, as a Christian, was on the same footing with him; that if Ghourghin had come to court, he would have learnt how that prince had been treated, and what favours he had receiv'd; and that he ought to judge of his own case by the other; but if their master made the least difficulty of coming, none of his excuses should be accepted of. At length the ambassadors were dismissed.

About this time Poyan Coudelin, governor of Tauris, came to court with the comptroller and great officers of Azerbijan; they offered their presents consisting of a great number of horses, animals, and other things. Ali-Chalao, chief of the Divan of Coramana, for the Cuda Ali Semanani, came also to offer his present...
The history of Timur-Bec.

Book VI. fents, which were distributed among the officers.

The season for the corn-harvest in Georgia approaching, it was requisite that the Georgians should be hindered from reaping and carrying it in; whereupon Timur order'd the Emir Cheik Noureddin, and other Emirs, to enter the enemy's country forthwith; in effect, they chas'd out all the inhabitants, and destroyed every thing with fire and sword; they reap'd all the corn and pulse, which they ground into meal, and so return'd laden with spoils to the imperial camp.

CHAP. V.

The taking of the famous castle of Cortene in Georgia.

There is a steep mountain in Georgia, a hundred and fifty cubits high, situate between two very deep defiles; on the south of it is a rock, which surpasses it in height, and which they ascend with ladders and cords. There is but one way to this mountain, and that very narrow and crooked; besides, the precipices which surround it hinder an army from encamping and besieging it. The Georgians had fortified this mountain on all sides, having built houses upon it, and a gate at the very extremity, with cisterns to preserve rain-water. It was commanded by a Georgian prince nam'd Tral, who had under him thirty great Ofmours, and a strong garrison; they were not apprehensive of any scarcity, their cisterns being fill'd with water, their cellars furnish'd with delicious
Timur being appriz'd of the importance of this place, resolv'd to take it, notwithstanding the great difficulties which would attend the siege, as it was in the midst of the enemy's country, and would require a great number of soldiers to carry it on, who would not be able to find victuals and even water enough for 'em. Everyone was surpriz'd at this undertaking, and believ'd it impossible to take the place; unless the sole fear of Timur, who design'd to go there in person, shou'd seize the hearts of the besieged, and make 'em surrender; but God had otherwise order'd it.

The imperial standard arriv'd before the castle of Cortenso on the 14th of Muharrem 806. The inhabitants immediately sent to salute the emperor, offer him their presents, and assure him of their submission; but seeing their flatteries cou'd not hinder the place being attack'd, they confid'd in the strength of their walls, and declar'd war by a discharge of arrows and stones. Timur at the same time order'd the Emirs to take their polls round about the place: the Emir Chamelic was fix'd on the side of the gate, having orders to build sconces over-against it; two other Emirs had likewise orders to erect two sconces in different places. This was done, that if the siege shou'd last too long, a garrison might be put in 'em, to incommode the place. Chamelic finish'd in three days one of these sconces capable to contain three thousand men: which excidited the admiration of the whole army.

Timur encamp'd behind the fortress in a place proper to build battering-rams and other machines, and order'd a platform of stone and wood, which is call'd Meljou, to be built between his camp.
The history of Timur-Bek.

Book VI. camp and the castle, so high that it shou'd com-
mand the place, tho' the Georgians had ima-
gined that the height of their mountain would have pro-
v'd them from all manner of inlets. This work was not
built in less than a week, and on the 21st of Monastem, a Merkit, nam'd
Bistudeck, who was skilful in marching over
mountains, found means during night to get un-
perceived upon a rock, south of the castle; there
he caught a goat, and carried to the very
top of the rock, where having kill'd it, he plac'd it
for a signal, and then descended without being
seen by the Georgians. Next day Bistudeck
related his adventure to the emperor, who ap-
pounded him, and gave order for two very
large cords to be made of raw linen, and thread,
and ladders to be made of the cords; and then
laid, Monastem, immediately ascended this rock,
and gave up the ladders with long cords. On
the 22d of Monastem this design was executed;
they mounted by an arch, which a goat coul'd
barely pass. A tree having grown out of the
very edge of this rock, they fasten'd the ladd-
ders to it, when they had drawn 'em up. The
East Carmelie II. was at the bottom of the ladd-
ers, and made fifty of the bravest Turks of
Georgian attend, while times he took down in
writing: Argoudar was 80 dam. The
Georgians were fast asleep, while these things
were passing. At break of day a Cavallian cried out with a loud voice, Allah Leiber, and
bless'd Mahomet. Mahomet, an officer of the
Nuzat Chawce, at the same time sounded his
trumpets; and the Georgians surpriz'd, at the
alarm given 'em by the watch, ran to their
arms, in defend themselves. Timur took horse,
pas'd the defile, and stop'd over-against the
rock, which our brave men had mounted; he
order'd
order’d the beats drum to be beat, and the great cry Sourqon made thro’ out the whole army.

In the mean while, the way to the place by the rock being very narrow and dangerous, no more than three persons being able to march in front, one of our brave warriors march’d foremost, holding his buckler before him; he was unharm’d by two others, who advanced with him, but an arrow struck him in the mouth, which made him fall backwards, and the enemy’s fire’d on his buckler. Abdulla Sekharr advanced sword in hand, and slew some Georgians, till being mortally wounded in ten or twelve places, he fell down thro’ weakness. The Turk Mahomed fell upon the enemy’s with a heavy club, with which he broke the leg of a very considerable Ozenour. In time, of the fifty men who had mounted to the assault, several arriv’d at the gate of the castle, where a bloody skirmish ensued. Some also continued to attack the place from the Mermor before mention’d. So that the gate was broke, and the troops entered the castle.

This conquest happened the 23d of Muharram, after a siege of nine days. The behieg’d beg’d for Quarter on their knees: but most of the Ozenours or officers were precipitated from the walls: the governor, Ttal, was bound and carry’d to the imperial camp with the whole garrison, of whom not one escap’d. At the same time the Toglie and standard of Mahomet was erect’d upon the walls, and the Musalmes repeated the prayers of the Alcoran on the top of the church, and made the cry Yazan, which is

1 A standard on whole top is a forehead.
The history of Timur-Bee.

Book VI. us'd to call the Mahometans to prayer. This conquest deserves to be recorded in history; and it is reported that the great Mahmoud Subectekin never gained so considerable victories over the infidels of India, as our conqueror did over those of Georgia. Timur order'd Tral and all the guards to be beheaded, and their wives and children carry'd away captive; and he gave Tral's wife as a present to the Cheik Ibrahim, prince of Chirvan.

Timur afterwards order'd the machines, and Meljoar, which had been erected against the place, to be burnt; and he return'd to his camp, where he heap'd honors and favors on Bilkidek and the other brave men who had first mounted the rock; he order'd many out of his treasury to be distributed among 'em, and gave 'em robes, labres, belts, horses, mules, tents, umbrellas, young women, camels, furniture, and even gardens and villages in their respective countries. He invested Mehemed Touran, surnam'd the king of Bauran, who was one of the principal lords of Coraffans, in the government of the place, assigning him a good garrison of Coraffans: he gave him the revenues of the neighboring countries, and enjoind him to preserve these frontiers for the Mussulmans, and not permit the Georgians to gain any more footing in the country; he order'd him to convert the church into a mosque, and build a niche in it instead of the altar, and in lieu of bells and crosses, to establish Muezines and readers of the Alcoran, according to the Mussulman law,
CHAP. VI.

Relation of what pass'd without during this siege.

During these transactions, the doctor Cotobeddin Carini came to court with all the great officers of Chiraz: he offer'd several presents of the finest stuffs, Arabian horses, mules for riding, and furniture, as pavilions, tents, umbrellas, and other curious things. Afterwards Hadji Muzaffer arriv'd from the Mirza Roustem, and made his presents. The Coja Muzaffer Nezouzi also came from Iphahan, and presented a great quantity of mony, pearls, precious stones, horses, saddled mules, stuffs, tents and pavilions, as likewise droves of horses and mules of carriage, with arms, and vessels and boxes of gold and silver. Timur distributed all these presents among the princes and lords of his court.

About the same time Idecon Berlas and Ahmed Daoud, who had been sent to Kirman, to receive and take care of the imperial treasures, as also Seifel Mulouk Hadji Abdalla, receiver-general, return'd to the imperial camp: they had an audience of the emperor, who gave them a handsom reception, and to whom they offer'd their presents after the usual manner: they were accompany'd by the principal inhabitants of Kirman, and among others by Moulana Zyaddin Serradge, the Cheik Sedreddin, who were both Cadis, the Seid Hamza, and the Cheik Mahmoud Zendghi Adjem, author of the book call'd Dgiouch or Kheourouch, which treat of the
The history of Timur-Bec.

Book VI.

The exploits of the glorious Timur; but this learned author had the misfortune to fall from off the bridge of Tolla, which is built over the river Cyrus, and be drowned; his son, who continued that work after his father's death, paid his respects to the emperor, who received him with a great deal of kindness, and condescended to give him by his favors for his father's death.

Youself Gélil, Deroga of the city of Yezd, and Cayaseddin Salar Semmimi, receiver-general of the revenues of the same city, as well as the commissary of the Divan of Yezd, came up to court; as did all the great officers, and governors of the several provinces and cities of Coromna and the two Traces, who paid their homage at the foot of the imperial throne, and offered their presents, which consisted of the greatest curiosities of all Asia.

CHAP. VII.

Timur marches to Abkhaze.

After the taking of Coromna, Timur humiliated the land to a dier, where he made a magnificent banquet, and distributed his favors among the officers, according to their ranks. He then took up a resolution to march to Abkhaze; he ordered the Emir Cheil Noureddin, Chametil, and others, to set out before with several squadrons, to ravage and lay waste Georgia, as far as Abkhaze, which is the northern frontier of that kingdom. They accordingly began their march; but as the ways were full of woods, the soldiers were obliged to cut down the trees to open a passage; and they...
ruin'd every thing they met with in the country of the Armenians and Georgians. They were follow'd by the imperial standard; and Timur soon after enter'd into the middle of Georgia, where he plunder'd seven hundred towns and villages, laying wafe the cultivated lands, ruining the monasteries of the Chriftians, and razing their churches to the very foundation, which were built of marble and tree-done.

But the Georgians having abandon'd their houses, were retir'd into caverns fituate among rocks and high mountains, which they had ascend'd by ladders, which they drew up after them; and had forti'y'd themselves in these caverns. Timur order'd a host of boxes to be tied with chains, in each of which he plac'd several persons armed; these boxes were let down from the top of the mountain with great cords to the level of the caverns, where our dauntless soldiers attack'd the enemies with their arrows, and advanced to the mouths of the caverns with their swords and lances. They made their way into them notwithstanding the number of the enemies, and the advantage of their post; and in some of those caverns there were near a hundred Georgians; at they leap'd out of their boxes into them, where they put all to the sword, making themselves masters of their spoils, and acquiring the merit of the Gaze. They punctually fulfil'd the Alcoran, which enjoins us to treat the enemies of the Muslum religion with rigor; and they rooted up and burnt the trees, making havoc every where.

The 17th of Rabilevel 806, the Emirs and Octob. 12. troops rejoined the imperial camp; next day they all pursu'd the chase, and took a great deal of game. Timur hunted the day after, and continued to ruin the country, slaying all the Georgians he met.
SEVERAL Georgian lords, who were slaves in Timur’s army, having sent advice to king Ghourgini that this conqueror had render’d himself master of the country as far as Abkhaze, and that there remain’d no footsteps either of Armenia, or of the Armenians; that prince was seiz’d with fear, because this advice came from men of his own nation; whereupon he immediately sent ambassadors with presents to Timur. The remonstrance the Georgian slaves made to Ghourgini on this occasion, resembles the counsel the bishop of Nedgeran gave to his own people in the time of Mahommet. There goes a tradition that the inhabitants of Nedgeran being come to Medina, were so stubborn and proud as to dispute with Mahommet, and not receive the instructions he would have taught them. Then the lord Ali, with Mahommet’s daughter Fatima, and two grandsons Hasan and Hossein, came to the assembly to dispute with the Christian bishop: but this doctor, being surpriz’d at what he saw, far from disputing, said, “The men I now behold have their faces irradiated: if they shou’d beseech God to remove the mountains of the place, he wou’d assuredly grant their request; and if they shou’d be suffer’d to offer up their prayers against the Christians, not one of ‘em wou’d remain alive.” These words of the bishop struck terror into the Christians, who consented...
ed to pay the annual tribute; after which they Chap. 8. return'd to Nedgeran, because their bishop had on this occasion seen the birds of Mahomet's family transform'd into angelical beauties. It seems as if some such vision had engag'd the Georgian slaves to write thus to Malek Ghourghin.

When the ambassadors of the king of Georgia were arriv'd at court, they address'd themselves to the generals of the army, and besought 'em to intercede for them, humbly remonstrating that their master was perfectly submissive and obedient; beseeching 'em to employ their good offices to appease Timur's wrath, and obtain pardon for their master, who would not fail of sending immediately to court all his riches and curiosity, and likewise the annual tribute; and even promising that he shou'd lend to the imperial camp, whenever he had orders so to do, the troops which shou'd be requir'd of him.

This discourse touch'd the Emirs, who introduc'd the ambassadors into Timur's presence, who gave an account of the subject of their embassy as usual: and the generals having found a favorable opportunity, on their knees related to Timur Malek Ghourghin's propositions, and spake to him as follows.

"It is certain that your highness's intention in all your wars is only the increase and honor of the Mahometan religion: we see that God has blest'd your zeal in such a manner, that the Musulman law has never before arriv'd at so high a pitch of glory in those coun-
tries; for former emperors, and the most pow-
"erful Sultans of antiquity, accounted them-
elves happy when the Georgians gave only a few marks of their respect and obedience, either by sending a yearly present of horses,
or by furnishing a small number of troops, when their occasions require'd 'em in some war: and on these conditions the Georgians liv'd freely in Persia and the Mughulman kingdoms. But at present, thro your highness's great power, they esteem themselves happy, even in being shut up within the farthest parts of their kingdom, as long as they have quarter granted 'em for their lives. The Mughulmans have enter'd their capital city, and enjoy themselves there, as if they were the masters of 'em. And thus, if your highness will grant 'em quarter on paying the tribute, and exactly obeying your orders, they will become faithful servants, and acquit themselves of their duty with entire submition and sincerity.

All the Emirs could say, was not able to abate the emperor's zeal for the continuation of the Gazi; which oblig'd these lords to propose the affair to the doctors of the law and to the Muffis, who unanimously declair'd in the imperial council, that since the Georgians consented to pay the tribute, and not to injure the Mughulmans, they were oblig'd by their law to grant 'em quarter, without doing 'em any further harm either by slaughter or pillaging. According to the conclusion of the doctors, and in condescension to the prayers of the Emirs, Timur granted this favor to the Cheik Ibrahim, one of the intercessors; and nodded to him, as token that in respect to him he condescended to the request of King Ghourghin. He sent back the Georgian ambassadors between hope and fear: and afterwards he spent several days in these quarters in the diversion of the chase, till the return of the ambassadors, which happen'd soon. When they came back, they brought with them...
...a thousand gold medals struck in the name Chap. 9. and augur titles of Timur, with a thousand horses, and great quantities of curious flints, as also medals of gold, silver and chrysal, and a very fine balas ruby, of a beautiful color, weighing eighteen Medicales, there being few which weigh so much. They presented the whole, and oblig'd themselves by an oath to pay the tribute.

Then Timur prepar'd to return home: he decamp'd, and after some days march arriv'd at Tolu, having run'd all the churches and monasteries in the neighboring parts. When he had gone two days journey beyond the river of Cyrus, he refus'd to march to Carkagh to rebuild the town of Balaican: he set out before with some of his favorite lords, and having pass'd by Berza, encamp'd near Balaican, where he was join'd a fortnight after by the army and baggage, who also encamp'd there.

CHAP. IX.

Timur orders the town of Balaican to be rebuilt.

The Alcoran remarks, that the rebuilding of places is one of the most glorious actions which princes can perform in this world, and which conduces much to the good of society. When the army decamp'd in autumn, Timur was inclin'd to take up his winter quarters at Cabagh, where, not to lose time, and to keep the troops in action, he refus'd to rebuild the town of Balaican, which had been a long time ruin'd, so that it was inhabited only by inlets, terri-
The history of Timur-Bec.

Tho the season was very cold, and the rains continually molested our soldiers, yet Timur soon after his arrival gave orders to the engineers and architects to draw the plan of the town, which should consist of a wall, a ditch, four market-places, and a great number of houses, baths, caravanserai, squares, gardens, and other commodious places. They laid the foundations, and having marked 'em with lines, the emperor divided the work among the soldiers, under the inspection of the Chahzades* and Emirs. They wrought with so much diligence, that the buildings which were of brick, were finished in a month: the circumference of the walls was two thousand four hundred cubits of large measure, the thickness eleven cubits, and the height fifteen: the ditch was thirty cubits broad, and twenty wide: at each corner of the place was a great bastion, and in the middle of each courtine was a gallery with battlements, and a machine to cast stones. In fine, this prodigious undertaking, which the greatest emperors of antiquity were never able to finish in a year, was completed in a month, notwithstanding the excessive cold and rains: the readiness with which Timur's orders were obey'd, was abundantly more surprizing than the execution of so vast a project. Never prince carry'd a more majestic and terrible air in his wrath; nor yet a more sweet and agreeable one, when he was pleas'd to bellow his favors.

Timur gave the government of Bailacan, Berde, Ghendgeh, the country of Arran, Armenia, Georgia, and Trebizond, to the Mirza Calif

* Chahzade, or Mirza, is the son or grandson of a king or emperor.
The history of Timur-Bec.

Sultan. He honor'd Gelatshilam's brother, Chapsonam'd Behramfhas, with the particular government of the town of Batlacion. And as water is what principally renders a country flourishing, insomuch as it makes the land fertile, and nourishes the animals and vegetables; Timur form'd a design of cutting a canal, thence which to convey the water of the river Araxes into Batlacion. He laid out six orders to that effect, and the principal lords prepared themselves to put 'em in execution: the Tajarchas divided the ground the canal was to take up among the soldiers, which was fix'd lines in length, and fifteen cubits in breadth. The whole was finish'd in about a month; and it is one of the most magnificent monuments of Timur's grandeur and power.

CHAP. X.

Timur sends intendants and doctors into all the provinces of his empire, to examine the affairs of particular persons, and to distribute his justice and favors among the people.

During Timur's stay at Batlacion, the principal lords of Iran and Tavcan came to court with all possible magnificence, where an assembly of the most learned men was held. The emperor, who was very curious in hearing the chief questions of the law explain'd, and the distinction between positive commands and those which contain only matter of advice, propos'd the most sublime and profitable controversy.

Vol. II.  
X  
One
One day the conversation fell very apropos upon Mahomet's advice, wherein he tells us that God orders the princes of this world to practice justice and beneficence: the pious Timur attended to what was said, and seriously reflecting on it, would not suffer this question to be ended by discourse only, but resolved to acquire the merits of it by practicing good works; and then he spake to 'em as follows.

"Kings have always taken the counsel of doctors, when they excite 'em to do good, and strive to turn 'em from evil: how comes it then that you are silent, and neglect to tell me what I ought to do, and what I ought to omit in the performance of?"

Then all the learned men modestly made answer, that his highness did not stand in need of the counsels of persons of their condition; but that on the contrary, others ought to learn how to conduct themselves by imitating his example.

Timur told 'em, he did not approve this sort of compliments, by which they might expect to gain his favor; and that what he had said was neither throning-glory or interest: "For through the protection of God, says he, I am too great a lord in this world, to stand in need of such trifles; but my design in this results from the reflection I have made, that each of you coming from a different kingdom, must without doubt be inform'd of the affairs which pass there, and of the good or bad conduct of the Derogas, and commissaries of the Divan. Communicate therefore to me what you know, and tell me whether the governors and officers observe justice and the commands of the law as they ought; that being inform'd of the evils they commit, I may remedy 'em, and deliver the weak from oppression."
Immediately all the doctors freely declared their sentiments, applauding the emperor's intention; and they represented to his highness the condition the affairs of their respective provinces were in. Whereupon this just emperor made choice of the most learned among 'em, and those who were most vers'd in the laws of their country; and he nam'd an intendant to go with each of 'em, to whom he gave a full power to make laws or to dispense with 'em, always approving whatever he should do in relation to justice and the observation of the laws; so that right might be administered to those who were oppress'd thro-out all the kingdoms and provinces of his empire; likewise permitting these intendants to take out of the revenues of the imperial treasury of each country, what sums had been extorted from poor persons by violence against the ordinary rules, and to restore the same to 'em; and also to punish the tyrants in an exemplary manner: moreover they were order'd to register exactly every thing that should pass during their commission, and at their return to give an account of it; that by this means the causes of vexation being entirely rooted out of the empire, the people may live in quiet and tranquility. Then Timur made this memorable speech.

"My heart hath always been fix'd upon the enlarging the limits of my vast empire: but now I take up a resolution to use all my care in procuring quiet and security to my subjects, and to render my kingdoms flourishing. I will that private persons address their requests and complaints immediately to my self; that they give me their advice for the good of the Mussulmans, the glory of the faith, and the extirpation of the wicked diff-
The history of Timur-Bec.

Book VI.

rusters of the public quiet. I am unwilling that at the day of judgment my poor opp-
press'd subjects should cry out for vengeance
against me; I am not desirous that any of
my brave soldiers, who have so often expos'd
their lives in my service, should complain a-
gainst me or fortune; for their afflictions
touch me more than they do them. Let
none of my subjects fear to come before me
with his complaints; for my design is that
the world should become a paradise under my
reign, knowing that when a prince is just and
merciful, his kingdom is crown'd with blessings
and honors. In fine, I desire to lay up a
treasure of justice, that my soul may be happy
after my death."

This speech of Timur, in which his piety
is much to be admired, was taken down by a
lord who was present at the assembly, and who
wrote at the bottom of it these words of the Al-
coran, "We give testimony only to what we have seen.
After this the whole assembly lifted up their
hands to heaven, and offer'd the following
prayer: "O God, who art the lord both of
this world and of the next, grant an ever-
lasting reign to this just prince; hearken to
his righteous petitions; and as thou hast sub-
ject'd the universe to him, after a long and
prosperous reign in this world, let him reign
with thee in glory in the other."
'C H A P. X I.

Continuation of the history of the princes who were gone into Iran-Arabi.

The Mirza Rouleem having join'd the Mirza Aboubeere near Hille, as already mention'd, these two princes, who were the Rouleem and Esfendiar* of the age, pass'd the river together, and met Cara Youfet Tschoman* over against the town of Sibh, on the banks of the river Nahrelgahan, below Hille. They had then but three thousand men, while Cara Youfet had entrench'd himself on the other side of the river with a numerous army, ready to give battle; and as the Mirza Rouleem, being eldest, ought to have had the first rank, the Mirza Aboubeere prudently advis'd him to take his post in the main body; but the Mirza Rouleem answer'd him, that he was only come to bring succours according to the orders given him, that it was better to separate the army into two bodies, that they might each command one, and to attack the enemy on both sides. In effect, the Mirza Rouleem crossed the water, and attack'd Cara Youfet with all imaginable resolution; and the Mirza Aboubeere did the same on his part; the attack was brave on our side, and as vigorously sustained on the other. In the battle, Yar Ali, brother of Cara Youfet, was shot off his horse with an arrow, and our men immediately

---

* Two famous heroes mention'd in the oriental romanes.
* Prince of the Accoyanier, or white liege.

X 3
Book VI. cut off his head. The Emir Sevindgiie distinguisht'd himself bravely on this occasion, and contributed very much to the defeat of the enemy. Cara Yousef fled into Syria, with some of his domestics; but his subjects, who consisted of between ten and fifteen thousand families, his oxen, sheep, and camels were pillag'd by our soldiers. Some of the Mirza Rouflem's men brought Cara Yousef's wife, the queen of the Turcomans, to him in chains: she was the mother of Eskender and Espende, and was attended by the lady's of her court, and her relations.

Our princes also vanquish'd Noayr, who was absolute commander of all the Arabian tribes of the desert: and they likewise defeated several other princes of these quarters, who till that time had never submitted to any conqueror.

During the rebuilding of Bailacan, Sarek and Cotluc Coja, sons of the Dervich Buke, Aboubecre and Arbirdi Uzbec, officers of the Mirza Rouflem, carry'd the happy news of these victories to court, where they presented to Timur the head of Cara Yousef's brother.

After the causes of the disorders which Cara Yousef and other rebels had occasion'd, were remov'd, the Mirza Aboubecre employ'd himself particularly in rendering this country as flourishing as ever: he encourag'd the people, and oblig'd 'em to cultivate the lands: and he caus'd the city of Bagdad, which was almost ruin'd, to be rebuilt.
CHAP. XII.

Arrival of the Mirza Omar from Samarqand. Continuation of what happen'd during the building of Bailacan.

The first of Jumaziulevel 806, the Mirza Nov. 23, 1498, Omar, son of the Mirza Miran Chah, whom Timur had recall'd from Samarqand to take upon him the government of Azerbijana, arriv'd at the imperial camp before Bailleacan, where he had the honor to pay his respects to his highness. At the same time came likewise to court a Circassian officer, the son of Toumen, with the head of Malek Azeddin king of Lor Coutobeg, who had revolted: this officer brought advice that Malek had been behead'd, and his skin, flayed with flour, hung up in public view, to serve as an example to all future disturbers of the common tranquility.

Timur about this time sollo'd to perform an act of justice on the person of the famous doctor Moulana Cotobeddin Carmi, who was come to court with the other officers of the Divan of Chiraz, because of his having tax'd the inhabitants of Fars at his departure from that place, at the sum of three hundred thousand Dinaries Copeghi, under pretence of a present to the emperor. Moulana Saed, a doctor of the same country, who accompany'd him, accused him to Timur in a private audience, where the emperor had order'd him to give him what light he was able in relation to the affairs of Fars. This tyranny having highly offended his majesty, he immediately pass'd judgment.
ment upon Cotobeddin, and illud out an order to the Cheik Derich Allahi to bind his hands, and placing the fork'd branch about his neck, to send him in that manner to Chiraz, with the sum he had extorted from the inhabitants, to be resold to those who had paid it. Argoun, intendant to Cotobeddin, was condemned to be hang'd because of the troubles he had brought on the people at his master's order. A declaration was also published to inform the people of the destruction of these tyrants, in revenge of the wrong they had received; after which the intendency of the finances of Chiraz was given to Coja Malek Semnani. The emperor order'd Moulaná Seed to return to Chiraz, to declare to the inhabitants of Pars, that what Moulaná Cotobeddin had done was not by his order; in proof of which Argoun was hang'd as soon as they arrived at Chiraz.

The following Friday, the inhabitants of the city and neighboring villages being assembled in great multitudes in the old mosque, Moulaná Cotobeddin was expos'd with his hands in fetters; and the fork'd branch about his neck, at the foot of the preaching-chair, which was of free-lone. Moulaná Seed mounting the chair, told the people what the great Timur had order'd him, in addition to the words of Coja Ahmed Fakih. "If this kingdom, says he, has been ruind, don't implicate it to the emperor; for Cotobeddin is only in fault." All the people applauded what he said, and praised Timur, so that the profane echoed out their acclamations. The last of three hundred thousand Dinars Coenghi, which Cotobeddin had extorted in the space of two months, was entirely re-embursed, according to the replicants of the
Cadi, notarys, and Emirs of the kingdom, to Chapter, those from whom it had been taken.

This justice was done in the person of one of the greatest lords of the kingdom, which ought to eternize the memory of Timur's equity. After this the Mirza Pir Mehemed, son of Omar Cheik, took on Cotobeden's letters, and took his branch, and sent him back to Samarcand.

CHAP. XIII.

Timur passes the winter at Carabagh-Arar. Relation of what happened there.

WHEN Balkcan was entirely rebuilt, Timur march'd towards Carabagh, where he had already given orders for Corgan, or there'd houses, to be built, to pass the winter in. Being come to this place, he went down into the imperial Cort's, and the Mirzas and Nevias quarter'd in those appointed for them, as did also the officers and domestics in theirs. Never was there seen before so magnificent a camp of such vast extent. The Mirza Roufem came by the road of Coulagh and Senau to, according to the orders he had received, to repair to the Covoukai or diet, which was to be held at Carabagh, to invest the Mirza Omar in the government of the kingdom of Balkcan Can.

In the mean while, on advice of the revolt of Estender Cheich, who with Timur's permission was return'd to his principality of Demyoud and Firooz Cooh, Solyman Chan had orders to go to Rei to observe Estender's motions. The Mirza Roufem was sent to assist Solyman in this affair; and they had orders, that if Estender shou'd
The history of Timur-Bec.

... should be so happy as to return forthwith to his obedience, to give him a handsom reception; but on the contrary, if he continu'd obstinate in his revolt, they shou'd draw together all the infantry of Com, Cachan and Derghuzin, and pursue and exterminate him wherever they cou'd find him. The Mirza Rouleem and the Emir Solyman Chah immediately departed to execute this order.

Then the Emir Cheik Ibrahim, king of Chirvan, prepar'd a great banquet to regale the whole court; he made a present to Timur of several pearls, beautiful women, slaves, handsome boys, curasses, belts, arms, and a thousand led-horses: he also made fine presents to the empresses, princes, and chief persons of the state, and did what he cou'd to discover some marks of his affection to all the lords.

About this time Nour Elouerd, son of the Sultan Ahmed Gelair, about eighteen years of age, having been born during the war, was brought from Trac-Arabi. The venerable Cherif Seid Bereke then also arriv'd at court: the pious Timur went out of his tent to meet him. The Sultan having perceiv'd him, flung off his turban, and paid his compliments of condolence on the death of the Mirza Mehemed Sultan. Timur embrac'd him, and wept a long time with him.

The doctors, Imams, and lawyers of Transoxiana, Kech, Samarcand, Bocara, Termas, and other places, as the sons of the Can of Termas, Coja Abdelevel, Coja Alameddin, Coja Afdal Kechi, Abdelhamid and Abdelrahman, sons of the Cheik Eliflam of Kech, and other great lords of these kingdoms, came to court, where they were admitted to an audience; they paid their compliments of condolence on the death...
The history of Timur-Bec.

Death of the Mirza Mehemed Sultan, and endeavor'd to comfort the emperor by good counsels taken out of the Alcoran and the sayings of Mahomet. In effect, after they had somewhat moderated his affliction, he was pleas'd to have 'em dispute before him on some questions of learning and religion; which they did every evening, after Timur had done with the affairs of state.

One of the most considerable events which happen'd during Timur's stay at Carabagh, was that the secretaries of the Divan of Kirman had taken Idecou's account, in which they had set down in his name an excessive sum. Timur being inform'd of it during the building of Balkan, apply'd himself to find out the truth of it in the Divan: but the princess Bouyan Aga, daughter of Timur's uncle, presented her self with child by Idecou, with her daughter Agatche; and compounded for it, by promising he should pay a hundred Tomans Copeghi, and to which Idecou consented, obliging himself to pay that sum to the imperial treasury. Then he was confirm'd in the government of Kirman, and permitted to return home, with orders at his arrival at Kirman to send back from thence to court the Sultan Bayazid, his brother's son, who had been dispatch'd thither in his place, at Idecou's departure for court.

Timur sent Anoucherouan, son of Bouyan Aga, to Tauris, to receive the revenues of Azerbijana; and he gave the government of Sari to Pir Mehemed Poulud, one of the Emirs of the Mirza Charoc. At the same time Bic Mule Aga, wife of the Mirza Pir Mehemed Gehanghir, set out from Gaznun and Candahar for court, with her three sons Caled, Buzandger and Sultan Mehuli, who were then very young: she paid her respects to the emperor, and presented him with several
The history of Timur-Rec.

CHAP. XIV.

The emperor sends the Mirza Charch to Ghilan.

As the princes of Ghilan were not come to court, but had only sent a few small presents, Timur resolved to march against them; he sent rather the Caracul, or vanguard, commanded by Deryai Cautenam, Belal, Meneel brother of Ali Sultan Turchili, Bayzid, Brounai, and Behloul Berlas, whom he ordered to pass the winter in the forest on the frontiers of Ghilan: and he likewise sent the Mirza Charch to Kzelhagge at the head of his troops. This prince immediately set out, accompanied by his son, the Mirza Ibrahim Sultan, with his body of ten thousand men, the Emir Gehan Chah, the Cheik Ibrahim, Roulcem Tapi Boga, the Seid Coja son of the Cheik Ali Belsader, and other generals of Timans with their troops: and they stop'd at Kzelhagge, expecting other orders.

As soon as the princes of Ghilan had receiv'd advice of the army's march towards their country, they were distressed, abandon'd their former resolution, and contented to pay a great sum under the name of Carage. Charch sent an express to adversife the course of this; and made several persons let us out, to receive the tribute.

The Seid Rezi Kya, one of the princes of Deylem, who was of Mahomet's race, and diffignifird
The history of Timur-Ecc.

inggaft'd by his knowledge of the belles-lettres, and the Emir Mehemed Kebrt, also a prince of this country, departed together for court with magnificent presents; and each of the commanders of Ghilan sent presents and considerable sums of money. Being arriv'd at court, they flung themselves at the feet of the empress, and humbly offered their presents, saying that they were and had always been obedient to his highness; that they had used all their endeavours to collect the sums of the Carage, and that they had refrained from living and dying in perfect submission to the emperor's orders.

Timur gave them vell's, and highly honor'd them and as the Seid Razi Kebr was of Mahommed's race, he was pleas'd to treat him in a very handsome manner, and gratify'd him with ten thousand Mann of silk, that is, with fifteen thousand Mann of legal weight, with seven thousand horses and three thousand oxen, to be taken out of what the people had promis'd to pay for the Carage imposed on their country: he gave the half of it to the Emir Mehemed, with a third of what remained, and he left out an order for the receivers to pay them these sums.

Timur likewise gave the Seid Razi the government of the castle of Kome, on the frontiers of Natolia, which Chams, a relation of the Toze Albas, formerly posses'd, and he sent him thither with troops.

During the winter-quarters at Casbah, the Cherif Seid Benace fell sick, and tho' his physicians employed all their skill, and administered the most excellent remedies, they could do him no good; to that this great person paff'd from this world into the other with an entire resignation to the will of God. Timur was feebly afflicted, and wept bitterly at the death of his
The history of Timur-Bec.

Book VI. bel friend: and afterwards he caus'd his coffin to be carry'd to Andeoud, to be there bury'd. Then he gave the governments of Hamadan, Nehavend, Ouroungderd, Lincouteck, and their dependences, to the Mirza Eskender.

C H A P. XV.

Arrival of some princes from Mirdin and Vaftan. A famous funeral banquet made for the late Mirza Meheemed Sultan.

Winter being past, Malek Ilia, prince of Mirdin, came to court with several presents, bringing with him his daughter, who was betroth'd to the Mirza Aboabeeere. Malek Azeddin Chir came also from Vaftan with presents of abundance of horses to Timur, who gave him a handsom reception.

About this time the emperor issu'd out a general order to all the greater and lesser officers of the kingdom of Hulacou Can, residing in Azerbijnana and Irac-Arabi, to send each a brother, or one of their relations, to reside at Samarcand: and that this project might be executed without delay, he order'd several officers to repair to the respective places, to bring 'em away forthwith.

In the month of Ramadan, Timur made a funeral banquet for the prince Meheemed Sultan, in which the poor were principally regal'd. The Cherifs, doctors, and Imams of all parts, were at the banquet, and took their places according to their ranks and dignities. The entire Alcoran was read over, and the feast concluded with prayers for the repose of the Mirza's soul. Afterwards
The history of Timur-Bec.

Chapter 15.

Towards the princes Cambazhe went to Sultania, and transported from thence to Samarcand the Mirza's coffin, which had lain in the tomb of the prophet Caidar.

Timur after this order'd a famous chase in the plains of Adum, beyond the Araxes, in which the utmost magnificence appear'd. The dogs had coverings of sattin imbroidered with gold, and the hunting-leopards had chains of gold set with precious stones about their necks; there was an infinite number of Grecian grey-hounds, foelleam'd for their swiftness, as also a very uncommon and excellent kind of beagles; but what were most remarkable, were huge European mastiffs, as strong as the lions of Africa, as terrible as tigers rous'd up to the sight, and as swift as arrows. After three days the circle began to close, and the slaughter, which is call'd Camar-michi, was made upon an infinite number of wild beasts, as lions, antelopes, roe-bucks, as well of the mountains as of the plains, and also flags.

After the hunting was over, Timur return'd to the camp, where he distributed among the Cherifs, doctors and Imams of Samarcand, Kech, Bocars, and other cities of Tranfoxxna, an innumerable quantity of uncommon curiosities, which he had taken from the kingdom of Natolia, among which were several handfon flints, belts of gold, beautiful horses, mules, women-slaves and boys; after which he permitted 'em to return home, which they did, loading his highness with their praises and thanks.
TIMUR having made himself master, during his campaign of seven years, of the kingdoms of Nautolia and Syria, with their dependences, and having obliged the inhabitants of Grand-Cairo, the capital of Egypt, to come the money, and read the Cortege, which is the Friday prayer for the reigning prince, in his name and titles; the Egyptian having also submitted to pay an annual tribute; and Timur having likewise fulfilled the precept of the Alcoran in making war on the Christians of Georgia, whose pride and power he allayed: he found that to crown the triumphs of his happy life, he had no more to conquer in all Asia than the empire of China, the inhabitants of which were infidels. Whereupon he immediately resolved on that conquest, and departed from Cabul the 14th of Ramadan 826, which answers to the year of the Moonly, for Samarcand. He crossed the Araxes on a bridge, and encamped on the other side in a meadow near Nemit-Abad, one of the towns on the canal of Berlas, which canal he had dug himself, as we said before; and he was join'd here by the Mirza Charoo, who according to order had taken the road to Kzelygudge.
C' H A P. XVII.

Timur invests the Mirza Omar in the empire of Hulacou Can.

ABOUT this time a great seal was made at court on occasion of the emperor's giving the Mirza Omar the government of the empire of Hulacou Can, for which he issu'd out his letters-patent sign'd with the imperial seal, which was the impression of his red hand. This empire contain'd the countries of Azerbijana, the kingdom of Roum or Natolia as far as Constantinople; and Syria as far as Egypt. The princes who govern'd the kingdoms of Persia and the two Iracs, were commanded to obey his orders, and assist at his diet. Timur gave him the troops and officers of the Mirza Mirzan Chah, and permitted him to depart at the same time: he nam'd for his principal officers, who were to have pensions, the Emirs Gehan Chah, Rouflem son of the Emir Mouffa, Tevekii Bertas, Jumell Bourelaidai, and others; and gave him ten thousand horse, recommending to him to do nothing contrary to the sentiments of the Emir Gehan Chah. Then Timur presented to this new king of the Medes a crown, a vell, a belt set with precious stones, and a horse with a saddle of gold; and to each of his Emirs a robe and a belt.

The prince then took leave, and paid his respects to the emperor, who tenderly entertain'd him as well as the Emirs, and then dismiss'd him. The Emir Gehan Chah could not refrain from tears at parting from the emperor and court, because of his long affection to his highness.
The history of Timur-Bec.

Book VI. Mur afterwards gave veils and belts to the Emir Cheikh Ibrahim, Malek Illa the Sultan of Mardin, Malek Azeeddin Chir, Kuffendil a Georgian, Tizer, Dialek, and Beftam, whom he order'd to attend on the Mirza Omar, who took his road thro' the delightful country of Alatac.

Timur departed from this place, and hunted in his march. After a day's journey he encamp'd in a meadow on the bank of the river Abagloe, otherwise nam'd Tchaybelaroud, where he laid to the end of Ramadan.

Timur celebrated the feast of the grand Bajram with great devotion and pomp. Mouilana Nezameddin Chanabi, one of the most eloquent doctors of the age, who had wrote part of the history of Timur, preach'd that day, read the Coutbe, and perform'd the ceremonies of prayer. Several alms and pious gifts were distribut'd; and the feast was finish'd by a magnificent banquet, in which were serv'd up abundance of the most excellent dishes and wines.

CHAP. XVIII.

Continuation of the history of the Mirza Roustem and the Emir Solyman Chah, who were sent towards Rei.

The Mirza Roustem and the Emir Solyman Chah, who were gone to Rei to gain intelligence of what Eskender Cheikli was doing, being arriv'd at that country, found that Eskender had revolted, and having fortify'd the citadel of Firoz Cough, and plac'd in it his son and family, had fled to the mountains in the forrests of Tchelaam and Roustemdar. Our generals laid twenty days at Tahran in the province...
The history of Timur-Bec.

province of Rei; and having got together the in-Chap.18.
fantery of Rei, Como, Cacahin, Sarin, and Derg-
beuzin, to the number of two thousand, they
departed in pursuit of Eskenzer, enter'd the
forell of Rouliendar, and believd the fortress
of Nour, which they took and raz'd. Malek
Keyoumeres came to find 'em in this place; and
as he was at variance with Eskenzer, they
sent him, and sent him to Eskenzer: "Be-
hold, say they, we lend you, your enemy,
that you may be we are willing to accommo-
date matters with you: therefore suspect no-
thing, but come without delay to meet us.
If you return to your obedience, we'll make a
treaty with you in the name of Timur: you
have spent part of your life in his service, don't
root up the tree which you have planted.
Eskenzer dar'd not come to 'em because of
his revolt, but endeavoured to strike up an ac-
commodation with Keyoumeres, and as well by
threats as promises; engag'd him to be of his
party. Then having sworn a reciprocal friend-
ship, they join'd against us, and committed acts
of hostility. Whil'st the court was encamp'd on
the bank of the river Argow, a courier came
from the Emir Soliman Chah, who gave advice
to the emperor of what had happen'd. Where-
upon Timur immediately resolv'd to march thir-
nother in person, and sent orders to the Emir
Mezrab, lieutenant-general of Coráfana, to
march with his troops by the road of Sarri and
Ancol, to revenge him on Eskenzer.
The 7th of Chawal 856, an officer of the
Mirza Cali Sultan arriv'd from Tranoxiana,
who advis'd the emperor from that prince that
the affairs of those parts were in a very good
condition, and that the people enjoy'd perfect
peace and tranquility.
The history of Timur-Bec.

Book VI

CHAP. XIX.

Timur sends the Mirza Eskender and the Emir Chameli before the rest towards Rei.

The emperor being arriv'd at Ardebil, sent the Emir Chameli and Pir Ali Selim, with a thousand men, to Rei before the others, with orders to get together the soldiers of the Arabian tribes and the hordes of Caladige, Turks who dwell about Save, Com, Cachan, Tchara and Perahan, as far as Kerchmond, and to form 'em into a body to join the army: and he order'd the Mirza Eskender to join the Mirza Rouflem and the Emir Solyma Chah.

Timur having pass'd by Ardebil and Myran, went down to Sertchem, where he found Don-ladi governor of Avenie, who was come thither to pay his respects to him. Timur tenderly embrac'd him because of his former services, and having given him a vest and belt, said to him, "We are not certain we shall ever be able to see each other again; but don't neglect informing your fell of what shall pass at my court. The Sultan Ahmed Gelawir is at present retir'd, and in a low condition, so there's nothing to be fear'd from him: but be upon your guard against the Turcoman prince Cara Youlif." Then Timur dismiss'd his old friend.

Timur departed from Sertchem, and arriv'd at May 13, Sultanis the 20th of Chawal 806, to which place came the persons who had been sent into Ghilan to receive the mony we mention'd before; they brought thence a great quantity of mony, horfes, ruffs,
fluffis, and curiositys. The emperor departed Chap. 12.
next day, but one from Sultania, and after some
days journey arrived at Casbin, to which place
the Mirza Aboubeere came poll in nine days
from Ardebil by the road of Kelas, having for
his attendance Pir Husein Berlas and Sevindis.
He paid his respects to his highness, and besought
him to permit the Mirza Miran Chah, his fa-
ther, to go to Bagdad, to reside there with him;
which request was granted. Miran Chah rec-
cived a gratification of four hundred thousand
Dinars Copeghi, a hundred horses, and several
robes, and then return'd to Sultania.
Timur being gone from Casbin to Saouc-
Boulac, gave the Mirza Aboubeere two hundred
horses, a hundred pair of curasses, and a hun-
dred thousand Dinars Copeghi: he order'd him
to meet the Emir Soylman Chah, and march
with him against Eskender Cheika. The
emperor also made a present to Chahimulc, wife of
Aboubeere, and daughter of the Emir Hadji
Seifeddin, of the lordship of Dajuayall, depen-
dent on Bagdad; and this prince's then return'd
to Sultania.
Aboubeere having caus'd the snow to be remov'd, ascended the mountain of Acabay Tala-
goun, and join'd the Mirza Roufzem at Kud-
gyour, the Mirza Eskender, and the Emir Soyl-
man Chah, who were all encamp'd there with
a good trench round 'em, fortify'd with branches
of trees; and they staid here twenty days, till
the arrival of the army. Having receiv'd fresh
orders to fall upon Eskender, they departed to
that end; and as the country was entirely cov-
er'd with wood, they cut down the trees to

1 A Dinar Copeghi is a duect of gold, in value seven livres,

Y 3

open
The history of Timur-Bec.

Book VI. open a way cros, and mended the passages which had been ruin'd with planks; and thus they pursu'd Eskender, killing all the enemies they met.

Timur enter'd the meadow of Rei the first of Zilecde 806, and encamp'd in the plain of Sari Camich: he order'd the superfluous equipages to be conducted by the road of Rei and Khourvar. Bic Mule Aga, wife of the Mezza Pit Mehemed, had leave to return with her sons to Garmn and Candahar. The Emir Chamfeddin Abbas and others, who had the care of transporting the Caratators and colonys, which had remov'd from Azerbijana, had orders to take the road of Khourvar and Senman. Then the Emir Chamelic, who had set out before, arriv'd at Rei.

Timur being come to the castle of Ghulkendan, which lay in ruins, sittuate at the foot of mount Demavend, examin'd it, and gave orders for its being rebuilt of stone and mortar, and render'd as flourishing as before. From thence having pass'd by Demavend at the head of his army rang'd in order of battle, he arriv'd at Firouzcough.

CHAP. XX.

The taking of the citadel of Firouzcough.

Among the strongest places mention'd in history, none deserves more notice than the citadel of Firouzcough, situate on the ridge of a mountain, with walls of the utmost strength. On the 9th of Zilecde 806, the imperial standard arriv'd there, and the troops form'd the siege, encamping at all the avenues round about it. Everyone having taken his post, the machines...
and arms necessary were got ready: the throwers of wild-fire began the assault, and were seconded by the bravest men of the army, who exposed their lives with the greatest intrepidity. And as one of the towers of the place was built at the foot of the mountain, on the bank of the river, and the walls of that tower were raised as high as the level of the mountain, the besieged made use of it to draw up water out of the river; but our men turned the course of the river from the foot of the mountain, and spoilt the water which was left. This obliged the besieged to fall out to hinder 'em, being resolved rather to die than to suffer this.

During the night an officer of the Mirza Ibrahim Sultan, accompanied by Mehemed Azad, Cheik Behloul, Beyantencourt, Acheboua, and other brave men, got up one after another to the foot of the walls. They were perceived by the besieged, who ran thither in great numbers, fought with all their strength, and wounded several of our men: but day being come, all the soldiers ascended the mountain by different places, and gave a general assault. The son of Eskender Cheiki, governor of the castle, and all the others, perceiving the intrepidity with which they were attacked, were seized with fear, tho' the garrison consisted of three hundred men, or rather giants of Mazendran, or satyrs of the forest. Their uneasiness obliged 'em to send several of their men to Timur, to beg quarter with submission. The emperor gave their messengers veils, and treated 'em with abundance of kindness; whereupon they were no sooner returned to the place, than Eskender's son, and all the rest of the officers and soldiers, came to call themselves at the emperor's feet, and deliver up the castle, which the troops entered, and made all the inhabitants
The history of Timur-Bek.

Book VI. go out, that they might be transported to another place. Thus this strong citadel, whose top seemed to reach the heavens, was taken after two days siege. Timur left there, as governor, Zanghi Tann, with a good garden.

Next day, the 14th of Zilzade的社会, Timur took horse, and went to incamp in a meadow half a league from thence. He went back to Samarqand, the empresses Seraf Mulk Cunum and Touman Aga, with the Mirzas, Olu-Bec, Ibrahim Sultan, Aghgel, and Sardar, who departed by the road of Sultan Mansur; and afterwards the emperor march'd against Eskender Cheikh.

They advise was brought that the Caratakar, being six miles near the town of Damgan, had wounded their Deroga, and were revolted; the Deroga of another band, which march'd after them, discovered Tangi-birmech, who lay upon the earth naked and wounded, and scarce alive, and carry'd him into the town to dress his wounds. The other bands hearing this, resolve'd to fly; upon which the Emir Chamfeddin Abbes, Atilmich, Chalvez son of Serindis, and the other captains of companies who had the conduct of the bands, fell sword in hand upon their miserable wretches, of whom they delivered a great number; and either within the town of Damgan, or near it, flew about three thousand upon the spot, so that the dead body's stop'd up the passage of the streets. Several fled into the forells of Eltar-Abad, and the Emir Chamfeddin brought away the rest.

Timur, on advice of this immediately went away Beyan Coutchin, Fazel, son of Seifelmolouc, son of Hadgi Seifeddin, Dane-Copje, Roufrem Poulad, and Comari Behader, with fifteen hundred horse, in pursuit of the fugitives.
Mirza Ahmed Omar Cheik and the Emir Beren-Chaparoode were likewise sent after 'em on the same account, and went as far as Damgan: But they soon return'd to join the emperor, because they found that some of the Caratataras had been slain, others fled, and others brought away by the Emir Chamledin and the Deganas. Beyan Coutchin, and the others who went out first, in pursuit of the fugitives, pass'd by Bellam, cross'd the mountain of Lenghron, enter'd the fores't of Mazendran, and join'd the Caratataras at Caratuan, on the shore of the Calpian see; and tho the Tartars were far more numerous, yet they attack'd 'em immediately, and having happily defeated 'em, flew above a thousand, and took more than ten thousand family prisoners. After this expedition Beyan Coutchin return'd to court.

When the emperres, who had taken the road to Samarcand with the baggage, were arriv'd at Bessam, the officers who conducted the Mirza Charoue's baggage, partiz'd from the rest, and went to Herat by the way of Nichabour; and Shah Mule Canum and Touman Aga went by the road of Judderom and Efferam with the greatest baggage.

CHAP. XXI.

Timur marches to Tschelao.

Timur being accusist'd to execute the greatest part of his enterpizes himself, he march'd in person against Eskender Cheika; and as the Mirza Charoue was fallen sick, he return'd to Herat with the officers of his household, while
The history of Timur-Bec.

Book VI. while his Emirs and troops follow'd the imperial army to Tcheleao, at which place they arriv'd in a few days, altho' the ways were over high mountains, and thro' deep vallys. The troops being arriv'd at the mountain of Tcheleao, the ungrateful Eskender was oblig'd to fly, and retire into the defile call'd hell.

June 11. The 20th of Zileade Timur arriv'd at Tcheleao; from whence, not being able to find Eskender, he departed the same day. In this road is a very deep defile full of woods, always cover'd with mists and fogs; in the middle of which is a great and extremely rapid torrent, which can neither be forded nor swim over. The great difficulty there is in passing this defile is the reason of its being nam'd the defile of hell: and as Eskender had broke the bridge over the torrent, after having pass'd it, Timur was oblig'd to build another. The soldiers Shortly built one of wood, on which forty brave officers pass'd first, and were follow'd by five hundred men, whom they commanded. Yousef Bertas afterwards cross'd it with Couthin Touchral, as did the Seid Coja, son of the Cheik Ali Behinder; and at length the Murza Sultan Hulein, follow'd by the Emir Cheik Noureddin, who got up to the ridge of the mountain of the defile, cutting down the trees to open a passage in search of Eskender. Timur also pass'd the bridge, and encamp'd on the top of a mountain where there were no trees, but continual rains and fogs. At this place Timur gave audience to the Seid Ismael of Kerfecan, one of the lords of Tormed.

Timur sent soldiers into all the forests to find Eskender, assigning 'em for guides the Cheiris of Mazendran.

Among
Among those who went in search of Eskender, the captains Deryay Courthain, Chadimule Berlas, the Cheik Mehemed Courthain, Bic Te mour Courthain, Codadad Tehoura, and Vefadar, met him on the 26th of Zilcade 806, in June 17, in the middle of a wood near the Caspian sea. The Cheik Dervich Allahi was fea’d with fear, and turn’d back on pretence of bringing Yousef Berlas with more expedition to back ’em, he being behind ’em with his troops.

In the mean while Eskender, at the head of two hundred foot and thirty horse of his acquaintance, sallied out of his little camp, and prepar’d to attack our men, who were but twenty in number, and were not ignorant of Eskender’s valor, having seen him several times in action; for intrepidity and courage were hereditary to him, being descended in a right line from Bigen son of Keyou, and Banou Kechape daughter of the great Rouflem, as may be seen in the Chah Name or Fardous, which makes Bigen speak these words, “My grandfather was a lion in battle, my father was the great Keyou: this day you shall behold my prodigious exploits.”

Our twenty men, notwithstanding this, hearing Timur’s reproaches, resolv’d rather to die than fly, reflecting that if the time destin’d for their death was come, they might as well die here as in another place: so they collected all their courage, and confiding in the ordinary good fortune of Timur’s arms, discharge’d their arrows. Eskender, follow’d by his horsemen, attack’d ’em several times with their pikes, but our men so dexterously ply’d him, that he cou’d not only gain no ground, but shamefully turn’d his back before a handful of men, with all his soldiers. Ingratitude is the source of all misfortunes. Eskender had preferv’d his honor, if he
had not abandoned Timur, from whom he had received so many favors.

After Eskender was fled into the forest, our scouts quarter’d in his camp, not knowing what road he had taken. Then Yourex Berkes arrived with Seifelmulock and Hadji Abdalla, who also entered Eskender’s camp, which they entirely pillag’d, carrying away abundance of horses, mules, fruits of gold, and other riches. They were join’d there by the Mirzas Roufiem and Aboubeere, accompany’d by the Emir Sevindje and Solyman Chiah, who came from the left. At break of day there appear’d in the mountain something glittering, which advanced towards ’em. The Emir Sevindje march’d to the left towards the mountain and forest, in search of Eskender; taking with him his nephew Leheraff and all his men, and met the Emir Ali, Eskender’s son, with his daughter, wives and domestics, who were all made slaves.

CHAP. XXII.

Battle between the Mirza Sultan Hussein and Eskender Cheiki. The flight of the latter.

The Mirza Sultan Hussein, and the Serd Coja son of the Cheik Ali Behzider, join’d our scouts with seventy men, and enter’d with ’em into the woods in search of Eskender. They met him about noon in the midst of this forest, having with him two hundred foot and fifty horse, who prepar’d to defend themselves. The Mirza Sultan Hussein fell furiously upon Eskender, and immediately retreated as if he would have fled. The enemy, who thought to improve
prove this seeming advantage, fall'd out of the wood, to fall upon our men; but they turn'd upon 'em suddenly in good order, and made a cruel slaughter of the foot. Vefadar perform'd whatever could be expected from a great man; but was wounded with a lance in his face, which struck out his teeth; yet this did not hinder his fighting. Two horsemen of Tchelao were made prisoners by the officers of the Mirza Sultan Hulfein: and Eskender perceiving himself vanquish'd, re-enter'd the woods, and went out by the side towards Ghilan. He was never heard of more; the some say that he took the habit of a monk, while others assure us that he died thro' grief in the woods.

The Mirza Sultan Hulfein sent one of the men who were taken to Timur by Cazan Dervich. The emperor was then encamp'd in the mountain we spoke of before, and order'd the man to inform him what he knew of Eskender.

The Mirza Sultan Hulfein at his return met on the shore of the Caipian sea the Mirzas Rouflem and Aboubecre, with the Emirs So-lyman Chairs and Cheik Nourreddin, who had been in search of Eskender; they march'd together along the sea-side near three leagues, advancing towards Ghilan. They encamp'd there, and were join'd by the Emir Mezrab Yacen, who had likewise been seeking Eskender with the troops of Coraffana by the road of Amol and Sari. Then all the Emirs departed together for the imperial camp. Timur, notwithstanding all the fatigues they had undergone, reprov'd 'em for not having continued to pursue Eskender, and sent 'em all back again on the same account with the Emir Chamelie. They fatigu'd themselves exceedingly in the woods, which were very miry, because of the continual rains, which hinder'd
The history of Timur-Bec.

Book VI. hinder'd their encampment. On advice of this, Timur sent orders for 'em to return.

Then the emperor decamp'd from the mountain, and crossing the bridge over the torrent in the defile of hell, went to encamp before the castle of Nour in the province of Roustemdar. The soldiers brought before him Eskender's nephew, and others of his relations, with several of his officers: he gave 'em a handsom reception, and granted 'em quarter.

During night an express came from the Mirzas Aboubecre and Sultan Hulfein, and from the Emir Solyman Chah, with advice of their arrival at the torrent of the defile of hell, which they could not pass by reason the bridge was broken. Timur immediately sent to 'em Meholmed Azad and Toukel Baourtchi, with thirty watermen of the Gihon, having for their chief Ourdouchah, who with their usual dexterity built a bridge, on which the Mirzas cross'd the torrent with their troops, and return'd to join his highness.

The army pass'd the night in the same place, and next day march'd to the castle of Harfi towards Ghilan: and Timur being arriv'd at Kelare Decht, encamp'd some days in that meadow, where the Emir Cayaliddin Ali, son of the Seid Kemaleddin, had a handsom reception from the emperor, who gave him the principality of Amol, because he had always carry'd on a war with Eskender Cheiki.

CHAP.
CHAP. XXIII.

Timur returns to the seat of his empire.

After the flight of Eskender, the taking of his wives, children and domestics, the conquest of his fortresses, and the pillage of his effects, horses and cattle, the emperor resolved to return to Samarcand. He ordered the Mirzas who had the government of the two Iraqs to go thither; and likewise the Seid Azzedin Hazaregheri with his brothers, and the Seid Ali Mazendran, to return to their respective governments; and he gave veils to each of 'em. The Mirza Roultam, attended by the Emir * Said Berlas, departed for Iphshan, the Mirza Aboubacere for Bagdad, the Mirza Eskender for Hamadan, the Seid Azzeddin for Hazaregheri, and the Seid Ali for Amol.

At length Timur departed from Ketare Decht, and in few days arriv'd at the country of Lar, at the foot of the mountain Demavend, where the emperor Argoun Chah had built a pavilion in form of a dome, which is yet nam'd the Kiochk of Argoun.

The 20th of Zilhadjge 847, he decamp'd, and march'd with so great expedition with the Emirs and his domestics, that on the 22d he encamp'd at the mountain of Firumzechu. He gave the Emir Solyman Chah a veil wrought

* Emir Solyman Chah is also a prince of Mahomet's race, likewise called Cherif and Seid. But all Emirs are Cherifs; for there are some Emirs who are not Mahometans, as among the Druzes, Maronites and others.
The history of Timur-Bec.

Book VI. with gold, and a cap enrich'd with precious stones, leaving him in the government of the towns and provinces of Rei, Firouz-cough, and their dependences; and he permitted Beyan Chitchin, Deroga of Rei, to return to guard the cattle of Ghule Khindan.

From thence Timur pass'd by Sultan Meidan, and the 24th of Zillhage arriv'd at Beltam, where he visited Sultan Elsarefin, whose prayers he besought, distributing alms among the poor. Pir Padiciah, prince of Esterabad, who had follow'd Timur in this expedition, and had been permitted to go before the rest to his own town, return'd to this place to meet the court, and offer his presents, among which were nine lots of horses, nine in each. Timur gave him a vest, and sent him back.

Dane Coja, who had been sent in pursuit of the Tartars, arriv'd at the same place, and gave an account of what he had done. Timur order'd that the Tartar chiefs he had taken shou'd be laid in irons, and conducted to Samarcand by the Derogas of the countries they shou'd pass thro. The emperor departed from Beltam the same day; and being arriv'd at the town of Jagaz, the lord Hafan Souhi Tercan came to him from the Mirza Charoe, to be inform'd where his highness wou'd appoint that prince to meet him. Hafan Souhi was sent back post, to let Charoe know he might meet the emperor on the bank of the river Joucoudgecan.

Then Timur march'd with expedition, and July 20.

1404.

the first of Muharrem 807, departed from Nichabour, and went down to Achcabad. The 3d he encamp'd at the tomb of Dgyam, where he paid his devotions, imploring the prayers of that Santon. Afterwards he set out from thence, and went to encamp on the bank of the river Joucoud-
Joucondergan, where the Mirza Charoe had the honor to lift his hands, and, after his presents, which were generously distributed among the lords who attended the court, Humduverah brought to this place Achiouga, and Carghougat Jom Garbar, whom he had made prisoners, because they had revolted during the emperor’s absence, who order’d ‘em to be hang’d in an hospital near that place.

About the same time Timur sent the Coja Ahmed Toufi, to be treasurer-general of the revenues of Coreflana, and comptroller of the registers of the commissaries: this lord collected in forty days the sum of two hundred Tomans Capegil from the mounted-men and the commissaries.

Then Timur took leave of the Mirza Charoe, and departed. When he was arrived at Corlan, he encamp’d at the brink of a fountain near the hospital, to which place Tenow Coja Achiouga came from Samarcand to meet the emperor, to whom he presented nine race-horses. From thence Timur went to encamp at the bank of the river Morgab, where he received the complaints of the inhabitants of Chithecog, against the oppressions of Apatelja, their Deroga, who was condemned on that account to have his feet bor’d shut, and himself hang’d with his head downwards; which was accordingly executed.

The emperor then departed, and on his road was met by the Derogas of the towns, and the Kelantes of the tribes, who presented to him fresh horses, which the officers mounted, to make the more haste. Then he pass’d by Lengliar Chelch, Zade Bayazid, Anecedon, Dureca, the defile of Ghiez, and Ali Abad; and encamp’d near the town of Adina Mejgied, where...
he receiv'd the principal inhabitants of Bala, who came to meet him. From thence Timur went to Syahghird, and crossing the Gihon in a bark, quarter'd at Termed in the palace of the lord Acaimle, where this Can's son made a magnificent banquet, and considerable presents. Afterwards he pass'd by the iron-gate of Cologa, and by Chekedalle, and went to encamp at Doulburdi. From this place he march'd to Kech, and lodg'd in Acerai: then he visited the tombs of the Sannun Chamfeddin Kehar, whose prayers he implor'd, and of the prince his father, the Mirza Gehanghir his son, and all his children and relations. At length he took horse, cross'd the mountain of Kech, and lay in the garden of Taex Carateche; from whence he went down to the garden of Caratyme, and quarter'd in the palace of Gehannuma, where he was complimented by the Mirza Caidou, son of the Mirza Pir Mehemed Gehanghir, being conducted by Goja Youfel, and A-goun Chah governor of Samarcan, who kiss'd the ground, offer'd their presents, and sprinkled precious stones upon the emperor. The empress Toukel Camum, with all the ladies and Emirs, also paid their respects, and offer'd their presents. As the emperor had made such haste, that no one cou'd know of his arrival, the Churif, Cadis, and principal persons of Samarcan, had not an opportunity of meeting and paying their respects to him at any other place than this.
C H A P. XXIV.
Timur's entry into his imperial city of Samarcand.

TIMUR departed from Ghaamama in the month of Muharrem 867, and went down to the garden of planes in Samarcand, from whence having made his entry into the city, he visited the college of the Mirza Mohamed Sultan, which he had not seen since it was built; and afterwards he return'd to the garden of planes, where preparations were made for the banquets. The empresses and Mirzas, who had set out first with the baggage from Firozepur by the way of Baverd, Mazan and Merew, not being yet arriv'd, Timur dispatch'd couriers to haleen their coming. The empress Tomin Aga having cross'd the Gihon at Amouje, met the courier in the meadow of Borca, who laid there three days to wait the great empress Serai Mule Canum. Then leaving the baggage there, they went with expedition to Vahlivando, thence to Rebatmale, and the meadow of Tchacmounar, thence to Takhent, and afterwards to Kutch Malek, where a feast was ready prepar'd for 'em, while a second courier arriv'd to advertise 'em to haleen. Hereupon they immoditely took horse, and in a short time came to Samarcand. Serai Mulecanum went down to Baghi Tchenar, and Tomin Aga to Baghi Ichicht, whither Timur immediately repair'd. But God was not pleas'd to suffer him to attain to this utmost pitch of glory and power, without some mixture of bitterness; for...
The history of Timur-Bec.

Book VI., this good success in the conquests of Syria, Egypt and Nartolia, was follow'd by a dissenter which sent him to Baghi Behicht, but did not last long. After his dissenter was gone off, he went to Baghi Chemal to reside there for some days, where he gave a handsom banquet to all the Mirzaz and lords of the court, on the birth of a son to Beghidi Sultan.

Timur afterwards enter'd Samarcand, and lodg'd in the palace of the late Mirza Mehemed Sultan, for whom he caus'd a magnificent sepulchre to be built in form of a dome, close to the college built by that prince: the cincture of the dome was of marble set off with gold and azure, within it was dug a vault, to lay the prince's body in; and a charming garden was made round it on the ruins of some houses. Then the emperor apply'd himself to render justice to the oppressed, and remedy the evils which had crept in among the inhabitants of Samarcand. When be pass'd by the great mosque, which himself had built, he thought the gallery, which had been erected during his absence, was too little: so he order'd another to be made, and reprimanded in the hall of audience the architect Coja Mahommed Daoud for his not having done it as it ought to have been. Timur lodg'd in the college of Serai Mule Canum situate over-against the mosque; and to render his justice the more conspicuous, he order'd the commissaries and controllers to be arrest'd and bound, who being interrogated, those who were found culpable receiv'd the punishment they merit'd, according to the wrong they had done the people; and Mahommed Daoud and Mehemed Dglide, who had been the principal secretaries, and during Timur's absence perform'd the function of Vissers,
Visiers, were both hang'd at Camighoul, during the banquet which we shall relate hereafter.

Afterwards Timur went to the garden of planes, where by the procurement of the Emirs he gave audience to an ambassador of Illecou emperor of Caspia, who presented to him a Chōmar and other things, and made his harangue, which contain'd his master's submission of prayer and testimonials of obedience.

From hence the emperor went to the garden of Dileuchia, where he laid several days, and received an ambassadors from one of the greatest sovereigns of Europe, who made him several curious and magnificent presents, among which were pieces of tapistry, which the Europeans had work'd with so much niceness, that if they were to be compared with the great performances of the painter Mani on the cloth of Antioch, Mani would be cover'd with shame, and his works appear deform'd.

Then Timur order'd the architect, who had been brought from Damascus, to build a magnificent palace in the garden south of Bagli Camel, which was square, each of its sides being a thousand five hundred cubits. This palace was the largest and most magnificent of any Timur had built. The chief ornaments of the buildings in Syria are of marble, and running streams are common in their houses; the Syrian architects are also very ingenious in mosaic work and sculpture, and in contriving curious fountains and perpetual jets d'eau, and what is most remarkable is, that with stones of divers colors they do the same

* from the king of Cadile, of which we have an account written in Spanish, mention'd more particularly in the French editor's preface to this book.
The history of Timur-Bec.

Book VI. fort of work, which the artificers in inlaid work do with ebony and ivory, and that with equal niceness and delicacy. They likewise made several fountains in the palace, the beauty of which was augmented by an infinity of jets-de-son of divers forms, with a surprizing and imitable art. Afterwards the workmen of Persia and Iran enriched the outer parts of the walls with porcelaine of Cashan, which gave the finishing stroke to the beauty of this palace. Then Timur ordered a noble banquet to be prepared, with all the delights which mortals can desire; or by which the gourmets can be gratified. He was there congratulated by the princes his children, the emperors and princes, who furnished up in him gold and precious stones. The European ambassadors were also invited to this great banquet, and partook of the diversions for the Gades have also their place in the tea.

CHAP. XXV.

Timur holds a general diet. A great feast for the marriage of the princes at Caughul.

Timur having long since form'd a design of conquering all Asia, could not refrain from finishing what he had intended. Neglectful therefore of the delights of repose, he

* A little animal, about the size of a barley-corn, which are seen upon the surface of the tea.

* By this expression we perceive the great contempt the Zoghanian court had of the Spanish ambassadors.

took
took up a resolution to subdue the empire of Chapa- 
China, which was inhabited by infidels. But 
before he would begin this great enterprise, he 
was willing to execute the command of the Al-
coran by the marriage of his grandchildren. 
Hereupon he order'd a feast to be made; and 
sent out his circular letters to all the governors 
of provinces, generals of his army, and Cheiffs 
and nobles of his empire, to meet at a general 
diet, where they were to celebrate the nuptials. 
The princes Taissi Aglen and Barchemour Ag-
fen, who were descended from Gunghit Can, 
intreated Timur to summon the Mirza Pir 
Mehemed who was at Gaznin, and the Mirza 
Charoc who was in Corainless, to this famous 
Counculfal; they obtain'd their request for Pir 
Mehemed; but as to Charoc, Timur answer'd, 
that it was not proper he shou'd come, he being 
the main support of the kingdoms of Iran and 
Azerbaijan.

Gumghul was the place appointed for the 30th.
marrige-feast; and the first of Rabinlevel 807. 
which answers to the year of the Monky, Tim-
ur went to lodge there. This palace and the 
neighboring places were adorn'd with the 
greatest magnificence; so that this autumn-
feast render'd, in a manner, even the firing 
jealous. The tents were tied with flaken cords, 
in which were abundance of carpets wrought 
with gold; the curtains were of velvet of 
Chuchter; and the ceiling of chony and ivory 
exquisitely engras'd. The emperor's apartment 
consisted of four great mellosures, which are 
call'd Seraperd; built on very regular plans; his 
Kherghiah or imperial pavilion made two thou-
dred tents, gilt and adorn'd with precious 
stones. Each tent had twelve columns of silver 
inlaid with gold; the out-side was scarlet and 
seven
The history of Timur-Bec.

Book VI, seven other colors, and the inside satin of all colors. The upholsterers, of whom there was a great number, had employ'd a whole week in execrating and furnishing this magnificent apartment. The Mirza's and Emirs had also each a Seraperd, a Barghish, tents, and a great pavilion nam'd Kherghial. The columns of the tents were of many colors, and the floor was covered with the richest carpets.

The governors of the provinces, the generals of the army, the lords and principal commanders of the empire, assembled in this place, and pitched their tents in good order. The people also came there from all nations, as China, Muscovy, India, Greece, Zahul, Mazendaran, Coramarta, Fars, Bagdad, Syria, and in short from all the kingdoms of Iran and Touran, that is to say, from all Asia.

During these entertainments Mengheli Bou- gai Hadeby, one of the principal lords of the court of Malek Ezaher Baroce, king of Egypt, arriv'd in quality of ambassador from Malek En safer Farrudge, who had succeed'd Baroce his father. This Mengheli was endow'd with very rare qualities, could repeat the whole Alcoran by heart, was master of a great deal of elegance, and acquainted with several sciences, which render'd him the most agreeable person in conversation. He brought abundance of uncommon presents, ready money, precious stones, rich stuffs, and nice toys. Among other rarities was a Giraffe, one of the strangest animals

---

Seraperd is an enclosure. Barghish a great hall of audience, and Kherghial a great pavilion. The two last are included in the Seraperd.

A long-neck'd creature from the branch of a calf, bred in Africa, and, turning to folow, got by a camel upon a panther. It is call'd in Latin Camelopardalis.
upon the earth, and nine of the largest of Chap. 3.
triches of Africa.

The Mirza Galil Sultan came from Turkestan
to this assembly, where he saluted the emperor,
the great Emirs of state, as Birdi Bej, Yaughtar
Barlas, and others, who all made a very splendid
appearance. The Mirza Pir Mehemmed came
from Gaznin, according to the orders he had re-
ceived; he paid his respects to Timur, who em-
braced him, and by his tears testified his sorrow
at the death of his brother the Mirza Mehemmed
Sultan. The Mirza made his presents, nine of a fort; and next morning Timur gave
him a veil wove with gold, a crown and belt;
and veils to the officers of his household, who
left off their mourning-habits.

Then Coja Ahmed Touni, receiver of the re-
venues of Corazlana, arriv'd, and presented the
sums belonging to the treasury of Corazlana,
with abundance of curious toys, nine of a fort.
The emperor was not the only person who par-
took of the joys and diversions; for both high
and low had their share. The most skilful
artists prepared some master-pieces of their art, as
trophies and cabinets of flowers to represent
triumphs, which were adorned with garlands
made up with perfect symmetry. There were in
the jewelers' shops necklaces of pearls and precious
stones, especially of grenadin and balids rubys,
with an infinite number of pieces of rock-chry-
tal, coral and agat, and several rings, bracelets
and ear-rings, all which rendered Caniuhui a
mine of gold and precious stones, instead of a
mine of flowers, which its name implies.

An amphitheatre with four corners was built,
called Tcharrez, which was cover'd with pieces
of brocade and Persian carpets. There were
feasts for both the vocal and instrumental music;
and
Book VI. and also places for the buffoons and jesters, who with their facetious sayings excited mirth and laughter. There was likewise another Tcharar for all sorts of trademen; and a hundred of a different manner, fill'd with those who sold fruit, each of whom had made a kind of garden of pittachios, pomegranates, almonds, pears, and apples, in great order; which perfum'd the air, and made an agreeable light. The butchers were particularly taken notice of for the neatness of their representations: they dress'd up a sheep in a man's shape, and other skins in divers other ridiculous figures. There were speaking goats which had horns of gold, and run after one another; they appear'd outwardly like goats, but were handsome young women disguised in this manner; some were dress'd like fairies and angels, with wings, while others took the figure of elephants and sheep.

The shamers also appear'd in masquerades, some like leopards, others like lions, and others like other animals; with whole skins they were cover'd: there were those likewise who ressembled foxes, and tigers. The design of the masquerade was to represent gentry who had transform'd themselves into these several figures. The upholsterer likewise produc'd a masterpiece of their trade; for they made a camel of wood, reeds, cords, and painted linen, which walk'd about as if alive; and the man within it, drawing a curtain, discover'd the workman in his own piece. The manufacturers of cotton also made birds with cotton, which look'd as if they were alive: they also made a Minaret of the lime material with the help of reeds, which every one imagin'd to be built with brick and mortar, and which was higher than the Minarets of the mosques; it was cover'd.
ver'd with brocades and embroidery-work, carry'd it full about, and at its top was plac'd a flock. The saddlers were not behind the rest: for they gave proofs of their skill by two litters for women, which open'd at the top, and after the usual manner were laid upon a camel, in which sat two of the most beautiful women of the city, each holding a skin in her hand; and they made pleasant pictures as well, with their feet as hands, to divert the assembly. The mar-makars likewise shew'd their dexterity, having very neatly work'd with reeds two lines of writing of Cud*, and other large letters.

On the other side were the rope-dancers, who by their agility attracted everyone's admiration; their rope at the same time seeming to touch the heavens. Thus the whole company was employ'd either as actors or spectators, all endeavoring to contribute to the celebrating the marriage of the prince the emperor's children, that is, of the Mozae Oloue-Bec and Ibrahim Sultan, sons of Charoe, Aidel son of Miran Chah, Ahmed, Scid Ahmed, and Bier, all three sons of the Mirza Omar Cheik.

The emperor order'd the astrologers to shew a happy moment for an affair of such importance; which being done, the first officer of the house hold drew the curtain of the gate. The Cadis, Chamtes, Imams and doctors of the empire, met the emperor; and having agreed on the articles of marriage, the great doctor Cheik Chamfeddin Mohammé Jazari was chosen to read 'em to the assembly. The grand Cadis of Samarand, Moulas Selahbeeddin, receiv'd the mutual consent of the parties, which he register'd; and then,

* The ancient character of the Arabic.
The history of Timur-Bec.

Book VI, according to the maxims of the Hanafits law, he joined the princes and princesses together in marriage; on whom every one sprinkled gold and precious stones.

The emperor being seated on his throne, order'd a banquet of the utmost magnificence to be serv'd up to the bride, and the other ladies at the court, by the most beautiful young women of his seraglio, who were crowned composed of flowers. The princes of the blood, Emirs, Nevans, Cherifs, and foreign ambassadors, took their place according to their rank and dignity, as well as the Emirs of Tomans and Hessars. These lords were seated under a canopy of twelve columns, distant from the nuptial hall about a horse's course.

The Yeasbans, or exempt, whom the Turks call Chaoue, were there backwards and forwards to perform the function of their posts, mounted in a magnificent manner upon horses of great price, with saddles of gold, adorned with precious stones, and habit in vest of gold brocaded, with an air of authority and command.

On another side there were elephants of a prodigious size, on whose backs were placed a kind of shrines, with abundance of ornaments. Under the canopy with twelve columns, were placed earthen urns, with strings of precious stones tied about 'em, fill'd with gold and silver polis; and on the tops were cups of gold, agate, and rock-crystall, adorn'd with pearls, and several sorts of jewels; all which were presented on filers of gold and silver. The drink was

*The Yeasbans carry in their hands, as a sign of their office, a litterward.
Cammea, Oxymel, Hippocras, brandy, wines, Sirna, and other liquors. It is reported that the wood of forestal large forests was cut down to dress the victuals at this banquet. The head-fellow with his under-officers constantly attended to give all necessary orders as to the serving up of the dishes, before which an officer always wall'd. There were tables furnish'd in different places thro'out the whole plain, and flagons of wine let near the tables, with an infinite number of baskets full of fruit. Besides the flagons for the emperor's use, and for the lords of the court, there were several jars rang'd in all the plain for the people's drinking: and that the joy might be universal, the emperor order'd a proclamation should be publish'd that all the people might enjoy what pleasures they pleas'd, and no one take cognizance of em. The crier read the proclamation as follows: "This is the time of feasting, pleasure and rejoicing. Let no one complain of or reprimand another. Let not the rich encroach upon the poor, or the powerful upon the weak. Let none ask another, "Why have you done thus?" After this declaration every one gave himself up to those pleasures he was born for, during the feast; and whatever was done pass'd unobserved.

At length the feast was finish'd; after which, according to custom, a vast quantity of curious movable goods was laid upon mules and camels for the new-married princes; among which were all sorts of rich habits, crowns, and belts.

* Cammea is a drink'd among the Tartars. The way of making it is mention'd in the history of Gough's Cas. book 3, chap. 10.
set with precious stones. The mules had coverings of satin embroiderd with gold; their little bells were gold, as well as those belonging to the camels; and both were handomely adorn'd. This pompous equipage pass'd before the people, who were struck with admiration.

The bridegrooms with their brides were cloth'd nine times in different habits, with crowns and belts set with precious stones; and each time they chang'd their clothes, they paid their respects as usual, while gold and precious stones, pearls, rubys, and balais rubys, were sprinkled upon 'em in great numbers, with which the ground was cover'd, and which became the domesties profit.

The following night there were every where illuminations with lantehons, torches and lamps; and the new-marry'd princes enter'd the nuptial chamber. The next day Timur did 'em the honor to pay 'em a visit at their own apartments, being accompany'd by the empresses, and great Emirs and Cherifs of his court. The rejoicings were so great thro-out the whole empire, that from Camighul as far as Tous in Corallana, there was not one place, where the sound of drums and trumpets was not heard.

The ambassadours of Egypt, Spain, India, and Decht Capelac, Geste, and others, were witnesses of this magnificence, and particularly of the pleasures of the feast, which lasted two entire months. Timur distinguisht 'em by particular favors, and gave veils to them, as well as to the Cherifs and other great lords, who were assembled from all parts of the empire; he did the same to the generals, the governors of the provinces, and all the officers.

After the marriage-feasts were over, Timur again betook himself to the administration of public
The history of Timur-Bec.

public affairs, ordering every one to return to Chaps.,
his proper employment. The licence which had
been granted during the fast was recall'd; and for
the future no one was allow'd to drink wine, or
commit any thing unlawful. Afterwards Timur
retir'd to his clost, to address himself to God
by the following prayer.

"O Almighty being, who art above whatever
man can conceive, and whose silence is un-
known to any but thy self, being all in all;
how can I recite thy praises, and how return
thanks in proportion to the favors I have re-
ceived, since they are infinite? Out of no-
thing hast thou created me, from poverty
hast thou made me rich; and from a petty
prince hast thou render'd me the most mighty
emperor of the universe. To thy great boun-
ty I owe the gaining of so many battels, and
the conquest of so many kingdoms: for what
am I, a poor and vile creature? I shou'd be
incapable of every thing, were I not assist'd
by thy grace. In peace thou favor'lest me with
quiet and joy; and in war thou givest me
victory, and maintainest me in sovereign au-
thority, fear'd by my enemies, and lov'd by
my subjects. Continue then, O thou great
Creator, thy goodness towards me: since
thou hast choos'd me in thy clemency, don't
shame me away in thy wrath. I know that I
am but dust; and that if thou didst not favor
me with thy protection, all my glory and
grandeur will be turn'd into vileness and dis-
honour. O Lord, put me not to shame be-
cause of my vices, who have been so long
accustom'd to partake of thy favors: and
then I shall rest contented."

C H A P.
The causes which incited Timur to undertake the conquest of the kingdom of China.

In the beginning of Timur's rise Asia was in the possession of usurpers, who had raised themselves to sovereignty, either by the extinction of the race of former kings and emperors, or by intrigues and revolts; but as the world could not be peaceably governed by so many sovereigns, there were continual wars among them, and the poor people were drove into great extremities. Virtue and tranquillity were banished the places which robbers only possessed; security was no longer to be met with on the highways, which were full of thieves; and in fine, every thing was in confusion and disorder. The world might then be well compared to a human body, which being infected with some corrupt matter, necessarily falls sick, and can receive no benefit but from a strong medicine, which purges out the cause of the disease; and yet this purgation can't be undergone without some inconveniences which may arise from a depravi'd appetite. In the same manner, God, who was pleas'd to purge the world, made use of a medicine, which was both sweet and bitter, to wit, the clemency and the wrath of the incomparable Timur; and to that effect, inspir'd in him an ambition to conquer all Asia, and to expel the several tyrants thereof. He establish'd peace and security in this part of the world; so that a single man might carry a silver-bason fill'd with gold from the coast of Asia
The history of Timur-Bec.

Asia to the west. But yet he could not accomplish this great affair, without bringing in some measure upon the places he conquer'd, destruction, captivity, and plunder, which are the concomitants of victory.

After this hero was happily return'd from the conquests of Syria, Nataola and Georgia, and of consequence found himself absolute master of all the empires of Iran and Touran, he generously took up a resolution to make preparations for the conquest of China, which was inhabited by infidels; that by this good work he might rectify what had been amiss in other wars, wherein the blood of so many of the faithful had been spilt. Thus, after the marriage of the princes his grandchildren was consummated, he summon'd the Mazas his children, and the great Emirs of his council to court, to whom he made the following speech.

"God hath favor'd us with such extraordinary good fortune, that we have conquer'd Asia, and overthrown the greatest kings of the earth; few sovereigns in past ages having acquire'd so great dominions, or attain'd so great authority, or had such numerous armies, or so absolute a command. And as these vast conquests have not been obtain'd without some violence, which has caused the destruction of a great number of God's creatures; I have resolve'd to perform some good action, which may atone for the crimes of my past life, and to accomplish that which all the world besides is not capable of, that is, to make war on the infidels, and exterminate the idolaters of China, which can't be done without very great strength and power. It is therefore fitting, my dear companions, that those very troops which have been the instru-
The history of Timur-Bec.

Book VI.

"means whereby those faults were committed, should also be the instruments of repentance; and that they march into China, to acquire the merit of that holy war, in demolishing the temples of the idols of the fire, and erecting in their places mosques and chappels. By this means we shall obtain the pardon of our sins, as the Alcoran assures us, saying that good works efface the sins of this world."

Timur having uttered this speech, the princes of the blood and Emirs besought God to bless his good intentions, unanimously applauding his sentiments, and loading him with praises:

"Let the emperor, say they, display his standard, and we his slaves will follow him, and sacrifice our lives in his service."

Then orders were given to the Tavachs to take an exact number of all the soldiers by thousands, and to augment and enroll the regiments. Timur commanded all the Emirs of Oolons, and the governors of provinces, to assemble their soldiers; they took copies of the Turtul from the great Tavachs, that they might know in what order and with what arms they should come; and they departed, to get together their troops in all the provinces.

Timur then went from Canigul, and entered the city of Samarcand, where he long'd in the college of Seeri Mule Canun. He gave the Mirza Pir Mehemed a crown, belt and horse, and permitted him to return to Zabul; he also gave to each of his domestics a horse and a fuie.

* The Emirs of Oolons are the natural lords of the Tartar herd, who are inferior to the governors of provinces.

* The order for the war.
of clothes: he order'd the Mirza Sidi Ahmed, son of Omar Cheik, to accompany him. And they took the road to Candahar.

The emperor did particular honors, and gave velts and belts to the ambassador of Egypt, who obtain'd leave to return home: he order'd Moulana Abdalla Kechi to accompany him, whom he sent with a convoy in embasy to the Sultan of Egypt, for whom he gave him a letter seventy cubits long, and three in breadth, wrote in letters of gold by Moulana Cheik Mehmed, son of the doctor Hadji Bendeghir Tebriat, who would not yield to his father as to the beauty of his style and the art of writing finely. The substance of this letter was an answer to what the Sultan of Egypt had writ with regard to the Sultan Ahmed and Cara Yousif. He sent with this letter several curious presents worthy of the greatest princes.

Timur likewise granted particular honors and favors to the ambassadors of Europe, Decht Capelac, Gete and other parts, and permitted 'em to return home. He likewise dismiss'd the princess Melker Aga, who had assisted at the fealt, and afterwards return'd to the Mirza Charoe at Herat. He sent to Hamadan the princes Beghifi Sultan his daughter, to the Mirza Eskenzar her husband: and she pass'd by Soecara and Macan.

---

1 I believe this Sidi Ahmed was the father of Baber Mirza, whose descendants reign in India at this present, under the title of the great Mogul.  
2 The Spanish ambassadors, whom we have mention'd in the former, were dismiss'd at the same time as those of Egypt were, without obtaining an audience of leave of Timur, who was reported to have been very sick; on which account, in the Spanish relation it is said there mistake that he was dead.
The history of Timur-Bec.

Timur gave the Mirza Olact Bec the government of the towns of Tachkunt, Seiram, Yen-ghi, Achira, and all the kingdom of Gote as far as China; and to the Mirza Ibrahim Sultan that of Andeacan, Achetet, Taraz and Cachgar, as far as Cotan; which he confirmed by letters-patent sealed with his red hand. Among the Emirs of the Mirza Pir Mehemed, Tagi Bouga and three others set out to assemble the troops of those provinces, and bring 'em to Tachkunt, which was the general rendezvous of the army. Temour Ceja Achoroua was banished to Afighent in Mogolistan, for a fault he had committed.

Timur went from the college of Serai Mule Canum to Arec *, and judg'd at Gheue Serai, a palace he had built.

CHAP. XXVII.

Timur sets out for the war against the infidels of China.

The Alcoran remarks, that if any one in his pilgrimage to Mecca should be surpriz'd by death, the merit of this good work is written in heaven in his name, as surely as if he had had the good fortune to execute it: it is the fame in relation to the Gazzie, where with troubles and fatigues mix'd with dangers an eternal me-

* Arec is the indolence of the ancient royal palace of Susa.
The history of Timur-Beg.

rit is acquired; and he who dies during the expedition is deemed to have executed his design. It was fitting that so great a hero as Timur should die in the bed of honor, and that this inevitable accident should happen during a journey he undertook for God's glory, and to acquire the rewards the Alcoran promises to the Qazis, that is, the war against the infidels. And as the death of this great man was nearly approaching, when he took up a resolution to march into China, God permitted that neither the season, nor the country he must pass thro, which were always covered with snow and frost, should be able to divert him from his resolution, or oblige him to retard his departure till the spring.

He gave orders to the Emir Berendar to review the troops, and bring him an account how many men there were in the army he designed to carry into China. This Emir reported, that the troops of Transoxiana, Turkesthan, Balc, Bedakhan, Coraffana, Sillan, Mazandran, the Caratarks brought from Natalia, the colonys from Persia, Azerbijana and Irac, amounted to two hundred thousand men complete, capable of undertaking the greatest enterprizes. Timur, very much pleased at the good state of his troops, distributed his treasure among 'em, and commanded 'em to begin their march.

The Mirzas Calil Sultan and Ahmed Omar Cheik, accompany'd by the Emir Godadad Hufeini, Chamfeddin Abbass, and other generals of Tomins and Hezaires of the right wing, were order'd to pass the winter with their troops at Tachkunt, Chahrourhia, and Seiram; and the Mirza Sultan Hufeini was to take up his winter-quarters with some troops of the left wing at Yall and Sabran. Chahrourhia, which was formerly nam'd Penathunt, was so ruin'd by Genghia
The history of Timur-Bec.

Book VI. Chapter 374. 

The time of the Can's army, that there remain'd no foot-passes of any edifices till the year of the Monky, which answers to the year of the Hegira 794, when Timur order'd his lieutenants to rebuild and repeople it: and as Timur then gave it to the Mirza Charoe, it was call'd from his name Chahreukhia.

The emperor having entrusted the government of Samarcand to Argoun Chah, and the care of his treasures to the Cheik Tchoura, order'd the great standard to be display'd; and he departed from Samarcand the 25th of Jumazi level 827, the sun being in the middle of Aquarius, in a sextile aspect with Jupiter; and the moon being in Libra, in a sextile aspect with the sun, and in a trine aspect with Jupiter. He laid hold on the happy moment which the astrologers had fix'd for his departure, and took the road to Acfoulat. He went directly to Caraboulac in Sogdiens.

Then the standard departed from Caraboulac, and took the road to Ilanoti: and after several days arriv'd at Tambic, where great rains and snows fell, the wind blew excessively, and the cold was extremely violent: yet this did not hinder Timur's departure and arrival at Acfoulat. And as this place was full of lands, and there was abundance of small wood for burning, orders had been given before to build cottages of reeds, and some houses fit to lodge in. The emperor being repos'd in his apartment, the Mirzas and soldiers encamp'd each in their respective posts. The sun was then enter'd into Pisces, the cold daily increas'd, and the winter was more violent than usual.
CHAP. XXVIII.

An account of certain adventures, the knowledge of which is necessary to the understanding the latter part of this history. A relation of what pass’d at Afsoulat.

LOVE is often the cause of many disorders. The Mirza Calil Sultan, after having got with child the princess Dgehan Sultan, daughter of the Mirza Ali, Timur’s father’s son, became desperately in love with one of the concubines of the Emir Hadgi Seifeddin, nam’d Chadi Mule. This passion got to great an ascendant in his soul, that he cou’d not rest till he had marry’d her, which was during Timur’s absence; of which the princess his wife being inform’d, so great a jealousy kindled in her heart, that she discover’d the case to the emperor at Samarcand. Orders were immediately given out for Chadi Mule to make her appearance: but the Mirza conceal’d her, which provoked Timur, that he order’d diligent search to be made after her; and being found, she was condemn’d to die, and would have suffer’d immediately, if the Mirza Pir Mehemed Gehanghir had not begg’d for a reprieve. Nevertheless, advice was given the emperor at Afsoulat, that the Mirza Calil Sultan had again conceal’d her in his apartment; whereupon the Emir Berat had orders to go and seize her, and bring her away; which being done, Timur in a great passion commanded her to be put to death. The empress Serai Mule Canum cou’d not bear to see
the deep anxiety and despair the poor Mirza fell into; but considering moreover the great love Timur bore to the princes his children, he endeavoured to accommodate this difference, by the help of the Emirs Cheik Noureddin and Chamelie; and persuaded them to inform the emperor, that this lady was with child by the Mirza. On this account the order was reversed, and the princes entrusted to the care of the empress Bouyan Aga, that after her lying-in, she might bring up the child, and commit the lady to some of her black slaves.

The emperor being at Afsoular, ordered the Mirza his son, the commanders of kingdoms, the governors of provinces, the Darugas of cities, and other grand officers and lords of his empire, to write to their lieutenants, to advise them to take great care during the expedition into China that the laws be duly executed, and justice dispensed every where, so that the people might enjoy quiet and security: that they should not give heed to the disturbers of the public tranquillity, as knowing it was their duty to treat the people well, since they were entrusted to them by the Creator; that they behave themselves in such a manner, that when an account should be demanded of their conduct, they may have no cause to repent, nor be the reason of Timur's blushing for shame before the throne of God, at the day of judgment. This order was carefully executed, and sent into all the provinces by men of probity.

* The black slaves are eunuchs, and the ordinary guardians of the Mahometan ladies. The reason of Timur's putting this lady into their hands, was to hinder the Mirza Cali Sulter's having any future commerce with her.
Then the Mirza Cafil Sultan went to Tachkunt, according to the orders he had receiv'd; and the Mirza Sultan Huſtein to Yafi and Sibran. There was nothing to be seen anywhere but carriages and waggons, which were brought from all the provinces, and fill'd with all sorts of ammunition; and an infinite number of horses brought from all parts to be sold, which the emperor bought, and distributed among the Mirzas, Emirs and soldiers. Then the Seid Coja, son of the Cheik Ali Behader, came from Coraffana from the Mirza Charoc, with advice of the good health of that prince.

The emperor sent the Emir Berendaæ to Tachkunt, to bring away the provisions: and he publish'd an order for all the generals and great officers to keep an exact account of the state of their Tomans, Hezares and Sedes; that in this long expedition no one might be oblig'd to flay belind for want of either provision or arms. This order had so good an effect, that in this numerous army each horseman had enough to suffice ten men, as well in victuals as in arms. Besides this, several thousand loads of corn were carry'd in the waggons which follow'd the army, to sow the fields on their road, that at their return they might not have a scarcity. Several thousands of fle-camels were also carry'd, that on a pressing occasion their milk might serve for nourishment to the soldiers. These precautions were necessary to an army, so numerous as not to be mate'd in antiquity. Those who had seen the immense riches at the feast of Canghul, were struck with admiration; and men of the best sense reflected upon the Arabian saying, 'That when a man has attain'd the highest degree of prosperity, he is upon the point of destruction.' Most persons laid, even in public,
The history of Timur-Bec.

Book VI. after having seen the prodigious grandeur and magnificence which appeared in the pleasures of Camighul, and the fine appearance which this innumerable army made, with the vast quantity of arms and baggage which were in the imperial camp, that they no longer doubted the prosperity of Timur being arriv'd at its utmost perfection, and consequently fear'd with reason the diminution of his good fortune. People began to mistrust, some disgrace would befall 'em; and their hearts fluctuating between hope and fear, they daily besought God to preserve the emperor from the misfortunes which attend the greatest prosperity, and to turn the evil and destructive eyes from off this reign, which they hop'd would endure a great while longer.

* See book IV. chap. 32.

C H A P. XXIX.

Timur departs from Asculat.

The sun was yet in Capricorn, and the violence of the cold so great, that several men and horses perished in the road, some losing their hands and feet, others their ears and noses: the snows and rains were continually falling, the whole face of the heavens seeming to be cover'd but by one cloud, and the whole earth by one piece of snow. Astronomers remark, that at this time there was a conjunction of the three superior planets in Aquarius, which was a presage of some great misfortune. Yet the desire of acquiring the merit of the Gazie prevail'd in the mind of our conqueror above the greatest difficulties; he would not wait till the cold abated, but inform'd himself of the nature and cir-
circumstances of the roads, of the water, pastures, deserts and mountains, which he order'd to be taken down in writing, that all necessary precautions might be made.

Then Timur set out from Afsoulat; and sent fresh orders to the Mirza Cali Sultan and Ahmed, accompany'd by the Emirs: Colados Hufeini, Yadghiar, Chah Eriar, Chabadin Abbas, Berkadac, and eight others, who were in winter quarters with their troops about Tachkent, Chahroushia, and Seiram; as also to the Mirza Sultan Hufeini, who was with his about Yami and Sabran in Capchac, not to fail of leaving their winter-quarters at the beginning of spring, in order to join the court.

Timur having march'd two days and one night, went to Ouzoum-Ata to encamp, then to Yoleadgai Cheik, from thence to Sourkent, and afterwards to Comarcha Ata, to Sultan Cheik, and at length to the town of Zernoue, from whence he departed, and crossing the Sihon upon the ice, encamp'd on the other bank. This river was froze so hard this year, that they were oblig'd to dig two or three cubits to get water; and from the sun's entering Sagittarius to his coming out of Pisces, waggon, men and beasts, cou'd pass either the Gilion or Sihon in any part of 'em.

Timur having decamp'd from the banks of the Sihon, arrived at Otrar on wednesday the 12th of Regeb 807, and lodg'd in the palace of Feb. 17. Bardi Bei, where all the princes and lords had likewise each their respective apartments. The day of the emperor's arrival, one corner of the roof of the palace, where he was lodg'd, set fire, by the tumult of a chimney running by it; but the fire was soon extingui'd. This accident disquieted the lords of the court, inasmuch
The history of Timur-Bec.

Book VI. as most of 'em had had frightful dreams which prognosticated some misfortune; and it seem'd as if nature had given the people an insight into what thoun'd happen to their prince. But fate is in evitable.

Timur sent Moulla Reemal to discover whether there was any passage over the bridge, who carefully examin'd the whole, and brought answer that it was impossible to cross it. Another, who had been sent towards Setram and the mountain of Coundan, on his return declar'd that the snow of this mountain was two pikes high.

Then Cara Coja, an ancient domestic of To-catmich Can, herefore emperor of Capheac, arriv'd at court in quality of ambassador from that prince, who had a long time wander'd about as a vagabond in the desert of Capheac. Timur being pleas'd to grant him a magnificent audience, enter'd in state into the Divan Capé, and ascended his throne; the princes Tazli Aglen, of the race of Ociai Can, Bachtemur Aglen, and Giera Aglen, of the race of Touchi Can, sitting on his right hand, and the Mirzas Olone-Bec, Ibrahim Sultan, and Adigel on the left. The ambassador was conducted to the audience by the Emyr Birdi Bei and Noureddin two brothers, Chamelic and Coja Yonis; and having prostrated himself, had the honor to kiss the imperial carpet; he made an harangue from his master in these words. "I have, says he, suffer'd the punishment my ingratitude merited; the flight acknowledgment I have made for so many favors receiv'd of your highness, hath drawn upon me the miseries I had my self reduc'd to. I have no other
"refuge than the hopes of pardon from your bountiful bounty: and if I can be absolv'd you'll forget your servant's faults, I will discover a grateful sense of the favor by a constant submission to your imperial orders."

"Timur, according to his wonted goodness, treated this ambassador with civility, and even afflict him that at his return from the war of China, he would again conquer the kingdom of Toujchi Can, which he had a design to put into the hands of Tocatmich Can his master. After these civil treatments he dismissed the ambassador Cara Coja, sending by him a present to Tocatmich. And Timur's intention being to depart forthwith from Otrar to continue his expedition into China, he design'd to send back the empresses and the young princes his children, who out of ceremony were come thither to wait upon him. But fate had otherwise orderr'd it.

C H A P. XXX.

Timur's death at Otrar.

The Alcoran remarks, that God created the world for the sake of man, but man for his own service. By this we see that the dignity of the human soul is too great to remain for ever in this material body; and that so pure and excellent a being can't find satisfaction but in the enjoyment of him who created it, and gave it immortality.

Timur, after the campaigns of seven years, in which he had conquer'd almost all Asia, turn'd the whole of his ambition towards establishing of justice in the world, informing himself of the
The history of Timur-Bec.

Book VI: the state of his subjects, and redressing all evils: if they were oppressed by tyrants, he did 'em justice; and if in poverty, he enrich'd 'em by his favours; and by this means render'd the world flourishing, and rejoic'd the people's hearts. As soon as he was return'd to the fear of his empire, without repose, himself from his fatigues any longer than five months, he form'd a design to make war on the idolaters of China, hoping by that to obtain pardon of God for his former crimes: and having set out for that expedition, he came to Otrar, seventy six leagues or parasangs distant from Samarcand.

March 25. On Wednesday the 10th of Chaban 807, Timur was attack'd with a burning fever, and believe'd he heard the Houres lay to him, Repent, for you must appear before God. On this, he became sincerely penitent for his crimes, and resolved to make satisfaction for them by good works. His sickness increasing, he found himself very much weaken'd, having no rest: affliction seiz'd the heart of all the court, which appear'd the greater as the dissembler augmented. Then neither empire, nor armys, nor riches, nor crowns stood him in any stead.

And the Moulna Fadalla Tebrizi, one of the most skilful physicians of the age, employ'd all his care in prescribing the most excellent remedies, yet the sickness became more violent. Physic is useless when fate has ordain'd the death of any one. All hopes of the emperor's health were lost; his physicians having given him over. But tho' his body was weaken'd, yet his mind continu'd found; and notwithstanding—

* The Houres are continual virgin, who the Mahometans believe are appointed for their pleasures in their prophet's paradise.
ing his violent griefs, he was always informing Chap. 30.
himself of the condition of his army. When he
found his sickness so strong, that all remedys
provd ineffectual, he resolv'd courageously to
face death; and calling the emperors and prin-
cipal Emirs into his presence, he made the fol-
lowing testament.

"I am satisfy'd that my soul is about to leave Timur's
my body, and that my asylum is at the lot. 31.
throne of God, who gives and takes away
life at his pleasure. I beseech you to utter
neither crys nor groans at my death; and
instead of rending your garments, and run-
ing to and fro like madmen, pray to God to
have mercy on me. Say Allah Obeor 40, and the
Farisaha 41, that my soul may find comfort.
Since God has so highly favor'd me as to en-
able me to give laws to the earth, whereby
as present thin all the kingdoms of Iran and
Touran no one dare encroach upon his neigh-
bors, not the great opprest the poor, I have
hopes that he will pardon my sins, tho they
are without number. I have this conformation,
that during my reign I have not permitted the
strong to injure the weak. Tho I am not igno-
rant of the instability of the world, yet I
do not advise you to leave off caring for the
affairs thereof; since that will cause disorders
among men, banish safety from the high-
ways, and be an obliclce to the people's quiet:
and it is certain that at the day of judgment
an account will be demanded of those, to
whom the care of these things have been
intrusted.

* God is the most great.
* The first chapter of the Alcoran, which the Mahometans
  recit, as Chriftians do the Lord's-prayer.
I declare my son Pie Mehemed Gehanghir my universal heir, and lawful succesor to the empire. He must pollet the throne of Samarcand with an absolute and independent sovereignty, that he may carefully manage both the religious and civil affairs, and take care of the necessities of the army, and of the cities and countries subject to my jurisdiction. I command you all to obey him, and unanimously to sacrifice your lives in maintaining his authority; that the world may not fall into disorder, and that my labor for so many years may not be lost. If you agree together, no one will dare to oppose you, or offer the least obstacle against the execution of my last will.

Timur then order'd all the Emirs and great lords of the court, and the generals of the army, to come before him, whom he strictly enjoind to see to the execution of his testament; and made them promise in his presence with solemn oaths not to content that any one should oppose it; and he sent orders to all the Emirs and generals who were absent to take the same oaths.

The lords having heard this discourse, were in the utmost contervation, melted into tears, and fell with their faces to the ground. The Emirs Cheik Nouredden and Chamelic, whose hearts were seiz'd with grief and despair, said to Timur, "We could sacrifice our lives with a great deal of pleasure to purchase one single day more for our gracious master. If our death would be of service to you, our lives thou'd call us nothing: but it is impossible to alter the decrees of providence. We are your slaves, and tho' being depriv'd of your presence we have no longer any joy or comme-
The history of Timur-Bec.

"ment, yet we can spare your highness, that as long as we live, we will not fail of continuing obedient to your orders, tho' at the hazard of our lives. May heaven never grant us success, if we have the least thoughts of doing any thing contrary to the will of our benefactor. We will always walk in the same paths of obedience after your death as during your life."

While they were thus speaking, tears gushed out of their eyes, their minds no longer enjoy'd any quiet, and their bodys loft all their natural strength. They told the emperor that if he pleas'd, they would write to the Mirza Calil Sultan, and the Emirs who were at Tachkunt, to come to court, that having the honor to see their master's face once more, they might learn from his own mouth his last will. "For, say they, tho' we shou'd declare to the emper. of your last will with all possible exactness, yet it will not have the same force on 'em, as if they had heard it themselves."

But the emperor answer'd that his hour was approaching, that those who were absent could not come time enough to see him, and that it was impossible for 'em to meet again till the day of judgment. "This says he, is the last audience you will have of me. I have no other delite than to see the Mirza Charoe once more, but that is impossible. God will not have it so."

The ladies and princes, who were in the antechamber to observe the course of his dissembler, on hearing this, lost all patience, and fell into the utmost conformation. Then Timur turning towards the princes his children, spoke to 'em as follows:

"Remember to do every thing I have recommended to you in relation to the public tranquility, and be constantly informing your-"
The history of Timur-Bec.

Book VI.  "Felves of the affairs of your subjects. Be valiant, and courageously keep possession of your swords, that like me you may enjoy a long reign and a vast empire. I have purged the countries of Iran and Iomran from the enemies and disturbers of the people's quiet; and have rendered them flourishing by my justice. If you do what my testament directs, and make equity and justice the rule of your actions, the kingdom will remain a long time in your hands: but if discord creeps in among you, ill fortune will attend your undertakings; your enemies will breed wars and sedition, which it will be difficult to put a stop to; and irreparable mischiefs will arise both in religion and government."

After this discourse the dissenter increas'd; and tho' there were several Imams and readers without the door of the chamber, who read the Alcoran from one end to the other, yet Timur was pleas'd to have the doctor Moutana Hebetulla, son of Moutana Obaid, to read the word of God at his bed's head, and often repeat the belief of the unity of God. At night, between the evening-prayer and bed-time, (that is about eight o'clock) Timur several times made profession of his belief of Lailahillallah, remembering the promise of Mahomet, that he whole last words are, There is no other god than God, shall assuredly enter into paradise. Then he gave up his soul to the angel Efraniel, who called him in these words: "O soul, that hopest in God, return to thy Lord with resignation. We belong to God, and must return to him."

* There is no other god than God.  

This
This fatal event happen'd on Wednesday-Friday, the 17th of Choban 807, which answers to the 14th of Esfendarmez 326 of the Gelalian epoch, the sun being in the eighth degree of Pisces.

Several learned men have composed verses on his death, in which the date of the year is contained; and among others Moulana Behade din Dgyami: they say he was seventy-one years of age, and that he had reigned thirty-six, a number equal to that of his children and grandchildren, as we shall see in the last chapter.

CHAP. XXXI.

Relation of what happen'd after Timur's death.

Timur having pass'd from this mansion of pride to the paradise of eternal delights, fear and horror seize'd both upon his friends and enemies; every one was jealous of disorders and wars, and did not in the least doubt but the security and tranquillity of the state would entirely perish. The affliction would have been insupportable, had not his horoscope predicted the continuance of the crown in his small family; and that the kingdoms he had conquer'd by the strength of his arm, and which he had render'd flourishing by his justice, would remain in peace under the protection of his children who should succeed him in the empire. Notwithstanding this, the princes of the blood cast their crowns upon the earth; the empresses and ladies tore their faces and their hair; the Emirs and principal persons rent their robes, and hanging themselves upon the ground, pass'd that dismal night in grief; and it seem'd as if the heavens had shew'd in this affliction, since rains and
thunder, storms and tempest did not cease all the night.

Next morning the grandees of the court ended their lamentations, to perform the emperor's funeral obsequies. The doctors Hendouehalh Caznegi and Moulana Czolsheddin Sedre had the care of the ceremony. They ordered the prayers and versets of the Alcoran, appointed on these occasions, to be read. Then the body was wash'd, and embalm'd with camphire, musk and rose-water; and being wrap'd up in linen, was laid in a coffin of ebony, after having recommended his soul to God.

When they had finish'd this ceremony, the great Emirs who attended his person, as Birdi Bel, son of Sarhongi, and his brother the Emir Cheik Nouroudin, Chameli, Caja Youser, and several others, solemnly swore they would always associate together, and use their utmost endeavors, even to the hazard of their lives, to see Timur's testament executed. And as the design of the war in China was not yet abandon'd, they kept Timur's death concealed, and forbid the ladies changing their habits, or showing any exterior sign of grief, that the enemy might not have present advice of it.

Afterwards they went to meet the emperor, and held a council with him in relation to what must be done at this present conjuncture. They sent advice of the misfortune to the Mirza Calil Sultan, and the Emirs who were at Tachkent. They dispatch'd express to Yami and Sabran, to the Mirza Sultan Hulein, to advertise him that the emperor's sicknels increase'd, and that he should come to court with but few of his men. They sent Kizir Couthchin to Gaznin, with letters to the Mirza Pir Mehemed Gehanghir, to inform him of Timur's death, and of his will,
in which he had declar'd him his universal heir, and successor to the empire; and they besought him to repair immediately to Samarcand. They also wrote letters to all the Mirzas and governors of provinces, inviting 'em to observe all the vigilance necessary on the like occasions, to guard the country entrusted to 'em, and secure themselves from all reproach; praying 'em to inform themselves exactly of whatever should pass on their frontiers, and give advice of it to court; in fine, to neglect nothing which might hinder any surprize, because the enemies and disturbers of the public tranquillity had kept themselves concealed for several years as it were in exile, and waited only such a favorable opportunity as this; that in the mean while they should execute justice, and continue their favors to the people, that no one might have any thoughts of revolting. The Cherk Temour went express to the Mirza Charocat Herat, Ali Dervich to the Mirza Omar at Tauris, Aratmour to the Mirzas Miran Chah and Aboubere at Bagdad, and another into Fars and Irâc.

CHAP. XXXII.

Timur's coffin transported from Otrar.

The Mirzas, emperors and Emirs, who were at Otrar, on Thursday night the 18th of Chaban 887, at the time of evening-prayers, cover'd the coffin with velvet and black damask; and with it took the road to Samarcand; they pass'd the river Jasarte in the night upon the ice, and went into a wood on the bank of the river: from Otrar to the Jasarte
ares are but two leagues or parasangas. Next morning the grief became so violent, that nothing was heard but the most piteous groans and lamentations, no one being able to abstain from sorrow. The Emirs, Hafsheh and Goutchins call their turbans upon the ground, and cover'd their heads with dust, while the ladies rent their hair, and tore their cheeks with their nails.

After these demonstrations of affliction, the wise Emirs gave the following advice. "Since fate, say they, begins to make us feel misfortunes, we must give way to its force, nothing being able to hold out against its efforts. The most ruin'd politics can't retard its course: death makes no difference between kings and slaves. On this account, the bull method is to fortify our selves with patience, since there is no other remedy, and endeavor by alms, works of piety, prayers, and reading of the Alcoran, to rejoice, if possible, the soul of our deceased master. Death lies in ambush to surprize us; it gives the finishing stroke to all affairs, as well to the conquest of the world, as to the least trial: no one is exempted from it; and he who never dies can't be born again." These counsels not being powerful enough to appease the great despair in which every one was plunged, the Emirs had recourse to Mahomet's death, at the same time beseeching him to intercede for the consolation of the afflicted. They shew'd that this great prophet was the most excellent of God's creatures, and the soul of the prophers, yet the moment destin'd for his death being come, his pure soul broke the cords by which it was tied to his body, and with an entire resignation took its flight towards paradise; that since
since this illustrious man cou'd not be immortal, others must not expect to be so; and however afflictive this misfortune might appear, there was no other remedy to be us'd than to resign our selves to fate, and implore the assistance of God, whose orders we must obey.

C H A P. XXXIII.
The empresses and Emirs hold a council concerning the war of China.

The reading of the history and death of Mahomer having a little moderated the universal grief, the Emirs took this opportunity to give the following council to the empresses and princes.

"There is no doubt, say they, that if so powerful and numerous an army, which was never exceeded by any in past ages, nor probably ever will be in times to come, shou'd march into the enemy's country, we shall safely exterminate the meekers in a short time: and tho' the news of our master's death shou'd be carry'd to the Calmack and Chinese, yet all news being thought either true or false, if we lead our army as far as their frontiers, they will be jealous they have receiv'd false advice, and say that if Timur was dead, no one wou'd be powerful enough to lead an army of that strength; and thus imagining he is yet alive, and that we spread the rumor of his death thro' artifice and delign, they will be for'd with fear, while we shall gain an easy victory. It is requisite that we put all Timur's intentions in execution, and confiding in God, carry
The history of Timur-Bec.

Book VI. carry our arms into China, where we may employ all our strength in prosecuting this religious war, with vigor, which the emperor had resolved to wage with the idolaters of China, in order to procure glory to the Mussulmans. And after we shall have fuciely'd our confidences in this point, we will display the victorious standard, and return to Samarcand, where we will employ all our joint endeavors in the well-governing of the empire. Tho the grace of God, there are more than thirty kings or sons of kings whom our master has left for his successors to the crown, one of whom will necessarily inherit it. For 'twould not be most unhappy that so mighty an army, equip'd, with so much difficulty and care by Timur, after having begun its march, and gone so many days journey with design to make war on the infidels, should return without having executed anything of consequence.

The princes, emperors, and great Emirs revolving these things in their minds, unanimously resolved, that the Emirs, with their regiments should march under the command of the Mirza Ibrahim Sultan, whom Timur had chosen to attend him in the expedition into China; and that they should join the Mirza Cali Sultan at Tachkent, to whom the Mirza Ibrahim Sultan should resign the command of the army, as being the eldest of the Mirzas then present; and that Cali Sultan should bear the name of emperor thro' our the whole campaign; but that the great Emirs of the council should administer the affairs of state under him as such; and lastly, that they should march into China in this order, from whence, after having vanquished the idolaters, ruin the towns, burn the temples, and
and seiz'd on the spoils, they should return to Chap. 34.
Samarcand, where the emperors, Mirza and Emirs should hold a general diet, to execute
Timur's last will and testament.

CHAP. XXXIV.
Timur's coffin is transported to Samarcand.

The foregoing resolution being taken, the
Emirs Coja Yousuf and Ali Coutchin,
with several lords, took the road to Samarcand
with Timur's coffin, where they arriv'd on
Monday night, the 22nd of Chaban 807, and
buri'd Timur with the usual solemnity.
After they were gone, the other great Emirs gave the following counsel to the
emperors. "Tho' our deceas'd master of happy
memory has by his testament ordain'd the
Mirza Pir Mehemed his successor in the em-
• pire; yet as this prince is at Candahar, and
has perhaps pass'd into India, so that he is at
a great distance from us; and if we wait his
arrival to continue the Chinese expedition,
we shall not get there in a proper season for
making war, we will therefore immediately
depart for that campaign; and when that
Mirza shall arrive at Samarcand, which will
be in a little time, because he shall soon re-
ceive the news of the emperor's death, it is
requisite that he enter the city with pomp
and ceremony, and ascend the throne of the
empire according to the will of his deceas'd
grandfather; for to him the crown lawfully
belongs. Timur has always cherished this
Mirza's children more than those of any
other,
other, because he was the son of Gehangir his eldest son, to whom and to his children the succession belongs according to the Mahometan law. We may also truly say, that good fortune has always attended him, and that the majesty of kings may be seen even in his countenance; that he is of a pure faith, governs himself by good maxims, has a generous and brave heart, a noble mind, and a princely behavior. His justice, equity and clemency towards the people are more conspicuous than the sun: and we ought to expect that this great prince's reign will add new splendor to the throne, great advantages to the subjects, peace and tranquility in the kingdoms dependent on this great empire, and a universal satisfaction among the people; so that the approaching installation of this prince may take away from ill-designing persons all means of sowing division, or procuring revolt.

This discourse being ended, the empress Serai Mule Canum, Tekil Canum, Touman Aga, and the other ladies, departed with the Mirzaz Olie-Bec, and others for Samarcand, after the emperor's coffin. The Emirs recommended to him to use all imaginable precautions, especially where they encamp'd, and to send out constantly to gain intelligence for fear of being surpriz'd. This separation was not without mutual affliction.

At ten in the morning of the same day, the Mirza Ibrahim Sultan, and the great Emir took horse at the head of the army, with design to march into China, to execute the emperor's intentions in a Gazzie against the infidels.

Timur's imperial standard, his drum and kettledrums, with the ensigns of his victories,...
The history of Timur-Bec.

were carry'd by a troop of horse of the Mirza Chapuz's. Ibrahim Sultan's court. At the view of this great train an ingenious person made these reflections: "Behold the standards which are the signs of command; to beat the drum, belongs only to kings; since the fame has been done by this young Mirza, he ought to hope for the scepter. These are good omens; and since he is the first who has taken the place of empire, in all likelihood it will return to him again in time." All this happen'd as predicted.

When they had pass'd the Sihon, and marched one league, they went to encamp on the bank of the river Arge, near the bridge of Calidurma, east of Otar. An imperial tent and large pavilion were erected there for the Mirza; and the horse-tail of the deceased emperor was fix'd over against the camp with the usual ceremony. From thence express were sent to the Mirza Calil Sultan, and the great Emirs of the right wing, who were at Tashkent and Charoskia, to inform them that they had sent Timur's coffin to Samarcand, and that the empresses were gone after them; that for their parts they had resolved to continue the war in China, and were set out with that intent. They also sent couriers with the same news to the Mirza Sultan Hullein, who commanded the left wing, desiring him to march immediately with his troops to join them at Joulee, where they might see Timur's last will and testament, and prepare to march with him into China. Joulee, which was the place of rendezvous, is a town five leagues east from Otar.
CHAP. XXXV.

The Mirza Sultan Hussein, Timur's grandson, opposes the sentiment of the Emirs.

Nothing is more certain, than that every enterprise which is not favor'd by providence will prove unsuccessful. Fate had not reliev'd on the design of making war in China, nor which account all the efforts for that purpose were render'd useless, and fortune over-turn'd this hopeful project: for the Mirza Sultan Hussein had no sooner heard of Timur's death, than the desire of revolting, which had lain conceal'd in his breast so long, and the errors of which he had discover'd in the war at Damascus, where thro' an unheard-of cowardice he abandon'd our party, when the Syrian army fall'y'd out of the city to attack us; the desire of revolting, I say, re-kindled in his breast on this occasion: and excited by a deprav'd imagination, he disbanded part of the troops of the left wing, and taking from 'em their horses, put'd the Sihon at Copendo with a thousand men, each having two horses, with whom he took the road to Samarcand by the way of Cazac, designing to surprize the inhabitants of that place by a stratagem, that they might suffer him to enter the city. At noon of the fame day the courier, who had carry'd him the express, return'd with this news. Every one was surpriz'd, and thought of taking the necessary measures for preventing his ambitious designs.

CHAP.
C H A P. XXXVI.

The Emirs write circular letters to give advice to all the provinces of the Mirza Sultan Husein's undertaking.

When the Emirs Cheih Noureddin and Chamelie were inform'd of the unjust proceedings of the Sultan Husein, they immediately wrote the following letter to the Emir Argoum Chah governor of Samarcand. "The Sultan Husein has begun to act his folly's strength; he has disbanded the troops he commanded, and with a thousand horsemen, each having two horses, has taken the road to Samarcand, wherefore be upon your guard for the defence of the city, and omit no precautions. If this rash young prince approach the city, and you meet with an opportunity of taking him, fail not of securing him, that no misfortunes happen thro' his means; for he ought not to be trusted." They wrote another letter with the same advice to the empresses, beseeching them to stop wherever they then were, till they had joined them. They also sent a courier to Coji Youdel to inform him of what had happen'd, advising him to take necessary precautions in relation to the letter, and endeavor to convey it into the city as soon as possible; left the Sultan Husein, excited by his ambition, under pretence of seeing Timur's coffin enter Samarcand, and should get in himself, and stir up a revolt. They dispatched an express to the Mirza Calil Sultan and his great Emirs who were at Tachkunt, which is distant from Otrar.
The history of Timur-Bee.

Book VI. six days journey in the caravan, to let 'em know of the evil design of the Sultan Huftein, who had broke their measures in relation to the war with China; that it was proper for the Emirs at Tashkunt to return with their troops to Azer, which is a famous meadow full of good pasturage; to which place themselves would also repair, and make known to 'em Timur's testament, which he had order'd at the point of death, and which they had sworn to execute; that afterwards they would endeavor in concert to take care of the public concerns, as they should agree together in the diets which were to be held.

When the couriers were set out, the Mirza Ibrahim Sultan, with the Emirs Cheik Noureddin and Chamelle, departed from Otrar, and took the road to Samarcand. TheEmir Birdi-Bei said in his government of Otrar: and as the revolt of the Sultan Huftein had occasion'd some confusion, the whole army march'd in order of battle towards Samarcand. In the evening they pass'd the Sibon, where the ice broke, and three camels laden with gold were drown'd. They march'd all night, and next morning the Emirs join'd the empresses.

On the other hand, there happen'd a very crost affair, which was, that the Emirs of Caill Sultan's court, and even the soldiers of his body of the army, Turks and Tadjics, Iraclians and Nawollians, had had advice before the arrival of the express who set out from Otrar, that the Sultan Huftein had disper'd his troops, and taken the road to Samarcand with a thousand horses; that at the reception of this news the fear emus'd by Timur's death was much increas'd, and that imagining they should in some measure remedy it, the Mirza Ahmed Omar Cheik,
The history of Timur-Bec.

Chahk, and the great Emir Gudaijad Huseini, Chap. 339
Yadhghar Chah Eslar, Chamfeddin Abbas,
Berendac, and other principal officers, had at-
tended at Tachkunt; and without sending for the
advice of the other Mirzas, the empresses,
or great Emir Chah Neureddin and Chameliac,
had advance'd the Mirza Calil Sultan to the
throne of the empire at Tachkunt, and sworn to
obey him, not considering the ill success which
must attend an undertaking of that importance.

CHAP. XXXVII.

A letter to the great Emirs who were at Tachkunt.

The empresses, Mirzas, and Emirs Chahk
Neureddin and Chameliac, having reciev'd
advice of the oath taken by the great Emir to
the Mirza Calil Sultan, whom they had plac'd
on the throne, wrote the following letter to his
by way of reprimand.

"The great Timur our master, of blessed
memory, has ordain'd by his last will the
Mirza Pir Mohamed Gelaughir his heir and
lawful succesor to the empire, whom we have
sworn to obey, tho' at the peril of our lives.

At present you have acted contrary to the
express will of our great master and benefactor.
By this disobeying his last will, you
have forgot the obligations you lie under to
him. We did not doubt that any one had
but advis'd to do as you have done, you
would have oppos'd 'em with all your power.
We can't comprehend how lords of so great
experience have dar'd to commit an action of
such
such ill consequence; which in the end must produce repentance and misery on your side. Your manner of acting will doubtless be charg'd as an excess of ambition: how comes it then that you have wounded your reputation by ingratitude towards your benefactor? You have violated your oath of fidelity to Timur, which you ought never to have done, especially at a time when so many misfortunes have been caus'd by the death of our gracious master. Don't you consider the ill name you'll acquire by this action in history, which will remain to the end of time? How can you consent to this dishonorable deed, who have so often sacrific'd your lives in the pursuit of honor? How can you become traitors to an emperor, for whose sake you have so often and so generously expos'd your selves to the greatest dangers? What is most surprizing is, that your confessions must reprove you at the same time that we do, since you are not ignorant of the crime you have committed. How can persons of your high quality, of so great understanding, and long experience, dare to commit so enormous a fault?"

This letter was fetz'd, and sent by a messenger name'd Abou Dgyoura; who having deliver'd it to the Emirs, they read it, and after a serious reflection, acknowledg'd their fault, and were sorry for it; but repentance was too late, they having resign'd their liberty to another.
CHAP. XXXVIII.

The Emir Berekde arrives at the empress's court, with an answer to the letter sent the Emirs, who were at Tachkunt with the Mirza Calil Sultan.

The Mirzas, empresses and Emirs being encamp'd at Aesouniar, the Emir Berekde, son of Gehan Chah, arrived from Tachkunt, and being admitted into their presence, paid his compliments of condolence; and afterwards took his place in the council-hall with the Emirs Cheik Noureddin and Chamelic, where he presented the following letter written by the Emirs Codadss Buleum and Chamfeddin Abbas.

"We have taken an oath to obey the Mirza Calil Sultan, for the good of both church and state, and to maintain the succession of the kingdom in our master's family for ever. The misfortune which has happen'd so terrible to us, that we fear'd some unexpected revolt, which it would have been impossible to have remedy'd. All we have done was with a sincere intention. A general was wanting to our troops, that no one might have any pretence for revolting, which would have brought the state into confusion and disorder; we therefore imagin'd you would have had the same sentiments with us. But since our proceedings do not agree with the last will of our master, we receive his orders with respect and sincerity; and God forbid..."
we should in any wise contradict 'em. We
shall be always ready to join in whatever you
judge proper to be as to the execution of the
emperor's testament.

The Emirs Cheil Nouseddin and Chumah,
having read this letter, which was conformable
to what the Emir Berendac had declar'd to 'em,
told him they cou'd by no means content to any
thing done in contradiction to Timur's will, and
that they would never acknowledge the Mirza
Calil Sultan. "If we disobey our emperor's
orders, say they, and acknowledge any other
for his successor than whom he has declar'd,
we shall deserve to be loaded with misfortunes
and shame, and to be for ever accurs'd.
We'll take great care as to what we do in this
affair, of which every sensible and impartial
man may judge."

Then the Emirs wrote a second letter to those
at Tachkent, whom they invited to submit en-
tirely to the will, and annul the oath they had
taken into inadvertency; as likewise to remem-
ber the obligations they were under to the em-
peror, and not have cause to blush before him at
the day of judgment. "This action, added
they, will look ill both in the light of God
and man, and be an eternal blot upon you,
which you will never be able to wipe off."

This second letter was put into the hands of
the Emir Berendac, to whom they spake as fol-
loows: "You have committed a great fault,
which you ought to repair by vacating the
oath you have so wrongfully taken, and by
following our master's orders, which we are
all oblig'd to obey. Submit your selves to the
Mirza Pir Mehemed, and persuade the Mirza
Calil Sultan to do the same. You must sign
an agreement to that purpose, and send it to

"vis
us at Samarcand, that we may deliver it to Chap. 18 the Mirza who is the true and lawful heir to the empire. Then the Emir Berendae set out for Tashkunt.

Next day the Mirzas, emperesses and Emirs departed to continue their road towards Samarcand. The Mirza Olouc-Bec, with the Emir Chamalic, at the head of one body of the army, march’d towards the right: and the Mirza Ibrahim Sultan with the Emir Cheik Nouroddin, commanding another body, towards the left. These two Mirzas were then but eleven years old: and Olouc-Bec being elder by four months and twenty days, the Emir Chamalic, when they were arriv’d at Caradgecc, set out before, in pursuance of the resolution taken in the assembly; and being arriv’d at Samarcand, the governor Argoun Chah shut the gates against him, and even plac’d a guard upon the walls. The Mirza Calil Sultan had written a letter to him full of fine promises, by which he engag’d him to be of his side, telling him that if he was willing to gain his favor, he should refite entrance to the Emirs Cheik Nouroddin and Chamalic.

Argoun Chah, puff’d up by this Mirza’s fair promises, which flatter’d the ambition and ingratitude inherent in his Turcoman blood, abandon’d himself to folly, and was won over to the Mirza Calil Sultan. The Emir Chamalic went from the gate of Cheik Zade, which is upon that road, to the gate of Tehchar Raha, where the Emirs Argoun Chah, Caja Youffer, and other chiefs of the city commonly keep their habitations. Argoun Chah would not suffer him to enter, pretending to stand by the orders he had receiv’d of Timur. He moreover told him that he was ready to believe the emperor had by his refi-
The History of Timur-Bec.

Book VI. 

ment ordain'd the Mirza Pir Mohamed, his successor; but that he would wait till all the Mires and Emirs being assembled together agreed on it, that he would then open the gates to them, and they might proclaim the Mirza, and place him upon the throne; after which he would deliver up the government of the city.

The Emir Chameli believing that what Argun Chah had told him was all grime, and that he was riotly'd not to open the gate, return'd very much afflietion: he cross'd the river Coubec, and being arriv'd at Ali Abad, a town of Sogdiana Kela, he met the Mires and empressot, who had pass'd the mountain of Carugree. He told 'em how affairs stood, and his thoughts of Argun Chah's real designs. This renew'd their afflictions, and oblig'd 'em to encamp. Serail Mule Camum and Touman Aga held a council with the Emirs on what was most fitting to be done, and agreed that it would be best to go to Bocara, while they should send the Emir Cheik Noureddin to Samarcand, to persuade the Emirs there to give 'em entrance.

April 14.

This Emir departed the the first of Ramadan 977, and being arriv'd at the gate of Telshar Raha, counself'd the Emirs within, who gave him the same answer as they had the Emir Chameli. Nevertheless Noureddin got off his horse, pass'd the bridge on foot, and spake to 'em before the gate. "Emirs, said he, what we are now talking of is no trelling matter. Per-

mit me then to enter alone into the city, that we may examine together the good and bad consequences of what you are doing, lest you have cause to repent at last." Whatever Nou-

reddin cou'd say, signify'd nothing; for they were buoy'd up with the Mirza. Calil Sultan's pro-
The history of Timur-Bec.

promises. The Emir, for all his words had no effect, return'd to Ali Abad, where he gave an account to the Mirza's and empresses of all that had pass'd.

CHAP. XXXIX.

Relation of what happen'd on the Emir Berendae's return to Tachkunt.

We said before, that the Emir Berendaes had made a treaty at Ashdhal with the Emirs Ghaleh Noureddin and Chamelie, which he had confirmed with an oath, wherein he had promised to risk his life in the defence of Timur's fall will, and that he went back to Tachkunt with letters to the Emirs there. Those Emirs having read those letters, became very sorry for having proclaimed and sworn to the Mirza Calil-Sultan, and unanimously approved of what the Emir Berendaes had told 'em from the other Emirs, saying that the throne belong'd to him whom Timur had declar'd his heir by will, and that they would never consent to alter it. After which they drew up a manifesto, which every one sign'd and seal'd, and the Mirza Calil-Sultan was likewise oblig'd to subscribe. The Mirza order'd Aslimich to carry this paper, with presents, to the Emirs Noureddin and Chamelie, from whence he was to convey it to the Mirza the lawful heir; and before his departure, he said to him, "When you have signal'd the Mirza Pir Mehmed, of my respects, tell him I am his sincere friend, and according to the will of the emperor, our father and master, I acknowledge him his successor in the empire."

Ce 3 In
In this the Mirza acted the part of a hypocrite, his sole desire being to command; and there were some Emirs who egged him on to the execution of his designs, tho' they had had access to his person but for a short time. "The strongest, say they, ought to govern; and he who has any advantage shou'd make use of it. You must, my lord, embrace this opportunity to depart immediately for Samarcand, and ascend the throne, after which you shou'd open the treasure, and by your liberality make both high and low your servants; for man is a slave to favors. Arm your self with policy and courage for your advancement, and lose no time; for such an affair as this won't admit of delay or cowardice. Such an opportunity may not be met with for several ages; do not therefore neglect it. The poet says, procrastin not the happy minute; for next moment an insuperable difficulty may be started."

These advices were so often repeated, that the Mirza's ambition surmounted his reason: he got together all the horses, mules and camels belonging to Timur, and to the Mirzas and Emirs of his attendance, which he had left to graze at Tachkent and Seiram, and distributed 'em among the Emirs and other officers of Farc who were of his party; he gave 'em a great deal of money, fruits, belts, curasses, arms and utensils, which belong'd to the soldiers of the army who were in those quarters; and then he departed at their head for Samarcand. When he was come near the Shon, he encamp'd; and afterwards resolve'd that the Emir Bereniac, with the troops of the right wing, should cross the Shon forthwith on a bridge of boats above Chatoulbia; and that himself would pass over
after him; and then the Emirs Codadad, Cham-
foldin Abbas, and the other Emirs.

The Emir Berendac had already made a secre-
proposall to these Emirs, that he thought
the Emir Cheik Nooreddin and Chameldin to
which they consented, saying, they would do
nothing repugnant to Timur's will, and that
their intention also was to abandon the Mirza
Calil Sultan, and march towards Atchic Fer-
klit. Berendac advis'd em to stay some days
near Tachkent; that he might inform em of
what should happen; and that afterwards they
should unanimously profess whatever was just
and reasonable, that to their designs might have the
difficult success.

CHAP. XL.
The great Emirs oppose the Mirza Calli
Sultan.

THE Emirs Berendac, Rouleem Tani Bou-
ga, and Aboultherim son of Haddi Sefed-
din, being arriv'd at the Sibou, pass'd it on a
bridge; after which Berendac brake it down,
and then went to join the Mirzas and emperors
who were on their road to Samarcand. The
Emirs Codadad and Chamfeldin likewise aban-
don'd the Mirza Calli Sultan, and march'd to
Atchic Ferklit; on advice of which, that Mirza
went to the Sibou, and having rebuild'd the bridge,
pass'd the river next day with his troops. The
Emir Berendac being arriv'd in the neigh-
borhood of Douache, met Gelal Baourdji, who on
the Emir Chameldin's return to Semarcand had
abandon'd the Mirzas and emperors, and was
C. 4 going
going over to the Mirza Calil Sultan, he gave Berendac an account of the Emir Chmelie’s journey to Samarcand, and of Argoun Chah’s refusing him entrance into the city.

The Emir Berendac surpriz’d at this news, and mov’d as well by his ambition as his cowardice, prefer’d policy to justice and reason; and regardless of his oath, or the observance of the rules of equity, immediately return’d to find the Mirza Calil Sultan. On the contrary, Rouflem Tagi Bonga went to Ali Abad, where he inform’d the Mirzas of the Emir Berendac’s return. This latter, ashamed and confounded, beg’d pardon of the Mirza Calil, and solemnly swore to him a second time. The Mirza with those of his party declar’d the paper void, wherein they had promis’d obedience to the Mirza Pir Mehemed, who he had let his feal to it, and sent it by Azilmich; and at the same time he continu’d his road towards Samarcand, with design to subdue the empire. This news being come to the Emirs Cheik Noureddin and Chmelie, they thus address’d the emperors. “The evil comice of seditious persons has at present obtain’d; the Emirs have again taken an oath to the Mirza Calil Sultan; they have violated the treaty which they subjeft’d and feal’d, and are all on their march to Samarcand. He who breaks his word and oath, ought to be abhor’d by every one, as an enemy to mankind. Every body’s heart fhould now be rent into a thousand pieces; for the most powerful emperor, who was in manner the soul of the world, is dead; but fierce is he expir’d, when fame raw roths, whom from the lowest state of life he has raised to the greatest honors, became traitors to him, and forgetting the obligations they
they owe him, contravene his orders, and violate their oaths. How can we disguise our grief at so terrible a misfortune? An emperor, whose equal is no where to be met with, who has sung the songs of the earth to serve at his gate, and has judiciously acquired the name of conqueror, is no sooner past out of this world, than his last will is tampered upon. Religion is barren’d for this world. What unheard-of ingratitude is it, that abject slaves, after so many benefits received, shou’d become the enemies of their great benefactor? If rocks had in a heart, they would mourn at the sight of so abominable an action. Why are not flames sent down from heaven to punish their ungrateful wretches? As for us, may God grant us his grace, that we may not forget our master’s favors; but that after we have besought his intercession, we may employ all our care in the execution of his last will, and in being obedient to the young prince his children, and sacrifice even our lives as faithful servants, rather than disobey him in the least point.

CHAP. XLI.

The Emirs hold a council with the empresses, in relation to their marching to Borsa.

After the Emirs Cheik Noureddin and Chamelle had finish’d this speech, they represented to the empresses, that since affairs had took such a turn, it seem’d requisite that while their majesty’s should go to Samarcand, the
Every one knows that no body had sooner access to the late emperor than we: if therefore we forget the favors we receiv'd of him, we shall deserve to be made miserable for ever. And tho' since his death every one has turn'd his back upon us, yet for our parts we'll never quit our resolution to obey his last orders. If others have no thoughts of blushing before him at the day of judgment, we have. Our intention is to seek the Mirza Pir Mehemed, who is declar'd by Timur's testament the lawful heir to the empire, and to offer our service to him: and to fulfill our benefactor's will, we must risk our lives, and for sake our worldly goods, we'll do it a thousand times rather than fail in our promise, or violate our oath; for if we should be guilty of so infamous an action, we could never hope to enjoy one day in paradise. You, Emirs, who were the nearest officers of that happy emperor, let us know your sentiment with regard to this resolution.

The Emirs of this assembly, whose hearts were sensibly touch'd, unanimously aswore, Our sole intention is to obey our master's orders: since you are resolv'd to execute his last will, we'll follow you with the greatest alacrity, and in what relates to us, we'll employ our utmost care, and sacrifice our very lives.
The history of Timur-Bec.

"lives." The chief of these faithful servants of the emperor, were Atilmich, Tevekul Carzara, Hasan Jagadaqel, Allan Coja Terean, Uftoun, Chamfiddin Almaleghi, Mousa Reemal, Bettet, Vetadar, and others.

C H A P. XLII.

The Mirzâs and Emirs march to Bocara.

After the resolution was taken of going to Bocara, the 3d of Ramazan 897, the Mirzâs Oloue-Bec and Ibrahim Sultan took leave of the empress, who, after excessive grief on both sides, embraced the Mirzâs with the greatest tenderness, and recommended them to the divine protection. These princes took horse, and departed from Ali Abad, trailing only in the assistance of heaven. The Emirs Chilk Noureddin and Chamecic followed them, having with them Timur's treasury, which consisted of ready money, jewels, habits, arms and other riches, which this emperor always kept by him; and they sent Rouflem Taqi Bouga to Bocara before the rest, to give all necessary orders.

C H A P.
C H A P. XLIII.

The empresses march to Samarcand. Their mourning, after the two Mirzas departured.

THE empresses, accompany'd by the young princes the Mirzas children, as Baiera; Aigei, Sauvaccoa, Storgatmiach and others, with several faithful domestics, departed from Ali Abad; and having the decreas'd emperor's horse-tail and drums carry'd before 'em, and his baggage following behind, they took the road to Samarcand, and arriv'd at the gate of Tehihar Raha, with their hair dishevel'd, and their eyes gulling out with tears. The Emiss of the city had the insolence to refuse opening the gate to 'em that day; on which the empresses went down into the garden of the Mirza Charoe near that gate, where they pas'd the night. Next day they enter'd the city with the Mirzas and officers of their household, and lodg'd in the Canical of the Mirza Mehmed Sulatt, where Timur's coffin lay. At their arrival there they uncover'd their heads, and tore their hair; they mangled their faces, and call'd themselves on the ground, to testify their sorrow for the emperor. The princesses Canzade and Rouka Canica, the Mirza Mehmed Gehannahir, with several grandees of the empire, as the Coja Abdulevel and others, with the wives of the Cherifs and principal persons, having felts about their necks, and their faces torn, assembled together in different mourning habits. The inhabitants shut up the shops and markets; and every one made lamentations over the
The history of Timur-Bec. 412

the emperor's corps. The affliction was not only among the inhabitants of Samarcand; but also spread throughout all Asia.

C H A P. XLIV.

Account of what pass'd among the Mirzas and Emirs who were gone to Bocara.

The Mirzas Olone-Bec and Ibrahim Sultan, who had taken the road to Bocara from Ali Abad, arrived the fourth of Ramadan 807 at the walls of Debbous, a very high fortress, at the foot of which runs the river of Samarcand. They were met there by Began Temour-Cazen, brother of Mengual Coji, from Samarcand, who brought a letter from Coji Louis and Argoun Chah, the tenor of which was as follows. "After the usual salutations, we let you know that tho' we have relin'd to open the gates of the city to you, it was not thro' any motive of treason, or with intent to revolt; our design is only to observe Timur's tall will, to the alteration of which we'll never consent. If the Mirza Calil Sultan shou'd come hither, we wou'd use him in the same manner. We are relin'd to preserve this city, it being the seat of the empire, and not deliver it up to any one till the coming of the Mirza Pir Mehemed, the lawful successor to the crown, into whose hands we will resign it according to the emperor's testament. We thus let you know the state of affairs, that you may not be incens'd against us." At the end of the letter they swore to perform what they promis'd.
The history of Timur-Bee.

Book VI.

The Mirzas, notwithstanding the oath, suspected the promises of these flatterers; but not to irritate them in this bad conjuncture, they dissembled their suspicion, and order'd the messenger to salute the Emirs, and tell 'em that if their intention was to do what they had promised, it would be better for 'em, since it was the way which every honest and sensible man would take. Besides this they wrote a letter, in which they mildly advis'd 'em to continue firm in the resolution they had taken, and to govern the city according to their duty, without hearkening to any mitigations to the contrary; for if they kept their word, and acknowledged the obligations they had received from the emperor, in maintaining the city for the Mirza Pir Mehemed, they would fulfill their master's will; it being an indispensable obligation on every one to do that which is well-pleasing both to God and man, that to their integrity might be mention'd with honor by posterity. They likewise order'd him to tell 'em they need not doubt but that, when the Mirza shou'd be fix'd upon the throne, he would distinguish them above all others, as they had prefer'd it for him, but if they shou'd transgress the orders of their benefactor, they would commit a very heinous and treasonable action, and besides the dishonor and infamy of it, would incur a severe punishment, and must in the end repent in vain. They seal'd up this letter, which they deliver'd to Bayan Temour Cazett, who immediately return'd with it to Samarcand.
C H A P. XLV.

The Mirzacs and Emirs at Bocara receive advice of the Mirza Calil Sultan's arrival at Samarcand, and of the obedience paid him by the Emirs of that city.

By Y A N Timour Cazen being return'd to Samarcand, the Emirs continued their journey towards Bocara, and two or three days after receiv'd advice that the Mirza Calil Sultan, who had taken the road of Samarcand from Tachkent, with the Emirs of his party and his troops, being excited by a desire of ambition and dominion, had made great haste; that being arriv'd near the city, the Emir Coja Yousef went out to meet him with presents, and had receiv'd him as emperor, having call'd gold and precious stones before him, and kiss'd his hand at Ghiraz, a village four miles from Samarcand; that the Cheifs and principal persons of the city had done the same; that when the Mirza was arriv'd at the bank of the river of Couher, Argoush Chali went out to make his submission to him, and had deliver'd the keys of the city and castle, with those of the treasury of that capital, into his hands; and that all the traitors of the city and of the Mirza's court had unanimously resolv'd to acknowledge him for their sovereign, regardless of their oaths, or the obedience due to Timur's last testament.

The Emirs Cheik Noureddin and Chamelec having heard this news, load'd the ingrateful perjurers with curses; and wrote a letter to
em full of reproaches, which they sent by an express. Then continuing their road, they met Roultam Berlas, brother of Hamza, governor of Bocara, whom they had sent thither before, and was return'd to meet the Mirzas, who being arriv'd before the city went to visit the sepulcher of the prophet Job, whose assillance they implored. They made a new treaty in this holy place, which they confirm'd by solemn oaths. Afterwards they took horse, and enter'd Bocara; they lodg'd in the castle, which they rebuilt, and augmented the fortifications. As to the guard of the city, they agreed that the gate which opens upon it, with one half of the castle, should be under the care of the Mirza Oloue-Ber; and that the gate which looks upon the one-part, with the other half of the castle and walls, should be commanded by the Mirza Ibrahim Sultan, attended by the Emir Cheik Noureddin; that the city should be guarded by the Emirs Roultam Berlas, his brother Hamza, Aximich, Tevechul Carcar, and others, each of whom should have the care of a gate, as well as of the bastions and walls. Having all come to this resolution, they began immediately to put it in execution, and to rebuild the walls of the city.
CHAP. XLVI.

Coronation of the Mirza Calil Sultan at Samarcand.

The astrologer Moulama Bedreddin having made choice of Wednesday the 10th of Ramadan 807, which answers to the year of the Hix, the sun being in the sixth degree of Aries, for the coronation of the Mirza Calil Sultan, that prince made his entry the same day into Samarcand, and took possession of the great imperial palace, where the treasures of all Asia were amassed. Being seated on the throne in his imperial habits, he receiv'd the submission of the Mirzas, Emirs, and principal men of the state, who on their knees congratulated his accession to the throne.

As soon as he was invest'd, to show he had an outward regard to Timur's testament, he gave the title of Can to the Mirza Mehemed Gehanghir, son of the Mirza Mehemed Sultan, and nephew of the Mirza Pir Mehemed, the this young prince was but nine years of age: and his name was plac'd at the top of all the patents and imperial orders according to custom, that the Mirza Calil Sultan had the sole disposal of everything, as if he had been the lawful sovereign of all Transoxiana.

Two days after, this new emperor went to the Camieh of the deceased Mirza Mehemed Sultan, where Timur's tomb was, to pay his devotions, and perform the public ceremonies of mourning. The empresses, Mirzas, Emirs, and all the people came there in black habits, and wept and made
made bitter lamentations. By the Mirza Calil Sultan's order the whole Alcoran was read thrice, alms were distributed among the poor and sick, and a great funeral-banquet prepared.

Then the emperor's drum was beat in a very mournful manner, after which it was broke to pieces according to custom. The learned men and poets composed panegyrics and epitaphs upon the emperor; and among others the son of the Coja Mafaoud Hocari, and the Coja Afmet Ulla.

As the pious Timur, by reason of the love he always bore to the Cherifs, had several times desired that his tomb should be plac'd under that of the great Cherif Seid Bereke, that Cherif's coffin was transported from Andeoud, and inter'd under the mausoleum Timur had erected near the alcoy of the Cimacah: and Timur's body was plac'd underneath that of the Cherif, according to the orders he had given; the corps of the Mirza Mehemed Sultan was also transported to the same mausoleum, and bury'd at the emperor his grandfather's side. May God enlighten their souls with the lamps of his mercy.

When the Mirza Calil Sultan was fix'd on the throne, he open'd his treasures, and distributed them very liberally among the Emirs, principal lords, and soldiers: but why should it be call'd liberality? it was rather imprudence and prodigality, for he distributed his gold like measures of wheat, and it was carry'd away by loads, as corn out of barns, to the great amazement of the people.
CHAP. XLVII.

Abridgment of the history of the reign of the Mirza Calil Sultan: and the cause of his ruin.

LEARNED men have accounted kings the shadow of God, and acknowledged that the power of sovereigns is as a ray of the Divinity. But nothing is likewise more certain, than that he who believes himself capable of worthily acquitting that great charge without the divine assistance, gives credit to what is both absurd and impossible: for God always favors with his mercy the good man, and prefers above all other potentates those who regularly pay their devotions to him, and distribute alms to the poor. We may also be assured that a state is not well govern'd by its vaults, treasures and magazines, nor by the multitude of its troops or the great number of its captains; but by the protection of the Almighty. In fine, there is something besides valor requisite for the governing of a great empire.

The truth of this plainly appears in the case of the Mirza Calil Sultan, who thro' injustice and favorable conjunctures became master of so vast an extent of ground, as scarcely ever any one emperor possessed so much. His birth, as grandson of the great Timur-Bec, drew on him the attention of the whole universe: and at his grandfather's death, most part of the Novians and great Emirs were with him at Tachkunt. When they receiv'd the news of that misfortune, their hearts were fill'd with fear: and as
of Timur's children, there were none at that place older than the Mirza Calil Sultan, every one took an oath to him, thinking by this means to preserve the crown for ever in Timur's family.

The Mirza at the same time took the road to Samarcand, and at his arrival there, perceived a general confusion among the people, the chief of whom, judging it best so to do, went to meet him, and congratulate him on his coming to the crown. The Emirs who had the keys of the city and treasury, likewise resigned them to him, and so he easily became master of the throne of Samarcand. This city was then in a very flourishing condition, being inhabited by princes and great lords, learned doctors, and the most skilful artists in the world; for most of the tradesmen of the towns conquer'd by Timur, had left their own country to dwell in this great city, it being the seat of the empire of Asia. We will not mention the immense treasures of ready money, precious stones, fruits, belts, curious velvets and toys, which were innumerable; nor the arms, bucklers, tents, pavilions, canopies, thrones, and other marks of grandeur, riches and magnificence, which had been amassing for several ages by the princes of all the kingdoms of Asia, and had been pillag'd by Timur from the emperors and princes of the countries of Iran and Touran, from the country of the Calmaes to the frontiers of Greece and Natolia; and from the farther part of India to the frontiers of Syria, and from Carezem and the great Capchae to the limits of Rurha, Ciscaua, Bulgaria and Europe: besides which was the tribute of thirty-six years receive'd from all Asia.

This
This city, tho' vastly rich, and filled with great quantities of gold, and abundance of soldiers, fell into the hands of the Mirza Cali Sultan without his striking a blow for it; but this prodigal prince squander'd away all those treasuries, brought all this grandeur to nothing, and entirely ruined this vast power in less than four years; which was one means made use of by fate to ruin his good fortune.

The second cause was the Mirza's violent passion for Chudi Male, one of the concubines of the Emir Haidgi Setoddin, whom he had privately marry'd in the emperor's absence, and could never fail except in secret; but when he found himself an absolute sovereign, he resign'd everything up to the will of this beauty, and took no pleasure but in her company, her charms being the subject of all his thoughts; while she saw'd no regard either to princes or nobles, but accounted everything below her; and even the emperor, laying aside his sovereignty, became her slave, and breath'd only by her permission. This brought disorder upon the state, and upon the Mirza's affairs, in that nothing succeeded in which the sovereign authority had any concern. He squander'd away all his riches, and chiefly among those who were afterwards the instruments of his ruin: and tho' he was so rich that all the wealth of Hasan and the tribe of Tai did not amount to a tenth part of one of his treasuries, yet he soon spent all. He had neglected the counsel not to be over-liberal, for fear of being at last left naked; and he seem'd ignorant, that one should give only to those who deserve it, and that in moderation.

On this account, the first thing to be mention'd as done by this prince was his excessive...
prodigality. He sprinkled handfuls of precious stones on the heads of the multitude of his subjects who had been in his service, in a manner, to flog a little earth, while persons of extraordinary merit could obtain nothing, or at least but a trifling sum. It was then a perfect game of hazard; for he who put in a penny, carry'd away a million; and those who deliberated with the treasures of his kingdom, died without having a tenth part. Moreover, the Mirza advanced several strangers of mean extraction, made 'em Emirs, and gave 'em the finest places in the state; which discovered a great want of policy and conduct; for it alienated the hearts of the great Emirs of his court, and the generals of his army from him; and even those upstarts whom he had enriched, fell into an excess of self-love and pride, which was the root of many disorders. "Below you not honors, says the poet, upon him then a lowly, humble by degrees; for if you advance him on a sudden, he will become insensible of the favors you have heap'd on him, and of the obligations he owes to you."

Besides all this, as the Sultan Calil's mistresses was inferior in rank to the deceased emperor's wives, and these mistresses became jealous of her growing greatness, she conceived a great indignation against 'em, and prevailed Calil to give each of 'em, as well as Timur's concubines, to some brave Emir in marriage, who might by that means, as he pretended, become more attached to his interest, and so bring the state into better order. Accordingly he behav'd himself towards those venerable empresses, whom he ought to have reverenc'd as his own mother, in a manner condemn'd by all men of sense, forcing them to marry those who were unworthy to be their porters; he call angels into the
mouths of fayres, gave eagles to crows, luring Charms, pearls with pieces of glass, and rubys with flints; which she did without the leasi remorse. But he did not consider, that a king who had call off all thoughts of honor and justice, will shortly lose his kingdom. In effect, his actions drew on him the aversion of his soldiers, and even of all his subjects: and as he no longer acted with sincerity, the public affairs fell into the utmost disorder and confusion. "He run, " says a certain poet, the ship of empire a- "ground; both himself and his lady were cast " away: for the kingdom slip'd out of his " hands, and he fell from the utmost height."

The source of all these disorders was the great familiarity the Mirza had with strangers, and persons of no figure or merit. The good ought to avoid the wicked, for the wicked are the cause of their ruin. These events shew the great soul and admirable conduct of Timur-Bec in his governing the empire: they let us see that his ordering the death of this woman was not without the providence of God, tho at that time every one was ignorant of the ill consequence of her being Fuller'd to live.
The history of Timur-Bec.

Book VI.

C H A P. XLVIII.

Conclusion of the history of Timur-Bec, wherein the qualities by which that conqueror surpassed all the kings who preceded him, are set down.

The names of his children who survived him.

The glorious perfections by which the incomparable Timur-Bec adorned the regal dignity, were his sincere piety, the great veneration he bore to religion, his strict justice, and unbounded liberality, the effects of which were daily seen and felt by his people.

As his great qualities have been mention'd in the series of this history, our design at present is to take notice of certain which were peculiar to him. And among others, with regard to his birth, it is proper to be inform'd, that tho' his ninth grandfather was Tumane Can, of the race of Buzengger Can, chief of a branch of the tribe of Cayat, who was descended from Thuk, the son of Japhet, the son of Noah, on whom may salvation rest; (from whence we discover that his ancestors were Cani and emperors) yet the Emir Tegat his father, as well as his grandfather the Emir Borkull, having abdicated the kingdom, and left the government of the principality of Kech, which they had preserv'd with the Tuman of ten thousand men added thereto, to the children of their uncles of the family of Berlas; we may say that Timur-Bec brought the crown into this august family, he being the first emperor in it.
At the age of twenty-five he attained to the highest dignities, with admirable courage, and an ambition admired by all the world, endeavoring to bring the great talents he had received from nature to perfection. He spent nine years in different countries, where his good sense and great genius appeared in councils and assemblies, while at the same time his intrepidity and valor drew upon him every one's admiration, whether in personal combats, or in pitch'd battles, where no conqueror before him could boast performing even the tenth part of his actions.

The truth of what we advance may easily be conceived, when we reflect on the actions related in this book, and we are not at all apprehensive that our history will be taxed with exaggeration. He mounted the throne of the empire when thirty-four years old, and reigned successfully for thirty-six years, during which time he gained a considerable number of conquests; for he made himself master of the three empires of Zagatai Can, Touchi Can, and Hulacou Can; he subdued the greatest citys, and kingdoms of Affra; and extended the limits of his dominions as far as the borders of that part of the world; so that his power, riches and magnificence were greater than we can possibly imagine. This is so certain, that we need only read the histories of other kings and princes, in whose families the crown has continued a long time, to be satisfy'd of it. But the chief proof of his great power was, that to whatever place he march'd to wage war, he soon conquer'd it, and gave the government thereof to some of his children or officers; not acting like ancient conquerors, who were contented with those rokens of submission which vanquish'd princes might make by a tribute.
One thing further remarkable in this monarch was, that he always obferved the wholesome maxim of holding diets; yet he never solely confided in them; but constantly did what his own good genius inspir'd in him, and had such good success in all his undertakings, that it seemed as if he had been always under the care of divine providence. He could not be shaken in his resolutions; he had the policy to be present at the execution of his most important enterprises, either as to the state or religion. Both in peace and war he would put forward every thing himself.

Besides his great and continual employments in war and the government, there remain many monuments of his ambition and grandeur, in cities, towns, castles, and walls which he built, in rivers and canals which he dug; and in works of piety, as mosques, chappels, hospitals, bridges, palaces, monasteries, gardens, vineyards, and pleasure-houses, which he erected in divers parts of Asia, in so great a number, that it would take up a large volume only to enumerate them, without describing each in particular. And it would be no exaggeration to say, that a king would be accounted very powerful and magnificent, who should have employ'd thirty-six years only in building the great edifices which Timur did; and that he would be thought to surpass all the kings of the earth in that account, without carrying on those long wars, and obtaining the surprising conquests which he did. Are not all the caravanseras in the great roads of Asia for the accommodation of travellers, the magnificent monasteries and hospitals, from which the poor, the sick and travellers reap so great advantage, by the alms distributed there; are not these,
The history of Timur-Bec.

1. Say, the good works of this pious emperor, who now reaps the fruits of them in eternity?

We may also consider the blessings this emperor received from heaven in the great number of children he left behind him: which were thirty-six sons, and seventeen daughters living, according to the following detail.

The deceased Mirza Ghanghur his eldest left eleven princes; for the deceased Mehemed Sultan had had three sons, Mehemed Ghanghur, then nine years of age, Sadrecaas six, and Yahia five. The Mirza Pir Mehemed Ghanghur twenty nine years old, had seven sons, Caidou nine years of age, Caled seven, Buzendger, Sadrecaas, Tenjudger, Caifer, and Dughanghur.

The deceased Mirza Omar Cheik left nine sons; Pir Mehemed, twenty-six years old, who had one son, of seven years of age, nam'd Omar Cheik; Rustum, aged twenty-four, who had two sons, Olman six years old, and Sultan Ali one year; Estender twenty-one years of age; Ahmed eighteen years; Sidi Ahmed fifteen; and Huser Hafiz twelve.

The sons of the Mirza Mian Chah, thirty-eight years of age, were in all seven: Alengher, twenty-three years old, who had two sons, Alengher nine years of age, and Olman Chelebi four; Omar twenty-two years old; Calid Sultan twenty-one; Aigil ten; and Sirojtmich six.

The Mirza Charoc, twenty-eight years of age, had seven sons: Obau-Bec and Ibrahim Sultan, both eleven years old; Baframet eight years; Sirojtmich six; Mehemed Fenki three years; Fawdlen two years; and Yarar one year.

These
The history of Timur-Bee.

Book VI. These thirty-six princes were all living at Timur-Bee's death: besides whom he had one daughter nam'd Sultan Bact Begum, and sixteen granddaughters: the Mirza Omar Cheik had three daughters, the Mirza Mehemed Sultan three, the Mirza Miran Chah four, and the Mirza Charoe one; the Mirza Pir Mehemed Gehanghir three, the Mirza Aboubeere one, and the Mirza Calil Sultan one.

The Mirza Sultan Hullem, twenty-five years of age, was the son of Timur's daughter nam'd Akia Beghi or Fagi Can; and his father was the Emir Mehemed Bei, son of the Emir Moulia.

And as it was written in the book of fate, that the crown should continue in this illustrious family by the branch of the Mirza Charoe and his children: after having now finish'd the history of the glorious actions of Timur-Bee, we intend to compile a history of the Mirza Charoe, and give a true relation of his great actions, which prov'd him the worthy successor of the most illustrious conqueror who ever appeared in the world.

The end of the second volume.
I have read by order of my lord chancellor the history of Timur-Bec, grand Cae of Tartary; and believe the public will receive as much pleasure as advantage from a work, in which the reader will discover the geography of the vast regions of Tartary, so little known in this part of the world.

Paris Decemb. 24.
1720.

L. De VERTOT.
THE
CONTENTS
OF THE
FIRST VOLUME.

BOOK I.

Chap. 1. Of Sultan Cezan, grand Can of Zagatai; his defeat and death. Mir Cezan, a Turkish prince, takes upon him the government of the empire, and establishes a grand Can. The war of Mir Cezan against Malek Husein, prince of Herat. 

Chap. 2. Of the government of the Mirza Abdalla, the son of Cezan; and of the difference which happened between the princes of Zagatai. 

Chap. 3. Tojar Timur Can, king of the Goers, marches into Transoxiana. The flight of Haji Berlas. 

Chap. 4. The rise of Mir Husein, grandson of Mir Cezan; he is assisted by Timur-Bec. 

Chap. 5. Several intrigues between Timur and Haji Berlas; as also between the other princes. 

Chap. 6. The king of the Goers returns to Transoxiana with a great army. The death of Haji Berlas. The Can confirms Timur in the possession of his country of Kohb, and of a Toman of ten thousand men.

Chap.
The CONTENTS.

Chap. 7. Timur-Bez marches in search of Emir Husein.

Chap. 8. Several warlike exploits of Timur and Husein.

Chap. 9. The encounter of the army of Geta, and its defeat, caused by the policy of Timur-Bez; with the reduction of the city of Keche.

Chap. 10. The death of Tehta, Timur Can, king of the Getai; and the defeat of his army by the generals Timur-Bez and Husein.

Chap. 11. The assembly of the princes convened by Timur and the Emir Husein, in which they elevated Cabulakh Agha to the dignity of grand Can.

Chap. 12. The battle of Lai, or of the slaughter.

Chap. 13. The retreat of Timur-Bez and Husein, Sancassan being led by the Getai.


Chap. 15. Timur-Bez brings an army into the field against Emir Husein.

Chap. 16. Several exploits of Timur, and intrigues of the princes. The march of Timur to Cascheh.

Chap. 17. Mir Husein brings an army into the field to oppose Timur.

Chap. 18. The siege and taking of Bocara by the army of Husein. Timur defeats the army of the Caschehs.

Chap. 19. Timur sends an ambassador to Malek Husein at Herat.

Chap. 20. Timur defeats the army of the Emir Husein in Cascheh.

Chap. 21. The Emir Husein sends an army against Timur, which is defeated.

Chap. 22. The Emir Husein again seeks to make peace with Timur.

Chap. 23. The Emir Husein brings an army into the field from Bedakhan.
The CONTENTS.

Chap. 14. Timur marches at the head of an army to repulse the Geetzes.

Chap. 15. Timur returns from Bedakhshan.

Chap. 16. A second rupture between Timur and Husein.

BOOK II

Chap. 1. The establishment of Timur on the throne of the empire of Zagatai.

Chap. 2. Timur returns from the city of Bala to Samarcand; the building of the castle and fortress of that metropolis.

Chap. 3. The Cendilat, that is, the diet or assembly of the states, caused by Timur's orders.

Chap. 4. Timur marches to Cheborgan at the head of an army.

Chap. 5. Timur sends an army to Bala and Termes.

Chap. 6. Timur sends the Emir Tahan to besiege Cheborgan.

Chap. 7. Timur marches an army into the country of the Geetz.

Chap. 8. A second expedition of Timur against the Geetz.

Chap. 9. The embassy from Timur to Husein Sofi, king of Carezem.

Chap. 10. Timur departs from Samarcand, to make war on the king of Carezem.

Chap. 11. Timur makes peace with Ysaph Sofi, who succeeded Husein, and demands in marriage the princess Cascade for the prince Gébagnet his eldest son.

Chap. 12. Timur marches a second time into the kingdom of Carezem.

Chap. 13. The famous embassy from Timur to the king of Carezem, to demand the princess Cascade.
The CONTENTS.

Chap. 14. Timur marches a third time into the country of the Getes. 163

Chap. 15. Timur's marriage with the princess Dilche-dega, daughter of Camreddin king of the Getes. Timur is in danger of losing his life by a conspiracy which he narrowly escap'd. 166

Chap. 16. Timur marches a third time to Carezam, and returns on the revolt of Sär Bouga and Adel-chub. 168

Chap. 17. Timur's fourth expedition to the kingdom of the Getes. 171

Chap. 18. The death of Mirza Ghanaghur, Timur's eldest son. 174

Chap. 19. Timur's fifth expedition against the Getes. 176

Chap. 20. Timur's fifth expedition to the country of the Getes against Camreddin. Toctamich Agla, descended from Tushchi, son of Gueghiz Can, arrives at court, and purifies himself under the protection of Timur. 179

Chap. 21. Timur gives Toctamich Agla the principalities of Ouarz and Sabroun; and affirms him in making himself master of the empire of Capchac, which he claims as his right; the Ouarz Can, descended from Gueghiz Can, was in possession of it. 180

Chap. 22. Preparations for war. Timur brings an army into the field against Ouarz Can, emperor of Capchac and grand Raffia. 183

Chap. 23. Timur's irruption into the country of Ouarz Can. Toctamich Agla placed on the throne of Capchac, otherwise called the empire of Tushchi Can. 185

Chap. 24. The birth of prince Chaurz, son and heir to the emperor Timur. 187

Chap. 25. Timur sends Toctamich Can to attack Timur Melé Can, emperor of Capchac. 189
The CONTENTS.

Chap. 26. Embassy from the emperor Timur to Joseph Sofi king of Carezam. 191
Chap. 27. Timur's fourth war in Carezam; death of Joseph Sofi; conquest of that kingdom. 194
Chap. 28. Foundation of the walls of Kech, the country of Timur; the building of the palace of Askeran. 199
Chap. 29. The Emir Haji Seifeddin sent ambassador to Herat, to Malek Cayseddin Pir Ali, king of Carezama. 200
Chap. 30. Mirza Miran Chah, son of Timur, marches into Carezama, to make war on Malek Cayseddin Pir Ali, prince of Herat. 202
Chap. 31. Timur's army marches to make war on Persia, and the rest of the empire of Iran. 204
Chap. 32. Reduction of Fuchchage, a town of Carezama. 207
Chap. 33. Reduction of Herat, capital of Carezama. 209
Chap. 34. The army marches to Tous and Kelat. 213
Chap. 35. Timur returns to Samarcand. 215
Chap. 36. Death of Akia Beghi, daughter of Timur, and wife of the Emir Bei, son of the Emir Mouffet. 216
Chap. 37. Timur's second expedition into the kingdom of Iran or Persia. 219
Chap. 38. Reduction of the town of Tarchez, in Carezama. p. 225
Chap. 39. The arrival of an ambassador from Fins, or the true Persia, at the court of Timur. 227
Chap. 40. Timur marches into the province of Mazendran. 229
Chap. 41. Timur marches to Samarcand. Death of the empress Dichshalaga, and of the princess Cathic Tarcan Ages, Timur's wife. 231
| Chap. 42. | Timur sends a fresh army into the country of the Geetas. | 235 |
| Chap. 43. | Timur marches to Mazandran, and thence to Sistan. | 236 |
| Chap. 44. | Town of Sistan besieged and taken. | 239 |
| Chap. 45. | Timur marches to Bost. | 245 |
| Chap. 46. | War against the Ougames, inhabitants of the mountains, south of Candahar. | 247 |
| Chap. 47. | Timur returns to Samarcand. | 250 |
| Chap. 48. | Timur marches into the province of Mazandran. | 251 |
| Chap. 49. | Timur marches into the province of Iraq Agemi. | 256 |
| Chap. 50. | The emperor Timur marches to Sulaiman. | 257 |
| Chap. 51. | Timur returns to Samarcand, the capital of his empire. | 259 |
| Chap. 52. | Timur enters the kingdom of Iran, where he stays three years successfully. | 261 |
| Chap. 53. | Timur marches to Azerbijain, or the country of the ancient Medes. | 263 |
| Chap. 54. | Timur enters Georgia at the head of his army. The description of the Persian way of hunting; at all of the Gherds and Noshes. | 267 |
| Chap. 55. | Timur returns to Caspaug. | 269 |
| Chap. 56. | The march of Timur to Berdia. The motion of the army of Captains. Defeat of the Soups of Tchaniuch Can. | 273 |
| Chap. 57. | The arrival of the empress Setar Mokam, and the princes her sons. | 277 |
| Chap. 58. | Timur's army marches against Cara Mohammed, prince of the Turcomans. | 278 |
| Chap. 59. | Timur marches to Van and Vahgn. The letter which Chu Chaj a king of Persia wrote to Timur at his death. | 284 |
| Chap. 60. | Timur marches again into the countries of Fars and Iraq Agemi. | 289 |
The CONTENTS.

Chap. 61. Timur marches to Chiraz, the capital of Fars or the true Persia. 294
Chap. 62. Reasons which induced Timur to return to the capital of his empire. 297
Chap. 63. Timur returns to Samarcand and gives the government of Fars and Iraq to the family of Muzaffer. 301
Chap. 64. The emperor orders a process against some Emirs, whom he had left in Transoxiana. 303

BOOK III.

Chap. 1. Timur-Bek departs for his fifth expedition into the kingdom of Carezam. 305
Chap. 2. Some accidents during Timur's expedition into Carezam. 308
Chap. 3. Timur departs to make war in Capchau, and is victorious over Tocamich Cas. 317
Chap. 4. Timur sends the Mirza Miran Chab into Carezam. 323
Chap. 5. Timur's expedition into Mogulistan against Kezei Caja Aglen, and the prince Asenatara; which made the fifth campaign in that country. 325
Chap. 6. Timur holds a diet, and sends his armies into all the quarters of the Moguls, to fight the Getes. 331
Chap. 7. Timur returns to the seat of his empire. 338
Chap. 8. The Couraultai, or diet, held by Timur's order. 342
Chap. 9. Timur sends his troops into the country of the Getes. 344
Chap. 10. Timur marches into the desart of Capchau. 347
Chap. 11. Timur reviews his troops. 356
Chap. 12. Timur sends the Mirza Mahemer Sultan at the head of the foots. 359
The CONTENTS.

Chap. 13. Battle between the scions of the two armies. Death of the Emir Alcunian, and other famous men. 367
Chap. 14. The army rang'd in order of battle in an extraordinary manner. A terrible fight which ensued thenceon. 371
Chap. 15. Timur returns from the defeat of Cuphane to the fear of his empire. 372
Chap. 16. The government of Zabulistan given to Mirza Pir Mehemet, son of Gehangir. 384
Chap. 17. Timur departs for a war of five years continuance. 386
Chap. 18. Timur departs from Toudiex after his recovery. 388
Chap. 19. The taking of Anmol, Sari, and Mubar said. 390
Chap. 20. Timur sends a letter to Samarcand. 396
Chap. 21. Timur makes war a second time on the kingdom of Fars and Iran. 399
Chap. 22. Timur marches to the kingdom of Lorestan and Cassellan. 401
Chap. 23. An account of the motions of the princes of Fars; or of Persia and Iran, in which the present affairs depend. 406
Chap. 24. Timur marches to Chiraz against Chah Manfuir. 411
Chap. 25. Battle between Timur and Chah Manfuir. The death of the latter. 416
Chap. 26. Timur seizes the princes of the house of Muzaffer, and disperses of their effects among his brothers. 422
Chap. 27. Timur marches to the kingdom of Iran. Agami, or Hacanis. 424
Chap. 28. Timur invades the Mirza Miran Chah in the kingdom of Halietan Can. 426
Chap. 29. Timur conquers the Turkoman Hachen Sroec. 427
Chap. 30. Timur marches to Bagdad. 431
The CONTENTS.

Chap. 31. Return of Mirza Mehemer Sultan after the defeat of the Caudel robbers. 418
Chap. 32. Timur sends his ambassador to the Sultan Barac in Egypt. 439
Chap. 33. The taking of the town of Tercit. 441
Chap. 34. Timur continues his journey, and sends his princes and Emirs to make inroads in several kingdoms. 448
Chap. 35. Timur marches to Diarbeik. 450
Chap. 36. Timur marches to Edessa. 452
Chap. 37. Death of Mirza Omar Cheik, Timur's son. 455
Chap. 38. Timur marches to Gazire. 460
Chap. 39. Timur's second enterprise upon Mardin. 461
Chap. 40. Birth of the Mirza Oluc Besi. 463
Chap. 41. Timur marches to Amud or Hamid, capital of the country of Diarbeik. 464
Chap. 42. Timur returns to Isfahan. 467
Chap. 43. Timur sends bodies of soldiers into several countries to enlarge his conquests. 468
Chap. 44. The taking of the town and fortress of Aversic. 471
Chap. 45. Timur's return after the taking of Aversic. 477
Chap. 46. Timur sends an army into Georgia. 479
Chap. 47. The birth of Ibrahim Sultan, son of Char-vo. 486
Chap. 48. Sulema rejoiceing for the birth of Ibrahim Sultan, son of Charvo. 488
Chap. 49. Timur constitutes the Mirza Charoe governor of Samarcand. 484
Chap. 50. Timur goes in person to the Georgian war. 485
Chap. 51. Timur marches a second time into Caphenat against Toctamich Can. 487
Chap. 52. Timur reviews his army. 490
Chap. 53. Battle between Timur and Toctamich Can. 493
Chap.
The CONTENTS.

Chap. 54. Timur goes in pursuit of Totamich Cot, and installs a new Cap of Capochac. 408
Chap. 55. Timur marches into Europe; and pillages the western Capochac, as also Muscovy and Russia. 501
Chap. 56. Timur makes war in Circassia. 505
Chap. 57. Timur marches to Alburz Coub, as mount Caucasus. 506
Chap. 58. Timur attacks the fortresses of Cula, Timur, and others. 509
Chap. 59. Timur marches to Sciften. 511
Chap. 60. Timur marches into Capochac, and pillages the town of Hudgi Tercan, or Afsraucan. 513
Chap. 61. Timur returns to Capochac. 515
Chap. 62. Timur gives the government of Azeberiaha to the Mirza Mirancha, who besieges Alegi. 519
Chap. 63. Taking of the town of Sestrjan; and the retreat of Behloul to Nehavend. 520
Chap. 64. Timur sends the Mirza Mehmet Sultan to conquer the kingdom of Ormus. The reduction of Tezeh. 524
Chap. 65. Timur returns to the seat of his empire. 525
Chap. 66. The building of the palace of Beghi Chemal. 530
Chap. 67. Timur gives the principality of Corellana to the Mirza Churta. 531
Chap. 68. Timur stays some time at Khed. Return of the Mirza Mehmet Sultan from the campaign of Fars. 534
Chap. 69. Timur demands in marriage for himself the daughter of Keffe Cefa Agian. He celebrates the nuptials of the Mirza Estender with the princess Beghish Sultan. 537
Chap. 70. Timur gives orders for making the garden of Dilemenza, and building a stately palace in it. 538
THE CONTENTS OF THE
Second Volume.

BOOK IV.

CHAP. 1. The cause of Timur's war in India. Page 4
CHAP. 2. Timur brings his army into the field, to make war against the Guebres in India. Page 7
CHAP. 3. Timur marches against the inhabitants of Ketur. He defeats the Sipouches, who were cloth'd in black. Page 8
CHAP. 4. Timur sends Mehemed Azad to gain intelligence of Mirza Rouslam and Burchan Aglen. His return to Ketur. Page 13
CHAP. 5. Timur sends Mirza Charoc to Herat. Page 17
CHAP. 6. The arrival of ambassadors from several places. Taizzi Aglen returns from the country of the Calmeci, and Cheik Noureddin from that of Fare. Page 18
CHAP. 7. The repairing the fortress of Izak, and the destroying of the Oganis robbers. Page 23
The CONTENTS.

Chap. 8. Timur marches to Chemnan and Nigar: and destroys the robber of the nation of the Persians. 25
Chap. 9. Timur passes the river Indus. 28
Chap. 10. Chahkhelesdin Mahser Chah Timur commiss hostilely against the emperor after his submission. 29
Chap. 11. Timur's arrival at Tebriz. 32
Chap. 12. Timur marches in search of Nafret Cidhri. 34
Chap. 13. Arrival of prince Pir Mehemed Gehangir from Multan. 35
Chap. 14. The taking the town of Howl, and the fortress of Bunsir; the inhabitants of which place are put to the sword. 39
Chap. 15. Timur departs from Bunsir, for Sefri, Farahbad and Ahromi. 45
Chap. 16. Timur marches against a nation of rebellious Geetes. 46
Chap. 17. A review of the whole army marching in order of battle. 48
Chap. 18. Timur marches to the east side of the town of Luni. Massacre of a hundred thousand Indian slavers who were in his camp. 52
Chap. 19. Timur gives battle to Sultan Mahmud, emperor of India. 55
Chap. 20. Flight of Sultan Mahmud, and his general Meesum Cars, prince of Multan. Reduction of Delhi capital of India. 61
Chap. 21. Timur departs from Delhi; and pursues his conquests in the remotest parts of India, near the Ganges. 68
Chap. 22. Conquest of Myrsha: The Guebers are fled abroad. 69
Chap. 23. Several battles upon the great river Ganges, against the militia of the Guebers. 72
Chap. 24. Timur's three Guebers: or expeditions against the Guebers. 74
Chap.
The CONTENTS.

Chap. 23. Timur exterminates the Guelves assembled in the famous defile of Coupole. Description of a marble statue of a cow adored by the Indians. 78
Chap. 26. Timur's resolution to return to the seat of his empire. 81
Chap. 27. Timur's repossession on the mountain Sondece. 82
Chap. 28. Several combats in the woods near Sondece. 83
Chap. 29. Timur's Gazire and expeditions in the province of Tphonou. 87
Chap. 30. Relation of what pass'd at Labor, with regard to Queen Loukery, prince of that city. 92
Chap. 31. Description of the little kingdom of Cachmir, or Kashmir. 95
Chap. 32. Timur's return to the seat of his empire. 97
Chap. 33. Timur crosses the Oxus, and is met by the prince and princesses of the blood. 102
Chap. 34. Building of the great mosque of Samar.
The CONTENTS.

Chap. 6. Timur's return from the defile of Combza. 128

Chap. 7. Continuation of the history of the Mirza Reza Khan, who was gone from Dojam to Chiraz. A great crime committed by his eldest-brother, the Mirza Pir Mahomed. 130

Chap. 8. A diet in relation to the affair of Georgia. 135

Chap. 9. Timur marches against prince Jani Bokh, a Georgian. 136

Chap. 10. The taking of the fort of Zerit, and the town of Susam. 141

Chap. 11. Timur marches against the Georgian prince Arman. 143

Chap. 12. Timur returns from Georgia. 144

Chap. 13. Reasons which obliged Timur to march against the city of Schafte, capital of Anatolia. 145

Chap. 14. Timur's letter to the Caisar Roum, that is, the Ottoman emperor. 147

Chap. 15. Timur marches to Schafte, and takes that city. 151

Chap. 16. Timur marches to Abdeslan. 155

Chap. 17. The reasons of Timur's carrying his army into Syria and Mesopotamia. 157

Chap. 18. Timur marches into the kingdoms of Syria and Egypt. 160

Chap. 19. The taking of the castles of Beshisa and Antapa. 162

Chap. 20. The siege and taking the city of Aleppo. 165

Chap. 21. The castle of Aleppo attack'd and taken. 173

Chap. 22. The taking of the towns and castles of Emessa and Hama. 177

Chap. 23. Conquest of the town of Balkh. 180

Chap. 24. Timur marches to Damascus, capital of Syria. 181
Chap. 25. Timur gives battle to the Sultan of Egypt, and gains the victory. 187
Chap. 26. Taking of the city of Damascus. 189
Chap. 27. Taking of the castle of Damascus. 194
Chap. 28. Timur returns out of Syria. 202
Chap. 29. Timur crosses the Euphrates, and knows in Mesopotamia. 205
Chap. 30. Timur marches to the town of Mardin. 206
Chap. 31. Timur sends troops into Georgia, and to Baghdad. 208
Chap. 32. Timur besieges and takes Baghdad. 211
Chap. 33. Timur's return from Baghdad, and march towards Taurus. 217
Chap. 34. Timur sends the Mirza Chares to Arzandzian. 219
Chap. 35. Arrival of the second empress Timurn Aga, and the young princes, from Samarcand. 221
Chap. 36. Timur marches into Georgia, and to Carchaleh Ayran. 222
Chap. 37. Timur passes the winter at Carchaleh, Arrival of the Mirza Mehemet Sultan from Samarcand. 224
Chap. 38. Timur sends troops to make incursions in desert places. 226
Chap. 39. The causes which oblig'd Timur to return to make war on Bajazet the Ottoman emperor. 230
Chap. 40. Timur digs the river of Berka. 241
Chap. 41. Timur departs from Carchaleh for the plains of Chembur. 245
Chap. 42. Taking of the castle of Tarsum. 248
Chap. 43. Taking of the castle of Kemur, Arrival of ambassadors from Bajazet. 249
Chap. 44. Timur reviews his army. 243
Chap. 45. Taking of the castle of Harome. 245
Chap. 46. Timur marches to Caerarea in Cappadocia, and to Anaora. 246
Chap. 47. Timur ranges his army in order of battle, to fight Bajazet. 240
Chap
The Contents.

Chap. 48. Timur gives Bajazet battle, and gains the victory. 252
Chap. 49. The taking of the Ottoman emperor, who is brought in chains before the throne of the conqueror. 255
Chap. 50. Timur orders troops to make invades in diverse parts of the Ottoman empire. He sends relasions of his victory to the city of Tebriz, and everywhere to make public rejoicing. 258
Chap. 51. The continuation of the history of the Mirza Moheemed Sultan, who had been sent to Prusa in Bithynia. 261
Chap. 52. Account of the Mirza Sultan Husein, and the Emir Salasman Chah, who were gone out to make inroads. 265
Chap. 53. Timur departs from Kioutahia. 266
Chap. 54. Timur dispatches couriers into divers country. The account of several ambassadors. 268
Chap. 55. Timur regulates the winter-quarters. 271
Chap. 56. Timur besieges Smyrna, and takes it. 275
Chap. 57. Second arrival of ambassadors from Bajazet's court. 278
Chap. 58. Timur departs from Smyrna. 286
Chap. 59. Taking of the towns of Egirdur and Nusfene. 283
Chap. 60. The death of the Ottoman emperor Bajazet, and of the Mirza Moheemed Sultan, Timur's grandson. 285
Chap. 61. Mourning for the death of the Mirza Moheemed Sultan, and the translation of his coffin. 288
Chap. 62. Arrival of ambassadors from Egypt. 289
Chap. 63. Timur marches against the C Anatolites, or black Tartars. 291
Chap. 64. Timur returns from Nusfene. 294
Chap. 65. The manner in which the death of the Mirza Moheemed Sultan, son of Gehangir, was made known to Cacique his mother. 296

Book
The CONTENTS.

BOOK VI.

CHAP. 1. Timur marches into Georgia. 399
CHAP. 2. The government of Chiraz a second time given to the Mirza Pir Mehmed, son of Omar Cheik, and that of Isphahan to his brother the Mirza Rustem. 301
CHAP. 3. Timur sends the Mirza Abuberk to rebuild the city of Bagdad, and gives him the government of Irak-Arabi and Diarbekir. 302
CHAP. 4. Timur's arrival at the frontiers of Georgia. 306
CHAP. 5. The taking of the famous castle of Coren in Georgia. 308
CHAP. 6. Relation of what passed without during this siege. 313
CHAP. 7. Timur marches to Abkhasia. 314
CHAP. 8. Timur returns from Abkhasia. The cause of his return. 316
CHAP. 9. Timur orders the town of Bailacan to be rebuilt. 319
CHAP. 10. Timur sends intendants and doctors into all the provinces of his empire, to examine the affairs of particular persons, and to distribute his justice and favors among the people. 321
CHAP. 11. Continuation of the history of the princes who were gone into Irak-Arabi. 325
CHAP. 12. Arrival of the Mirza Omar from Samarcand. Continuation of what happened during the building of Bailacan. 327
CHAP. 13. Timur passes the winter at Carabagh-Arzavan. Relation of what happened there. 329
CHAP. 14. The emperor sends the Mirza Chorab to Ghilan. 332
CHAP. 15. Arrival of some princes from Merdin and Vafian. A famous funeral banquet made for the late Mirza Mehmed Sultan. 334
The CONTENTS.

Chap. 16. Timur's return from a campaign of seven years. 316
Chap. 17. Timur invades the Mira'd Omer in the empire of Kadjacan. 317
Chap. 18. Continuation of the history of the Mira'd Bablenn and the Emir Solyman Cheki, who were sent towards Rej. 318
Chap. 19. Timur finds the Mira'd Iskender and the Emir Chamelik before the rest reached Rej. 320
Chap. 20. The taking of the citadel of Firuzehak. 342
Chap. 21. Timur marches to Tebiana. 344
Chap. 22. Battle between the Mira'd Sultan Husein and Iskender Cheki. The flight of the latter. 348
Chap. 23. Timur returns to the seat of his empire. 351
Chap. 24. Timur's entry into his imperial city of Samarcand. 355
Chap. 25. Timur holds a general diet. A great feast for the marriage of the princes at Caughal. 358
Chap. 26. The causes which incited Timur to undertake the conquest of the kingdom of China. 368
Chap. 27. Timur sets out for the war against the infidels of China. 372
Chap. 28. An account of certain adventures, the knowledge of which is necessary to the understanding the latter part of this history. A relation of what passed at Afsudat. 375
Chap. 29. Timur departs from Afsudat. 378
Chap. 30. Timur's death at Ojar. 381
Chap. 31. Relation of what happened after Timur's death. 387
Chap. 32. Timur's coffin transported from Ojar. 393
Chap. 33. The emperors and Emir hold a council concerning the war of China. 394
Chap. 34. Timur's coffin is transported to Samarcand. 395
The CONTENTS.

Chap. 37. The Mirza Sultan Husein Tisser's grand-son, opposes the sentiments of the Emir. 396
Chap. 36. The Emir writes circular letters to give advice to all the provinces of the Mirza Sultan Husein, undertaking. 397
Chap. 37. A letter to the great Emirs who were at Tachkent. 399
Chap. 38. The Emir Berendia arrives at the empress's court, with an answer to the letter sent to the Emir, who were at Tachkent with the Mirza Calil Sultan. 401
Chap. 39. Relation of what happened on the Emir Berendia's return to Tachkent. 405
Chap. 40. The great Emirs oppose the Mirza Calil Sultan. 407
Chap. 41. The Emirs hold a council with the empress, in relation to their marching to Bocara. 409
Chap. 42. The Mirzas and Emirs march to Bocara. 411
Chap. 43. The empress march to Samarcand. Their mourning, after the two Mirzas departure. 412
Chap. 44. Account of what past'd among the Mirzas and Emirs who were gone to Bocara. 413
Chap. 45. The Mirzas and Emirs at Bocara receive advice of the Mirza Calil Sultan's arrival at Samarcand, and of the obedience paid him by the Emirs of that city. 415
Chap. 46. Coronation of the Mirza Calil Sultan at Samarcand. 417
Chap. 47. Abridgment of the history of the reign of the Mirza Calil Sultan: and the cause of his ruin. 419
Chap. 48. Conclusion of the history of Timur-Bey, wherein the quality, by which that conqueror past'd all the kings who preceded him, are fix'd down. The names of his children who succev'd him. 424

The end of the contents.
“A book that is shut is but a block”

CENTRAL ARCHAEOLOGICAL LIBRARY
GOVT. OF INDIA
Department of Archaeology
NEW DELHI

Please help us to keep the book clean and moving.